

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

WILLIAM C. COLLAR
AND
M. GRANT DANIELL

This public domain grammar was brought to digital life
by:

Textkit – Greek and Latin Learning tools

Find more grammars at <http://www.textkit.com>

THE
BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.,
HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.,
PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON.

Longum iter est per praecepta, breve et efficax per exempla.
SENECA.

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON:
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.

1891.

LATINE REDDENDA:
EXERCISES FROM
THE BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.

THE authors of the "Beginner's Latin Book" are of the opinion that a separate edition of the exercises for turning English into Latin will be a great convenience to teachers.

After the exercises have been done once with the help of the special vocabularies and under the direction and criticism of the teacher, it will be found useful to review them again and again, sometimes orally, sometimes in writing, with all helps in the way of rules, special vocabularies, and model sentences removed. The pupil is thus left to depend entirely upon his previous study and faithful attention to his teacher's instructions.

It is believed also that teachers who use other elementary Latin books will be glad to have, in cheap and convenient form, a set of exercises which they can use as supplementary to their regular work. For such, an edition is published with an English-Latin vocabulary.

Both editions have the *Glossarium Grammaticum* for the aid of those who wish to conduct recitations in Latin.

INTRODUCTION PRICES.

Edition with *Glossarium Grammaticum* (bound in paper), 20 cents.
Edition with *Glossarium Grammaticum* and English-Latin Vocabulary
(bound in cloth), 30 cents.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.

COPYRIGHT, 1886, BY
WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

TYPOGRAPHY BY J. S. CUSHING & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

PRESSWORK BY GINN & Co., BOSTON, U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE aim of this book is to serve as a preparation for reading, writing, and, to a less degree, for speaking Latin. It is designed primarily for boys and girls who are to begin the study of Latin at an early age; but as all who would get from Latin the best mental discipline, or lay a broad and firm foundation for Latin scholarship, must traverse pretty much the same road, and as Latin is begun in this country by most learners before any other foreign language is studied, a beginner's Latin book for those who take up the study at the age of ten or twelve need not be essentially different from one designed for learners of fourteen or fifteen. The most important difference would lie in the knowledge of the terminology and principles of English grammar that might be deemed an indispensable prerequisite. As a matter of fact, children come to the study of Latin with all degrees of ignorance of English grammar, and the minimum of necessary knowledge for the beginner is unquestionably very small. What minimum is considered essential for those who use this book, is indicated on page 6. It is hoped, therefore, that the contents of the book will justify its title; that it does not assume too much, and is not too difficult for the least mature who are likely to use it, and that it will not be found too much simplified,—too juvenile, for those who begin Latin in high schools and academies. Simplicity, clearness, and directness have been studied throughout. The system of inflected forms, which is seldom mastered, but the mastery of which is an indis-

pensable condition of further pleasant, successful, and profitable study, is slowly but very fully developed, with the addition of abundant and varied exercises. For convenience, as well as on educational grounds, the paradigm of the verb is given in one block, instead of in fragments detached and dispersed, and everywhere the active and passive forms are placed side by side, to be compared, and learned as they are treated, simultaneously.

The idea underlying and controlling the plan is the maximum of practice with the minimum of theory, on the principle that the thorough acquisition of the elements of Latin must be more of art than science,—more the work of observation, comparison, and imitation, than the mechanical following of rules, or the exercise of analysis and conscious inductive reasoning.

The book contains :—

1. A brief introduction explaining the Roman and English methods of pronunciation, the necessary paradigms, an outline of the most important principles of syntax, and a large number of exercises for translation into English and into Latin, accompanied by short explanatory notes.

2. About twenty-five simple Latin dialogues, added to as many chapters. Some of these are on subjects of the lessons, and include a good many grammatical terms; some are on various topics of school and holiday life; and others on subjects historical and mythological.

3. Easy selections for translation, consisting besides a number of fables, of extracts from *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Cæsar*, and *Cicero*, some interspersed with the lessons, others added at the end of the book.

Those who seek in a first Latin book a complete presentation of the facts and principles of the Latin language, will not be satisfied with this volume. But, in the opinion of the authors, there is no error in elementary instruction in Latin more common and more deplorable than that of failing to

discriminate between the relatively important and unimportant; between what is suited to the beginning and what to the more advanced stages of the study. It is not too much to say that a very great part of the barrenness and futility of the teaching and study of Latin in schools is due to this lack of discrimination, and to a false conception of thoroughness. It is not intended to imply that a hard and fast line can be drawn, still less is this book offered as a realization in this respect of the ideal. The ideal is never realized. But it has been the constant aim to make just this distinction: to determine everywhere, in the light of much observation and reflection and of long experience, what should be made the subject of immediate study, and what should be postponed; what is entitled to prominence, and what ought to be subordinated. Some excellent teachers think that the subjunctive mood should have no place in a preparatory Latin book; and undoubtedly the syntax of the subjunctive does involve too many and too great difficulties for such a work, if anything more than an outline of some commoner uses is attempted. On the other hand, the learner can hardly read any Latin without encountering forms of the subjunctive. The best way then seems to be to construct a large number of very short sentences for practice on the forms, which shall exhibit, in the briefest compass, some important and most frequently recurring uses of the mood, more especially because the ways of translating the subjunctive cannot be illustrated from the isolated forms in the paradigms, as in the other moods. This idea has been worked out in part in Chapter LIV., the forms having been previously left untranslated.

The *colloquia* have been added, not as an integral and necessary part of the lessons, but to serve as an incentive to the moderate use of Latin orally in recitation, and to afford convenient exercises for training the ear and for enlarging the vocabulary of the learner. The grammatical terms have

been drawn chiefly from the *Institutiones* of Rudimann. The *colloquium* on page 5 has been borrowed from Dr. H. Meurer's *Lateinisches Lesebuch*, and suggestions and parts of the materials for a very few others have been derived from the same source; also two or three of the passages for translation, and here and there some sentences in the exercises. Whoever examines these *colloquia* with a critical eye, will find some words which are confined to the vocabularies of grammarians and commentators, and a very few others employed in senses for which it would be embarrassing to be required to cite classical authority. For example, the word *pensum* is used often in the sense of *a schoolboy's task, something to be done or learned, a lesson*. This word doubtless meant strictly *a spinner's task*. But in classical Latin it had already approached the meaning *task* in general, and it is but a very slight extension of its application to employ it as it is in the *colloquia*. Such a moderate decanting of new wine into old bottles, it is hoped may be excused. Still if any teacher thinks that the Latinity of his pupils will be injured by the use of the *colloquia*, it is optional with him to omit them altogether, without losing the continuity of the lessons.

The complaint is very common, and its justice must be acknowledged, that first Latin books are often excessively and needlessly arid and wooden. Accordingly an effort has been made, while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin by means of the *colloquia*, the choice of extracts for translation (introduced as early as possible), and the mode of treatment in every part, extending even to the choice of Latin words, and to the construction of many of the exercises.

Usage is not fixed in respect to the so-called principal parts of verbs, a few of the later school manuals giving the

nominative masculine of the perfect participle, instead of the supine, except in the case of neuter or intransitive verbs. It has been thought better in this book to follow the prevailing practice, only to treat the form that has been called the supine in this connection, not as the supine,—which in most cases it is not and cannot be, since, as is well known, only about 230 verbs can be proved to have a supine,—but as the neuter of the perfect participle.¹ Thus the learner is guarded against errors and is spared the perplexity of having to memorize now one, now another form.

It is hoped that this book can be finished and reviewed by the average learner in a year, and that the transition then to *Viri Romae*, *Nepos*, or *Cæsar* will not prove too difficult. More than two-thirds of the words used belong to the vocabulary of *Cæsar*, and only a trifle less than two-thirds to that of *Nepos*. In the case of young pupils it may be advisable to omit the translation of the English exercises into Latin, beginning with Chapter LV., till after the selections for translation at the end of the book have been read.

It remains to acknowledge the generous assistance of several scholars. Professor George M. Lane, of Harvard University, Professor George L. Kittredge, of Exeter Academy, N.H., George F. Forbes, A.M., and D. O. S. Lowell, A.M., both of the Roxbury Latin School, and Marshall W. Davis, A.B., of Thayer Academy, Braintree, read and criticised the work in manuscript. Mr. Forbes and Mr. Lowell also read the proof-sheets and made important suggestions and corrections. The authors feel especially indebted to John Tetlow, A.M., Head-Master of the Boston Girls' High and Latin Schools, and author of *Inductive Lessons in Latin*, for critically reading the proof-sheets, and for materially contributing to the improvement of the book by

¹ This plan has been followed by Dr. R. F. Leighton in his *First Steps in Latin*.

the correction of errors, and by the suggestions of his conscientious and exact scholarship.

Thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Cushing, under whose personal direction the book has been printed, for the patience, care, and skill which he has constantly exercised to make the work typographically as faultless as possible.

WM. C. COLLAR.

M. GRANT DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 1, 1886.

The authors desire to express their grateful acknowledgments to Miss Caroline E. Stone, of the Roxbury Latin School, and to Professor E. M. Wallank, of Fort Worth, Texas, for the correction of errors that had been overlooked in the first editions.

1889.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Introductory: Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Cases, Gender	1-6
II. First Declension. — Direct Object. — Possessive Dative. — Indirect Object	7-12
III. Second Declension. — Words in <i>us</i> and <i>um</i> . — Predicate Noun	13-17
IV. First and Second Declensions. — Agreement of Adjectives. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 58	17-19
V. Second Declension. — Words in <i>er</i> . — Ablative of Agent	20-21
VI. Second Declension. — Words in <i>er</i> . — Paradigms of Adjectives of First and Second Declensions . .	22-24
VII. The Verb Sum : Paradigm	25-26
VIII. The Verb Sum : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 80	27-29
IX. The Verb Sum : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 85	30-31
X. First Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Amō .	32-34
XI. First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive. — Ablative of Means. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 95	35-38
XII. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive	39-41
XIII. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 111 .	41-43
XIV. Second Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Moneō	44-46
XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive .	46-49

CHAPTER	PAGE
XVI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 126	49-52
XVII. Review of First and Second Conjugations.— Ablative of Separation.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 133	53-55
XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems.— Ablative of Time.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 139	56-58
XIX. Third Declension: Sibilant Stems.— Ablative of Manner.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 148	59-62
XX. Third Declension: Stems in <i>i</i> .— Apposition.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 162	62-67
XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems.— Rules of Gender.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 173	68-72
XXII. Third Declension: Review	72-73
XXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Regō ,	74-76
XXIV. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 187.— Passage for Translation, 188	76-80
XXV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 195	80-84
XXVI. Review.— Passage for Translation, 199	84-86
XXVII. Irregular Adjectives.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 204	86-89
XXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives.— Declension of the Comparative.— Ablative with Comparatives.— Passage for Translation, 215	89-92
XXIX. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.— <i>Colloquium</i> , 222	93-96
XXX. Fourth Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Audiō	96-98
XXXI. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative; Present Imperative and Infinitive	99-100

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXII. Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Perfect Infinitive. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 234	101-103
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Paradigm of the Verb Capiō	104-105
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Tenses of the Indicative; Present Imperative; Present and Perfect Infinitive	106-107
XXXV. Review of the Four Conjugations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 242	108-110
XXXVI. Fourth Declension	110-112
XXXVII. Fifth Declension. — Ablative of Specification. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 261	112-115
XXXVIII. Special Paradigms. — Passage for Translation,	115-116
XXXIX. Personal and Possessive Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 269	117-119
XL. Determinative Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 274	120-122
XLI. Demonstrative Pronouns	123-125
XLII. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Agreement of Relative	126-130
XLIII. Review of Pronouns. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 290. — Passage for Translation, 291	130-134
XLIV. Compounds of Sum . — Dative	134-137
XLV. Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 302.	137-140
XLVI. Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations. — Ablative with Ūtor , etc. — Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting	140-142
XLVII. Numerals. — Accusative of Extent	143-146
XLVIII. Irregular Verbs: Volō , Nōlō , Mālō . — Passage for Translation, 320	146-149
XLIX. Irregular Verbs: Perō and its compounds	149-152
L. Irregular Verbs: Eō , Fīō . — <i>Colloquium</i> , 332,	152-156
LI. Prepositions. Expressions of Place. — Passage for Translation, 339	156-160

CHAPTER	PAGE
LII. Partitive Genitive. — Descriptive Ablative and Genitive. — Dative with Intransitives. — Dative of Service	160-161
LIII. Derivation. — Comparison of Words	162-164
LIV. The Subjunctive: Sequence of Tenses. — Forms. — Purpose Clauses with Ut and Nē	164-171
LV. The Subjunctive: Relative of Purpose	171-172
LVI. The Subjunctive: Result Clauses with Ut and Nē	173-174
LVII. The Subjunctive: Cum Temporal; Cum Causal and Concessive. — Passage for Translation, 378	175-178
LVIII. The Subjunctive: Indirect Questions	178-180
LIX. The Subjunctive: Wishes and Conditions. — <i>Colloquium</i> , 388	180-184
LX. The Subjunctive and Imperative. — Passage for Translation, 394	184-187
LXI. The Infinitive	187-188
LXII. Accusative and Infinitive: Indirect Discourse. — Passage for Translation, 407	189-194
LXIII. Participles	194-196
LXIV. Participles: Ablative Absolute	197-199
LXV. Impersonal Verbs: Miseret , etc. — Intransitive Verbs in Passive. — Passage for Translation, 421	200-203
LXVI. Periphrastic Conjugations: Dative of Agent	204-207
LXVII. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine	208-210
—	
READING LESSONS: Letters. — Fables. — Cæsar's Two Invasions of Britain. — Customs and Habits of the Britons	211-222
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	223-259
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	260-273
GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM	274-276

BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK.



CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

It is suggested to teachers who are not experienced in teaching Latin that this chapter may, perhaps, be most profitably used for reference. Pupils will catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher; and as they make mistakes, they will be interested in being referred to the rules of pronunciation. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together. In the same way the teacher might then construe literally.

1. ALPHABET. — The Latin alphabet has no *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. VOWELS. — Vowels may be long (marked thus $\bar{\quad}$), short (marked thus $\acute{\quad}$), or common¹ (marked thus =). The long vowel occupies double the time of the short in pronouncing.

3. CONSONANTS. — Of the consonants

The mutes are: P-mutes . . . p, b, f
 T-mutes . . . t, d
 K-mutes . . . k, c, g, q (u)
The liquids are l, m, n, r
The sibilant is s
The double consonants are x = cs,² z = ds.

¹ That is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

² Also represents the combinations **hs, qs, gs, vs.**

4. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

Vowels.

ā	is sounded like	the last <i>a</i> in	<i>papīl'.</i>
ǎ	“	“	the first <i>a</i> in <i>papǎ'.</i>
ē	“	“	<i>e</i> in <i>they.</i>
ĕ	“	“	<i>e</i> in <i>met.</i>
ī	“	“	<i>i</i> in <i>machine.</i>
ĭ	“	“	<i>i</i> in <i>pin.</i>
ō	“	“	<i>o</i> in <i>holy.</i>
ō	“	“	<i>o</i> in <i>wholly.</i> ¹
ū ²	“	“	<i>oo</i> in <i>boot.</i>
ŭ	“	“	<i>oo</i> in <i>foot.</i>

Diphthongs.

ae	is sounded like	<i>ai</i> in	<i>aisle.</i>
au	“	“	<i>ou</i> in <i>our.</i>
ei	“	“	<i>ei</i> in <i>eight.</i>
oe	“	“	<i>oi</i> in <i>boil.</i>
eu	“	“	<i>eu</i> in <i>feud.</i>
ui	“	“	<i>we.</i>

Consonants.

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English. But observe the following:—

c	is sounded like	<i>c</i> in	<i>come.</i>
g	“	“	<i>g</i> in <i>get.</i>
j	“	“	<i>y</i> in <i>yes.</i>
s	“	“	<i>s</i> in <i>sun.</i> ³
t	“	“	<i>t</i> in <i>time.</i> ⁴
v	“	“	<i>w</i> in <i>wine.</i>
ch	“	“	<i>k</i> in <i>kite.</i>

¹ That is, as the word is commonly pronounced; the sound heard in *holy*, shortened.

² In *qu*, and also commonly in

gu and *su* before a vowel, *u* is a semi-vowel or consonant, and is pronounced like *w*.

³ Never like *z*. ⁴ Never like *sh*.

5. SYLLABLES.

1. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **ae-gri-tū'-dō**, *sickness*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā'-bi-lis**, *amiable*.

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im'-pro-bus**, *bad*; **ho-specs**, *guest*.

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts: **ab'-est** (**ab**, *away*; **est**, *he is*), *he is away*.

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

6. QUANTITY.

1. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*, also probably before *nt* and *nd*: **pō-ē'-ma**, *poem*; **grā'-tī-ac**, *thanks*; **nī'-hil**, *nothing*; **a'-mānt**, *they love*; **mo-něn'-dus**, *to be advised*.

2. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, vowels resulting from contraction, and vowels followed by *nf*, *ns*, *j*, and commonly *gn*, are long: **in-ī'-quus** (**inaequus**), *unequal*; **cō'-gō** (**cōăgō**), *collect*; **cōn'-fe-rō**, *bring together*; **mēn'-sa**, *table*; **hū'-jus**, *of him*; **mā'-gnus**, *great*. In this book only long vowels are marked, unless for some special reason.

3. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō'-cēs**, *voices*; **ae'-dēs**, *temple*.

4. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *z*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **sunt**,¹ *they are*; **tem'-plum**, *temple*; **dux**,¹ *leader*.

5. A syllable is common if it has a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: **te'-nē-brae**, *darkness*. The vowel is pronounced short.

The above statements are useful in determining the place of the accent.

7. ACCENT.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: **tu'-ba**, *trumpet*.

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **prae-dī'-cō**, *foretell*; **prae'-di-cō**, *declare*; **ille'-cē-brae**, *snares*; **pa-ter'-nus**,² *paternal*.

(1) Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are **ne**, the sign of a question, and **que**, *and*, are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the **ne** or **que**: **amat'-ne**, *does he love?* **dōna'-que**, *and gifts*.

8. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION. — By this method the above rules relating to syllables (5) and accent (7) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease*, and final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose*.

¹ **u** pronounced like *oo* in *foot*. the penult is short, the *syllable* is

² Here, though the *vowel* of long by 6. 4.

The following *colloquium* may be used, if the teacher wishes, for practice, and to illustrate the foregoing statements. See introductory note, page 1.

9.

COLLOQUIUM.

Augustus. Quid tibi vis?

What do you wish (for yourself)?

Iūlus. Tēcum ambulāre velim.

I should like to take a walk with you.

A. Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.

I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.

I. Cūr māvis?

Why do you prefer (that)?

A. Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.

My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.

I. Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?

Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?

A. Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ardōre.

Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.

I. At jam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.

But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.

A. Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvanique contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vīs, nōbiscum venī.

What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.

10. CASES.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are: *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative.*

2. The vocative is the case of address, but it does not differ in form from the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives in *us* of the second declension, and hence is not elsewhere given separately in the paradigms.

3. Another case, the *locative*, which denotes the place of an action, is mostly confined to proper names, and has the form of the ablative (sometimes dative) singular or plural, or of the genitive singular.

11. GENDER.—The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males are *masculine*: **agricola**, farmer; **Cicerō**, Cicero.

2. Nouns denoting females are *feminine*: **rēgīna**, queen; **Tullia**, Tullia.

3. Names of rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*: **Padus**, *Po*; **aquilō**, north wind; **Jānuārius**, January.

4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine*: **Āfrica**, Africa; **Rōma**, Rome; **Sicilia**, Sicily; **pirus**, pear-tree.

5. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter*: **fās**, right.

Other rules of gender will be given under the several declensions.

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation*, etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

CHAPTER II. 1.

FIRST DECLENSION.

12. The stem¹ ends in *a*.

13. GENDER.—The gender is feminine; but see general rules, 11.

14. PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.V.	tubā, <i>a trumpet.</i>	N.V.	tubae, <i>trumpets.</i>
G.	tubae, <i>of a trumpet.</i>	G.	tubārum, <i>of trumpets.</i>
D.	tubae, <i>to or for a trumpet.</i>	D.	tubīs, <i>to or for trumpets.</i>
Ac.	tubam, <i>a trumpet.</i>	Ac.	tubās, <i>trumpets.</i>
Ab.	tubā, ² <i>with a trumpet.</i>	Ab.	tubīs, <i>with trumpets.</i>

1. For the reason why the vocative case is not given separately in the paradigm see 10. 2.

2. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: *Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnīs, at Athens.*

15. TERMINATIONS.—These consist of case-endings, joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case-ending.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.V.	a		ae
G.	ae		ārum
D.	ae		īs
Ac.	am		ās
Ab.	ā		īs

¹ The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added to express the relation of the word to other words.

² The ablative is variously ren-

dered, according to its connection. It is therefore recommended that, in declining words, no translation of the ablative be given till its use has been illustrated. See p. 20, n. 1.

16. Observe that the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike; also the dative and ablative plural.

17. In Latin there is no article: *tuba* may be translated *a trumpet, the trumpet, or trumpet.*

18. The pupil should commit to memory the table of terminations.

. 2.

19.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

<i>aquila</i> , F., <i>eagle.</i>
<i>cauda</i> , F., <i>tail.</i>
<i>columba</i> , F., <i>dove.</i>
<i>filia</i> , ¹ F., <i>daughter.</i>
<i>puella</i> , F., <i>girl.</i>
<i>rēgina</i> , F., <i>queen.</i>
<i>rosa</i> , ² F., <i>rose.</i>
<i>via</i> , F., <i>road, street, way.</i>

ADJECTIVES.³

<i>alba</i> , <i>white.</i>
<i>bona</i> , <i>good.</i>
<i>dūra</i> , <i>hard.</i>
<i>lāta</i> , <i>wide, broad.</i>
<i>longa</i> , <i>long.</i>
<i>māgna</i> , <i>large.</i>
<i>mala</i> , <i>bad.</i>
<i>parva</i> , <i>small, little.</i>

VERBS.

<i>est</i> , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>is.</i>	<i>habet</i> , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>has.</i>
<i>sunt</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>are.</i>	<i>habent</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>have.</i>

20. Observe that in the above verb-forms the singular ends in *t*, and the plural in *nt*.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

21.

EXERCISES.

I.⁴ 1. *Viae lātae.* 2. *Via lāta.* 3. *Viās lātās.* 4. *Viam lātām.* 5. *Cauda longa.* 6. *Caudās longās.* 7. *Caudam longam.* 8. *Caudae longae.* 9. *Columbās parvās.* 10. Co-

¹ *Filia* and *dea*, *goddess*, have a dative and ablative plural in *-ābus*, but this is mostly confined to legal and religious language.

² CAUTION: Do not pronounce *s* like *z*, if you use the Roman method. See page 2, note 3.

³ The masculine and neuter of adjectives will be taken up in connection with nouns of the second declension.

⁴ Observe that the adjective takes the case and number of the noun to which it belongs.

lumbae parvae. 11. Columba parva. 12. Columbam parvam. 13. Rosam albam. 14. Rosae albae. 15. Rosa alba. 16. Rosās albās. 17. Rēgīna mala. 18. Rēgīnās malās.

II. In like manner give the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *little girl, great eagle, good queen, wide street*. Decline together *rosa alba, via longa, bona puella*.

3.

22.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Via est longa. 2. Dūra est via. 3. Puellae rosās habent. 4. Rēgīna columbā habet. 5. Rosae sunt albae. 6. Cauda est alba. 7. Caudae sunt longae. 8. Aquila caudam habet. 9. Puellae tubās habent. 10. Aquilae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. Via dūra est longa. 2. Puella bona rosam habet. 3. Columba caudam parvam habet. 4. Rēgīnae albās rosās habent. 5. Rosa parva est alba. 6. Aquila māgna est alba. 7. Tubae māgnae sunt longae. 8. Puella tubam longam habet. 9. Fīliae bonae columbās habent. 10. Aquila māgna lātā caudam habet.

23. Notice the order of the words in the above sentences, and see wherein it differs from the order in English. You will find that—

1. The adjective is commonly placed after its noun. When placed before the noun it is for emphasis.

2. The verb commonly comes at the end of the sentence, but **est** and **sunt** are less frequently so placed.

3. The object commonly comes before the verb.

24. Observe that the subject is in the nominative case, and that the verb agrees with it in number, as in English.

25. Observe that the verb **habet** (**habent**) is transitive, and has its object in the accusative.

26. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.

4.

27.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. The roads are broad. 2. The streets are long. 3. Queens have doves. 4. The girl has a rose. 5. Eagles have tails. 6. The dove is white. 7. The girl has a trumpet. 8. The eagle is large. 9. The rose is white. 10. The girls are small.

II. 1. The long way is hard. 2. Good girls have roses. 3. Doves have small tails. 4. Great eagles have broad tails. 5. The good queen has a dove. 6. The little girls have large trumpets. 7. The little dove is white. 8. The queen is good. 9. The good queen has a little daughter. 10. A little girl has a white rose.

28. Answer the following in Latin:¹—

1. Estne² via lāta? 2. Habetne puella rosam? 3. Habentne aquilae caudās longās? 4. Quid (*what*) habet rēgīna bona? 5. Quid habent puellae bonae? 6. Habentne columbae caudās?

5.

29.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

āla, f., wing.

Britannia, f., Britain.

Cornēlia, f., Cornelia.

Galba, m., Galba.

hōra, f., hour.

lūna, f., moon.

ADJECTIVES.

multa, much (pl. many).

plēna, full.

prima, first.

secunda, second.

VERBS.

amat, (*he, she, it*) loves.

amant, (*they*) love.

dat, (*he, she, it*) gives.

dant, (*they*) give.

CONJUNCTION.

et, and.

ADVERB.

nōn, not.

¹ Every answer should form a complete sentence. To the question *est-ne via longa?* the answer should be *via est longa*.

² The particle *ne* is appended to some word in a sentence, often the verb, as a sign of a question, and is not to be translated by any separate word.

GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Lūnae plēnae. 2. Lūnārum plēnārum. 3. Lūnīs plēnīs. 4. Hōrārum prīmārum. 5. Hōrīs prīmīs. 6. Filia Galbae.¹ 7. Fīliūs Cornēliae. 8. Rosīs albīs. 9. Columbāe parvae. 10. Aquilārum ālārum.

II. 1. The queen's daughter. 2. The queens' daughters. 3. For the girl's rose. 4. Of the wings of the dove. 5. For Cornelia's daughter. 6. Of Britain. 7. For eagles. 8. Of the long streets. 9. For the little girls. 10. To the small trumpet.

6.

31.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puellae (*dative*) est rosa. 2. Puella rosam habet. 3. Rēgīnīs sunt columbae. 4. Rēgīnae columbās habent. 5. Rosa puellae est alba. 6. Rosae puellārum sunt albae. 7. Galba filiae² columbam dat. 8. Cornēlia puellis rosās dat. 9. Galba Cornēliae aquilam dat. 10. Galba et Cornēlia filiās habent.

II. 1. Fīliae Cornēliae rosās albās habent. 2. Cornēlia puellae parvae rosam māgnam dat. 3. Est³ hōra pīma lūnae plēnae. 4. Hōra est³ secunda et lūna est plēna. 5. Māgna est rosa puellae parvae. 6. Galba puellae tubam parvam dat. 7. Columbāe albae sunt filiae bonae. 8. Multae et longae sunt Britanniae viae. 9. Britannia rēgīnam bonam habet. 10. Galba fīliūs bonae rēgīnae rosās multās dat.

32. The first sentence in I. is literally translated *to the girl is a rose*. Evidently the meaning is *the girl has a rose*, the same as that of the second. The dative thus used with **est** or **sunt** is called the **Dative of the Possessor**, or the **Possessive Dative**.

¹ Galba's daughter. The genitive is often to be translated by the English possessive.

² Translate, *his daughter*.

³ *It is*.

33. Examine the seventh sentence in I. The transitive verb *dat* has a direct object, *columbam*; but it also has a dative limiting it, *filiae*. This dative is called an **Indirect Object**. Find other illustrations of the following:

34. RULE OF SYNTAX.—**The indirect object is put in the dative.**

7.

35.

EXERCISES.

1. Before turning the following sentences into Latin, translate mentally 2, 6, and 10, in **31. II.**, taking the words as they stand. Observe that the indirect object precedes the direct.

2. In the following exercises try to cast each sentence into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words. Thus, the sixth sentence will take the form, *the girl to the queen a rose gives*; and the eighth, *to a girl little is a rose little, or a girl little a rose little has*.

I. 1. It¹ is the first hour. 2. There² is a full moon. 3. The moon is full. 4. The dove is small. 5. The tail of the eagle is broad. 6. The girl gives the queen³ a rose. 7. The queen's roses are white. 8.⁴ A little girl has a little rose. 9. The first hour is a long one.² 10. Galba gives the girls some² roses.

II. 1. The queen's daughter has a white rose. 2. The queen of Britain gives the girl a great rose. 3. It is the second hour of the full moon. 4. The daughters of Cornelia are small girls.⁵ 5. The daughters of Cornelia are good little⁶ girls.⁵ 6. The little dove's tail is a long one. 7. The wings of eagles are long and broad. 8. Eagles have long, broad⁷ wings. 9. The little dove has a white tail. 10.⁴ Many doves have white tails.

¹ Omit. Compare **31. II.** 3 and 4.

² Omit.

³ That is, *to the queen*. Compare **31. I.** 7, 8, and 9; and **31. II.** 2, 6, and 10.

⁴ Translate in two ways, like **31. I.**, 1 and 2, 3 and 4.

⁵ Nominative.

⁶ In Latin, *good and little*.

⁷ *Long and broad*.

CHAPTER III. 1.
SECOND DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in *o*.

37. GENDER. — Nouns ending in *um* are neuter; most others are masculine; but see general rules for gender, 11. 4.

38. PARADIGMS.¹

<i>Hortus, garden.</i>		<i>Bellum, war.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V. hortus, ę	hortī,	N.V. bellum	bella
G. hortī	hortōrum	G. bellī	bellōrum
D. hortō	hortīs	D. bellō	bellīs
Ac. hortum	hortōs	Ac. bellum	bella
Ab. hortō	hortīs	Ab. bellō	bellīs

39. The vocative singular of nouns in *us* of this declension ends in *ę*.

1. As these are the only Latin nouns having a form for the vocative different from the nominative, this peculiarity is best regarded and treated as an exception.

40. Examples of the locative case (10. 3) in this declension are: *Corinthī, at Corinth*; *Thūriīs, at Thurii*.

41. TERMINATIONS.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.V. us, ę	um	ī	a
G. ī	ī	ōrum	ōrum
D. ō	ō	īs	īs
Ac. um	um	ōs	a
Ab. ō	ō	īs	īs

42. Although the stem ends in *o*, the *o* does not appear except in the dat. and abl. singular and in the gen. and acc. plural.

¹ For peculiarities of nouns in *ius* and *ium* see 79.

2.

43.

VOCABULARY.

<i>Masculine.</i>	NOUNS.	<i>Neuter.</i>
amicus , <i>friend.</i>		bracchium , <i>arm.</i> (79.)
cibus , <i>food.</i>		dōnum , <i>gift.</i>
discipulus , <i>pupil.</i>		ōvum , <i>egg.</i>
dominus , <i>lord, master.</i>		pīlum , <i>javelin.</i>
equus , <i>horse.</i>		pōculum , <i>cup.</i>
servus , <i>slave or servant.</i>		vīnum , <i>wine.</i>

ADJECTIVES.	VERBS.
dēfessus , -a, -um, <i>tired.</i>	laudat , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>praises.</i> ¹
dūrus , -a, -um, <i>hard.</i>	laudant , (<i>they</i>) <i>praise.</i>
grātus , -a, -um, <i>pleasing.</i>	portat , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>carries.</i>
novus , -a, -um, <i>new.</i>	portant , (<i>they</i>) <i>carry.</i>

44. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three terminations to mark the different genders: **bonus**, masculine; **bona**, feminine; **bonum**, neuter. The feminine of the adjective is declined like **tuba**, the masculine like **hortus**, and the neuter like **bellum**. The full declension of **bonus** is given on page 24.²

1. Form the masculine and neuter of all the adjectives in 19 and 29.

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

45.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Amīcī bonī. 2. Amīcus bonus. 3. Amīcōs bonōs.
 4. Amīcum bonum. 5. Pōculum novum. 6. Pōcula nova.
 7. Equus dēfessus. 8. Equum dēfessum. 9. Equōs dēfessōs.
 10. Equī dēfessī. 11. Pōcula māgna. 12. Servōs malōs.

¹ **Laudat** may be translated *praises, is praising, or does praise.* So of the other verb-forms.

² In declining adjectives, it will be found advantageous to decline each gender separately.

II. 1. In like manner form the nominative and accusative in both numbers of the words meaning *long*¹ *javelin*, *hard master*, *small horse*, *good wine*. Decline together *bonus cibus*, *servus malus*, *vīnum novum*.

46. Examine the following sentences:—

Galba est amīcus, *Galba is a friend*.

Galba et Cornēlia sunt amīcī, *Galba and Cornelia are friends*.

1. Observe in these examples that the subject and predicate nouns are in the same case, just as in English.

47. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate referring to the same person or thing as the subject is in the same case.

3.

48.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dōnum est grātum. 2. Servus bonus est dēfessus. 3. Amīcus pīlum portat. 4. Discipulus ōvum dūrum habet. 5. Equus dēfessus cibum portat. 6. Dōna sunt pōcula parva. 7. Discipulus braccīa longa habet. 8. Domīnī servōs laudant. 9. Dominus servum laudat. 10. Servī pōcula parva portant. 11. Novum equum laudat. 12. Equōs novōs laudant.

II. 1. The servant has the cup. 2. The servants have the cups. 3. The pupil has wine and eggs. 4. The master has good food. 5. The gifts are long javelins. 6. The master and the slave are good friends. 7. The little horses are tired. 8. The new pupil has a big² cup. 9. They praise the second horse. 10. He is praising the good master. 11. They have some³ good friends. 12. The slave carries the cups and wine.

¹ The adjective must be of the same gender as the noun.

² See page 19, note 1.

³ Omit.

4.

GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

49.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amīcīs bonīs. 2. Amīcō bonō. 3. Amīcī bonī.
4. Amīcōrum bonōrum. 5. Pōculō novō. 6. Pōculōrum
novōrum. 7. Pōculīs novīs. 8. Equī dēfessī. 9. Equīs
dēfessīs. 10. Equōrum dēfessōrum. 11. Equō dēfessō.
12. Servīs bonīs.

II. In like manner, form the genitive and dative in both numbers of the words meaning *long javelin, hard master, small horse, good wine*. Decline together **bonus amīcus, discipulus malus, dōnum grātum**.

5.

50.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dōnum amīcī bonī est grātum. 2. Servī bonī dominōrum malōrum sunt dēfessī. 3. Amīcīs discipulī dat¹ pīla multa. 4. Amīcō bonō discipulī sunt pīla multa. 5. Amīcī bonōrum discipulōrum pīla multa habent. 6. Equus dēfessus cibum dominī portat. 7. Longa sunt bracchia servi bonī. 8. Dōna dominī servīs sunt grāta. 9. Puellīs parvīs ōva alba dant.¹ 10. Servī rēgīnīs ōva aquilārum dant.

II. 1. The gift is pleasing to the good friend. 2.² The slave has the master's cup. 3.² The servants have the masters' cups. 4. The master gives the slave³ a hard egg. 5. The food of the master is wine and eggs. 6. The master praises the little pupil's cup. 7. The tired horses are carrying gifts for the friend. 8. The girl has many new⁴ friends. 9. The broad cup is pleasing to the new pupil. 10. The eagle's eggs are gifts of the good servant.

¹ When there is no subject expressed in the sentence, how is the verb to be rendered?

² Translate in two ways. See 32.

³ Not accusative.

⁴ *Many and new.*

6.

51. Answer the following in Latin:¹—

1. Quid portat Jacōbus (*James*)? 2. Portatne dominō² vīnum et ōva? 3. Nōne³ portat ōva columbae albae? 4. Laudatne caudam longam equī albī? 5. Quid, Jacōbe, habet dominī filia in (*in*) pōculō?

Form and answer five other questions in Latin.



CHAPTER IV. 1.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

52.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

*Masculine.*⁴

agricola, -ae, farmer.
nauta, -ae, sailor.
poēta, -ae, poet.
carrus, -ī, wagon.
rēmus, -ī, oar.
ventus, -ī, wind.

Neuter.

frūmentum, -ī, grain.
pābulum, -ī, fodder.

ADJECTIVES.

clārus, -a, -um, famous.
perītus, -a, -um, skilful.
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.

PREPOSITION.

in (with ablative), <i>in, on.</i>
in (with accusative), <i>into, to.</i>

53. In the preceding exercises an adjective qualifying a noun has had the same termination as the noun. Now observe the following examples: *agricola bonus*, a good farmer; *agricolae bonī*, of a good farmer; *agricolae bonō*, to or for a good farmer, etc. Here the adjective has a different termination from the noun. Since *agricola* is masculine, the adjective that goes with it must have the masculine form, as well as the same number and case.

¹ See note 1, p. 10.

² *for*, not *to*, the master.

³ When *ne* is appended to *nōn*, the answer *yes* is expected. See

note 2, p. 10. So in English, a question asked with *not* expects the answer *yes*.

⁴ See 11. 1.

54. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Agricolae validi.* 2. *Agricolam validum.* 3. *Agricolās validōs.* 4. *Agricola validus.* 5. *Agricolae validō.* 6. *Agricolārum validōrum.* 7. *Agricola valide.*

II. 1. A skilful sailor (*nom. and acc.*). 2. Skilful sailors (*nom. and acc.*). 3. Of a skilful sailor. 4. For a skilful sailor. 5. Skilful sailor (*voc.*). 6. For skilful sailors. 7. Of a famous poet. 8. Of famous poets. 9. Pleasing poets. 10. A pleasing poet (*nom. and acc.*).

2.

56.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Hortus agricolae māgnus est.* 2. *Agricola validus hortum māgnum habet.* 3.¹ *Agricolae (dat.) est hortus māgnus.* 4. *Nautae rēmus longus est.* 5. *Poēta vīnum bonum agricolae perītī laudat.* 6. *Hōra est quārta.* 7.² *Lūna est plēna.* 8. *Pābulum equī albī est frūmentum.* 9. *Dōminus servum perītum laudat.* 10.³ *Nautae (dat.) grāta sunt ōva et vīnum agricolae bonī.*

II. 1. *Ō⁴ agricola valide, carrus est plēnus frūmentī.* 2. *Domine bone, secunda hōra est, et discipulus est dēfessus.* 3. *Hortōs agricolārum perītōrum laudant.* 4. *Pōculum māgnum est vīnī plēnum.* 5.⁴ *Agricola bonus equō validō dat pābulum.*

¹ See 32.

² We may translate, *there is a full moon, it is a full moon, or the moon is full.* There is nothing in Latin answering to our *it* and *there* used in this way at the beginning of a sentence.

³ Translate this sentence without changing the order of the words, and you will feel the emphasis imparted to *nautae* from its position.

⁴ *Ō* sometimes accompanies the vocative.

3.

57.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. The poet likes¹ the farmer's wine. 2.² Farmers have large wagons and strong horses. 3. Skilful sailors like a good breeze. 4. In the garden there³ are many roses. 5. The poet and his³ daughter are in the wagon. 6. The horse carries the farmer's grain. 7. There is wine in the little girl's cup. 8. There are many⁴ small girls in the street. 9. Galba carries fodder for the horses. 10. The food of the little dove is grain.

II. 1. My (\bar{O}) good friend, the master's cup is full. 2. The servant gives the queen⁵ a large cup. 3. The strong sailors are carrying javelins in their³ arms. 4. In the strong wagon is good fodder for the farmer's horses. 5. In the poet's gardens there are many friends. 6. Farmers have horses, wagons, doves, eggs, and³ wine.

4.

58.

COLLOQUIUM.

Datne⁶ Carolus (*Charles*) amīcō cymbam (*boat*)?

Carolus amīcō cymbam et rēmōs dat.

Quid in cymbā habet Carolus?

Carolus rēmum et pīlum in cymbā habet.

Quota (*what*) hōra est?⁷ Hōra est quīnta.

Quid in carrō habet rūsticus (*countryman*) validus?

Quid in pōculō dēsīderat (*wants*) rūsticus dēfessus?

¹ Occasionally words occur in the English exercises which are purposely not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but by a little thought the pupil will understand what Latin word is meant.

² Translate in two ways.

³ Omit.

⁴ *Many and small.*

⁵ Not accusative.

⁶ Remember that **ne** is appended as the sign of a question.

⁷ *What time is it?* or, *What is the time of day?*

CHAPTER V. 1.

SECOND DECLENSION.

59.

		PARADIGM.		TERMINATIONS.	
		Puer, <i>boy</i> .			
		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V.	puer	puer	ī	—	ī
G.	puerī	puer	ōrum	ī	ōrum
D.	puerō	puer	īs	ō	īs
Ac.	puerum	puer	ōs	um	ōs
Ab.	puerō ¹	puer	īs	ō	īs

60.

VOCABULARY.

gener, -erī, M., *son-in-law*.liberī, -ōrum, (pl.) M., *children*.socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.vir, virī, M., *man, hero*.asper, -era, -erum, *rough*.liber, -era, -erum,² *free*.miser, -era, -erum, *poor, wretched*.tener, -era, -erum, *tender*.sextus, -a, -um, *sixth*.ā (ab), prep. w. abl., *by, away from*.amātur, (*he, she, it*) *is loved*.amantur, (*they*) *are loved*.laudātur, (*he, she, it*) *is praised*.laudantur, (*they*) *are praised*.puerī, general word for *children*.liberī, *children of free parents*.

61. *The farmer is praised by the queen* would be expressed in Latin thus: **Agricola ā (or ab) rēgīnā laudātur**; and *The queen is praised by the farmer*, thus: **Rēgīna ab (not ā) agricolā laudātur**.

Observe that in the first sentence, **rēgīnā**, and in the second, **agricolā**, denotes the person by whom the thing is done (the agent); also, that these words are in the ablative, and are preceded by **ā** or **ab**. The ablative thus used, together with the preposition, answers the question *by whom?* and is called the **ABLATIVE OF AGENT**.

¹ To translate **puerō**, "*with, from, by a boy*," as is commonly done, is wholly wrong. *With a boy* would be **cum puerō**; *from, or by a boy*, **ā puerō**. See p. 7, note 2.

² Decline the masculine of adjectives in *er* in this lesson like **puer**. The full declension is given on p. 24.

62. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The agent with passive verbs is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, — *ab* before vowels or *h*, *ā* or *ab* before consonants.

63. Read again **53** and **54**, then add the proper terminations of the adjectives, and translate the following:—

I. 1. Generī bon-, gener bon- (*nom. and voc.*). 2. Vir māgn-, ā virō māgn-. 3. Ab agricolā dēfess-, agricolae miser-. 4. Ā rēgīnā tener-. 5. Puerī asper-.

II. 1. By the bad father-in-law. 2. By the rough sailor. 3. By the children of the hero. 4. The free men (*nom. and acc.*). 5. Of the wretched sons-in-law.

2.

64.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Gener virī servus est. 2. Puer bonus ab amīcō laudātur. 3. Līberī ā nautā asperō amantur. 4. Puella tenera columbās parvās amat. 5. Columbae parvae ā puellā tenerā amantur. 6. Miserī servī ā dominō bonō laudantur. 7.¹ Lātā in viā sunt puerī multī et asperī. 8. Equī validī agricolae ā liberīs laudantur. 9. Fīlia socerī est misera. 10. Virī filiās poētae laudant.

II. 1. The sons-in-law of the men are farmers. 2. Good men are praised by their² friends. 3. The boy is loved by the rough sailors. 4. The sixth boy is a new one.² 5. The tired children are in the farmer's wagon. 6. The tender dove is loved by the little girl. 7. Poor slaves are not praised by their rough masters. 8. The strong man is in the poet's garden. 9. The heroes are praised by the pupils. 10. They love the daughter of the poor sailor.

¹ Adjective, preposition, noun, the three are combined. What is
is often the order where, as here, the English order? ² Omit.

CHAPTER VI. 1.

SECOND DECLENSION.

65.

PARADIGM.

Ager, <i>field</i> .		TERMINATIONS.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. ager	agrī	—	ī
G. agrī	agrōrum	ī	ōrum
D. agrō	agrīs	ō	īs
Ac. agrum	agrōs	um	ōs
Ab. agrō	agrīs	ō	īs

Observe that the above terminations are the same as those on page 20. Wherein does the declension of *ager* differ from that of *puer*?

66.

VOCABULARY.

<i>aper, aprī, M., boar.</i>	<i>aeger, aegra, aegrum,² sick.</i>
<i>culter, cultri, M., knife.</i>	<i>niger, nigra, nigrum, black.</i>
<i>faber, -brī, M., smith.</i>	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i> <i>beautiful, handsome.</i>
<i>liber,¹ -brī, M., book.</i>	<i>ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.</i>
<i>magister, -tri, M., master.</i>	<i>septimus, -a, -um, seventh.</i>
<i>minister, -tri, M., servant.</i>	

magister, a superior, director; hence, master of a school, etc.

dominus (43), master of a household, slaves, etc.

minister, an inferior, attendant, servant.

servus (43), a serving man, slave.

67. Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, and most adjectives in *er* like *aeger*. The most important nouns and adjectives that keep the *e* before *r* in all the cases were given in the vocabulary, 60, and should now be committed to memory.

68. Decline together *equus niger, bonus faber, aper asper, vir aeger*.

¹ Distinguish *liber, free*, from *liber, book*.

² See p. 24.

2.

69.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Socer est faber. 2. Magister est discipulī amīcus. 3. Generī virī sunt ministrī. 4. Culter puerō est grātus. 5. Librī magistrī discipulīs sunt grātī. 6. Vīnum rubrum ā fabrō dēfessō amātur. 7. Librī poētae ā magistrō aman- tur. 8. Puellae pulchrae virīs rosās rubrās dant. 9. Nauta cultrum longum habet. 10.¹⁾ Librōs multōs in bracchiīs por- tat puer.

II. 1. The fathers-in-law are smiths.² 2. The masters are loved by their pupils. 3. The man's son-in-law is a servant. 4. The knives are pleasing to the little boy. 5. The pretty³ cups are liked by the boys and girls. 6. A girl gives a man⁴ a beautiful rose. 7. The sailors have many long knives. 8. The children of the master are carrying⁵ the books in their arms. 9. The smith's son-in-law has children. 10. There is a rough boar in the farmer's field.

70. Answer the following in Latin:—

1. Quis (*who*) est amīcus poētae? 2. Quis est socer Carolī? 3. Ubi (*where*) sunt discipulī magistrī? 4. Amantne hodiē (*to-day*) pēnsū (*task*)? 5. Nōne Carolus columbae frūmentum hodiē dat? 6. Quae (*who, fem.*) rosās rubrās habet? 7. Quis brachia longa habet? 8. Quis est vir liber? 9. Ubi est equus rūsticī? 10. Quae puellās pulchrās habet? 11. Rēgīmanie puellās pulchrās habet? 12. Ubi sunt Jacōbī amīcī?

¹ What is peculiar in the order of the words? Translate as the words stand, and see what word is made emphatic by its position.

² What case is used after **est**

and **sunt**? Compare the first three sentences in I. See rule, 47.

³ See p. 19, note 1.

⁴ Not accusative.

⁵ Not passive. See p. 14, note 1.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

71.

PARADIGMS.

Bonus, good.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sing. N.V.	bon us , ě	bon a	bon um
G.	bon ī	bon ae	bon ī
D.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō
Ac.	bon um	bon am	bon um
Ab.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō
Plur. N.V.	bon ī	bon ae	bon a
G.	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
D.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs
Ac.	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
Ab.	bon īs	bon īs	bon īs

Liber, free.

Sing. N.V.	liber	liber a	liber um
G.	liber ī	liber ae	liber ī
D.	liber ō	liber ae	liber ō
Ac.	liber um	liber am	liber um
Ab.	liber ō	liber ā	liber ō
Plur. N.V.	liber ī	liber ae	liber a
G.	liber ōrum	liber ārum	liber ōrum
D.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs
Ac.	liber ōs	liber ās	liber a
Ab.	liber īs	liber īs	liber īs

Aeger, sick.

Sing. N.V.	aeger	aeger a	aeger um
G.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
D.	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
Ac.	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
Ab.	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō
Plur. N.V.	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr a
G.	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
D.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs
Ac.	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr a
Ab.	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs

CHAPTER VII.

THE IRREGULAR VERB **Sum** (stems **es, fu**), *I am*.

72. Principal parts, *sum, esse, fuī*.

73. For convenience the inflection of **sum** is given in full. Directions will be given from time to time as to what parts are to be learned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum , ¹ <i>I am</i> .	sumus , <i>we are</i> .
2. es , <i>thou art</i> . ²	estis , <i>you are</i> .
3. est , <i>he (she, it) is</i> .	sunt , <i>they are</i> .

IMPERFECT.

1. eram , ³ <i>I was</i> .	erāmus , <i>we were</i> .
2. erās , <i>thou wast</i> .	erātis , <i>you were</i> .
3. erat , <i>he was</i> .	erant , <i>they were</i> .

FUTURE.

1. erō , ⁴ <i>I shall be</i> .	erimus , <i>we shall be</i> .
2. eris , <i>thou wilt be</i> .	eritis , <i>you will be</i> .
3. erit , <i>he will be</i> .	erunt , <i>they will be</i> .

PERFECT.

1. fuī , <i>I have been, was</i> .	fuimus , <i>we have been, were</i> .
2. fuistī , <i>thou hast been, wast</i> .	fuistis , <i>you have been, were</i> .
3. fuit , <i>he has been, was</i> .	{ fuērunt , or fuēre , <i>they have been, were</i> .

PLUPERFECT.

1. fueram , <i>I had been</i> .	fuērāmus , <i>we had been</i> .
2. fuērās , <i>thou hadst been</i> .	fuērātis , <i>you had been</i> .
3. fuerat , <i>he had been</i> .	fuērant , <i>they had been</i> .

¹ **Sum** for **esum**.

² Or, *you are*, as in the plural. But in translating into Latin be careful to use the singular form

of the verb, if by *you* one person only is meant.

³ **Eram** for **esam**.

⁴ **Erō** for **esō**.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
1. fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>		fu erīmus, <i>we shall have been.</i>
2. fuerīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>		fu erītis, <i>you will have been.</i>
3. fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>		fu erint, <i>they will have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.¹

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1. sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
2. sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
3. sit	sint	esset	essent

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. fuerim	fu erīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
2. fuerīs	fu erītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
3. fuerit	fu erint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. es, <i>be thou.</i>	este, <i>be ye.</i>

FUTURE.

2. estō, <i>thou shalt be.</i>	estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>
3. estō, <i>he shall be.</i>	suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, esse, *to be.*PERFECT, fuisse, *to have been.*FUTURE, futūrus esse, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

¹ No meanings can be given to the subjunctive that are not misleading. Its forms are therefore better left untranslated until its use has been illustrated. The subjunctive is treated on pp. 164-186.

CHAPTER VIII. 1.

THE VERB *Sum.*

74. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive.

75.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Erō, eram, sum. 5. Erās, es, eris. 6. Estis, eritis, erātis. 7. Es, este. 8. Esse.

II. 1. I am, we are, I was, we were, I shall be, we shall be. 2. He was, they were, he is, they are, he will be, they will be. 3. You (*sing.*) will be, are, were. 4. You (*plur.*) will be, are, were. 5. Be ye, be thou. 6. To be.

2.

From this point the vocabularies follow the exercises, and it is recommended that the pupil go through the exercises mentally, referring to the vocabularies for the meanings of words. Before *writing* the translations into Latin the vocabularies should be reviewed, but the task of committing to memory will then be found an easy one.

76.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Inimīcus pīlum habet. 2. Inimīcō est pīlum. 3. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 4. Liberī agricolae erunt dēfessī. 5. Minerva āram in oppidō habēbat. 6. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 7. In terrā vinī, in aquā rānae sunt. 8. Inimīcī erāmus incolārum malōrum. 9. Oculī dominī dūrī erant māgnī et nigrī. 10.¹ Dominō dūrō erant oculī māgnī et nigrī. 11.¹ Dominus dūrus oculōs māgnōs et nigrōs habēbat. 12. Cōnsilium fabrī peritī bonum erat.

¹ What word is better left untranslated, though needed in the Latin?

II. 1.¹ The farmer had a wagon. 2. I shall be the man's friend. 3. There² is a large town on³ the island. 4. There was a red egg on the table. 5. Children were carrying the food of the men. 6. A boy gave a smith⁴ some² javelins. 7. In the town are enemies of the inhabitants. 8. They were praising the words of the sturdy farmer. 9. The poet's gifts will be pleasing to Minerva. 10. Boys, be ye strong and skilful.

3.

77.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eritis validō in carrō agricolae perītī. 2. Erās nōnus discipulus et filius poētae erat octāvus. 3. Ō miser serve, tū (*thou*) es inimīcus pulchrae Minervae. 4. Amīcus erō Minervae māgnae. 5.⁵ Agricolīs arātra dūra et valida dabant virī. 6. In Britannīā sunt oppida multa et māgna. 7. Puer bone, es amīcus equī miserī.

II. 1. A girl gave a sick sailor⁶ some wine and water. 2. The wine she carried in a pretty⁷ cup. 3. He praised the maiden's⁷ pretty cup and the ruddy wine. 4. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants of Britain. 5. Britain is a large island, and has handsome towns.

78.

VOCABULARY.

aqua, -ae, F., *water.*

āra, -ae, F., *altar.*

arātrum, -ī, N., *plough.*

cōnsīllium, -ī, N., *advice, plan.*

incola, -ae, M. & F., *inhabitant.*

inimīcus, -ī, M., *enemy.*

īnsula, -ae, F., *island.*

mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*

¹ Translate in two ways.

² Omit. See p. 18, note 2.

³ See vocabulary, 52.

⁴ Indirect object, see 33 & 34.

⁵ Compare the order with that

of 69. I. 10, and see the note there.

What name is given to the dative agricolis?

⁶ See 69. II. 6, and note.

⁷ See p. 19, note 1.

Minerva , -ae, F., <i>Minerva</i> , goddess of wisdom.	oppidum , -ī, N., town.
nōnus , -a, -um, adj., ninth.	rāna , -ae, F., frog.
octāvus , -a, -um, adj., eighth.	somnus , -ī, M., sleep.
oculus , -ī, M., eye.	terra , -ae, F., earth, land.
	verbum , -ī, N., word.

amābat, (he she it) was loving, loved.
dabat, (he, she, it) was giving, gave.
habēbat, (he, she, it) was having, had.
laudābat, (he, she, it) was praising, praised.
portābat, (he, she, it) was carrying, carried.

amābant, they were loving, loved.
dabant, they were giving, gave.
habēbant, they were having, had.
laudābant, they were praising, praised.
portābant, they were carrying, carried.

79. Nouns in *ius* and *ium* contract the genitive ending *ī* to *i*: **cōnsilī**. **Filius** (son) and **genius** (guardian deity), and proper nouns in *ius*, drop the *e* of the vocative: **fili**, **Mercurī**, *Mercury*. But the word is accented as if the longer form were used.

4.

80. COLLOQUIUM.

Nōnne aquam in pōculō habet faber?

Minimē. Faber in pōculō habet novum vīnum.
no

Dēsīderatne Galba somnum grātum?
wishes

Certē, nam hodiē est Galba dēfessus.
certainly for to-day

Ubi est amīcus agricolae pigrī?
lazy

Est in oppidō, nam nōn amābat amīcī cōnsilium.

Ubi sunt arma agricolārum validōrum?
tools

Agricolārum equī, carrī, arātra sunt in agrō.

CHAPTER IX. 1.

THE VERB Sum.

81. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive. See pp. 25 and 26.

82.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.
3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fuī.
5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis.
7. Fuisse.

II. 1. I have been, we have been, I had been, we had been, I shall have been, we shall have been. 2. He has been, they have been, he had been, they had been, he will have been, they will have been. 3. You (*sing.*) will have been, had been, have been. 4. You (*plur.*) will have been, had been, have been. 5. To have been.

2.

83.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In Graeciā erant templa multa. 2. In Graeciā erant templa deōrum et deārum. 3. Aurum erat in statuā Minervae. 4. Minervae fuit statua māgna et clāra. 5. Minerva statuam māgnam et clāram habēbat. 6. Multae et pulchrae erant Graeciae statuae. 7. Nōn alta erant pulchra Graeciae templa. 8. Fluvīi Graeciae nōn lātī et altī erant. 9. Clārī fuērunt multī Graeci. 10. Graecōrum antiquōrum erit glōria sempiterna.

II. 1. They had been in the towns of the Greeks. 2. The monuments of Greece were temples and statues. 3. The statue of Minerva had a shield and spear. 4. The arms of the Greeks were shields and spears. 5. The gods had many statues in Greece. 6. The red roses will be pleasing to the

queen. 7. The man's children are in the street. 8. He has been on the farmer's horse. 9. The children are carried in the poet's arms. 10. Many inhabitants of Britain have been skilful sailors.

84.

VOCABULARY.

altus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, high.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj., *ancient.*

arma, -ōrum, n. (plur.), *arms.*

aureus, -a, -um, adj., *of gold, golden.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.* p. 8, n. 1.

decimus, -a, -um, adj., *tenth.*

deus, -ī, m., *god* (262).

fluvius, -ī, m., *river* (79).

glōria, -ae, f., *glory.*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

monumentum, -ī, n., *monument*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj., *everlasting.*

statua, -ae, f., *statue.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

3.

85.

COLLOQUIUM.

DUO PUERĪ.

two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē? Nōnne est in scholā?
Where Charles *school*

Minimē. Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam, et libenter nāvigat.
likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba? Where did C. get a boat?
whence to Charles is a boat.

Ab avunculō, nam Carolus ab avunculō amātur.
from uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nesciō; procul dubiō prandium; etenim in animō
I don't know doubtless luncheon for mind
 habet . . .

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās patēbit.
good by to-morrow it will be open = the secret will be out.

CHAPTER X.
FIRST CONJUGATION.

86.

Ā-VERBS.

Amō (stem amā), *love*.PRINCIPAL PARTS :¹ amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

am ō am āmus

am or

am āmur

am ās am ātis

am āris, or -re

am āminī

amat am ant

am ātur

am antur

IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

am ābam am ābāmus

am ābar

am ābāmur

am ābās am ābātis

am ābāris, or -re

am ābāminī

am ābat am ābant

am ābātur

am ābantur

FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

am ābō am ābimus

am ābor

am ābimur

am ābis am ābitis

am āberis, or -re

am ābiminī

am ābit am ābunt

am ābitur

am ābuntur

PERFECT.

*I have loved, I loved, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amāvī amāvimus

amāvīstī amāvīstis

amāvīt amāvērunt, or -re

amātus {
 sum
 es
 estamātī {
 sumus
 estis
 sunt

¹ Certain forms of the verb are called, from their importance, *principal parts*. These forms are the first person of the present indicative, showing the *present stem*; the present infinitive, showing the *present inflexion*; the first person of the

perfect indicative, showing the *perfect stem*; and the perfect participle, showing the *participle stem*. The neuter of the participle is given, as intransitive verbs have the perfect participle only in that gender.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāv eram	amāv erāmus	amāt us	{ eram { erās { erat	amāt ī	{ erāmus { erātis { erant
amāv erās	amāv erātis				
amāv erat	amāv erant				

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāv erō	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{ erō { eris { erit	amāt ī	{ erimus { eritis { erunt
amāv erīs	amāv erītis				
amāv erit	amāv erint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.¹

PRESENT.

am em	am ēmus	am er	am ēmur
am ēs	am ētis	am ēris, or -re	am ēminī
am et	am ent	am ētur	am entur

IMPERFECT.

am ārem	am ārēmus	am ārer	am ārēmur
am ārēs	am ārētis	am ārēris, or -re	am ārēminī
am āret	am ārent	am ārētur	am ārentur

PERFECT.

amāv erim	amāv erīmus	amāt us	{ sim { sīs { sit	amāt ī	{ sīmus { sītis { sint
amāv erīs	amāv erītis				
amāv erit	amāv erint				

PLUPERFECT.

amāv issem	amāv issēmus	amāt us	{ essem { essēs { esset	amāt ī	{ essēmus { essētis { essent
amāv issēs	amāv issētis				
amāv isset	amāv issent				

¹ See p. 26, note.

IMPERATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

am ā, *love thou.*am āre, *be thou loved.*am āte, *love ye.*am āminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

am ātō, *thou shalt love.*am ātor, *thou shalt be loved.*am ātō, *he shall love.*am ātor, *he shall be loved.*am ātōte, *you shall love.*am autō, *they shall love.*am antor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. am āre, *to love.*am āri, *to be loved.*PERF. am āvisse, *to have loved.*am ātus esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. am ātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*am ātum irī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. am āns, -antis, *loving.*FUT. am ātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*_____ ¹GER.² am āndus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*PERF. am ātus, -a, -um, *having been loved.*

GERUND.

G. am āndī, *of loving.*D. am āndō, *for loving.*Ac. am āndum, *loving.*Ab. am āndō, *by loving.*

SUPINE.

Ac. am ātum, *to love.*Ab. am ātū, *to love, to be loved.*

¹ Observe that the Latin has neither a perfect active nor a present passive participle.

² Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle*.

CHAPTER XI. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

87. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *amō*.¹

88. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Amātis, amābātis, amābitis.* 2. *Amātur, amābātur, amābitur.* 3. *Amat, amābat, amābit.* 4. *Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur.* 5. *Amō, amor.* 6. *Amās, amāris.* 7. *Amāmus, amāmur.* 8. *Amābitis, amābiminī.* 9. *Amābat, amābātur.* 10. *Amāre, amārī.*

II. 1. He loves, he is loved. 2. He will love, he will be loved. 3. They were loved, they were loving. 4. I shall love, I shall be loved. 5. You (*sing.*) love, you are loved. 6. They loved, they were loving, they will love. 7. You (*plur.*) are loving, you were loving, you will be loving. 8. Love (*sing.*), be loved. 9. To be loved, to love.

2.

89. EXERCISES.

Laudō, praise; portō, carry; superō, conquer.

I. 1. *Laudat, portat, superat.* 2. *Laudātur, portātur, superātur.* 3. *Laudābitur, portābitur, superābitur.* 4. *Laudāsne? portābāsne? superābisne?* 5. *Laudāmur, portābāmur, superābimur.* 6. *Laudā, portā, superā.* 7. *Superāre, portāre, laudārī.* 8. *Nōn superāminī, nōn portābāminī, nōn laudābiminī.* 9. *Laudāre, portāminī, superāte.* 10. *Laudor, portābar, superābor.*

II. 1. Thou praisest, you carry, he conquers. 2. He is praised, they are carried, they will be conquered. 3. I praise, I was carrying, I shall conquer. 4. Thou art praised, thou

¹ Notice how frequently the letter *r* marks a form as passive. Where is it absent in the first three tenses?

art carried, thou art conquered. 5. Praise (thou), carry, conquer. 6. He will be conquered, he was praised, it is carried. 7. To conquer, to be carried, to be praised. 8. Do we carry? are we conquered? are we praised? 9. I am not carried, he was not conquered, they are not praised. 10. Thou wilt praise, he will be praised, they were carried.

90. *Examine the following sentences:—*

1. *Agricola ā rēgīnā laudātur, the farmer is praised by the queen.*
2. *Agricola rēgīnae verbīs laudātur, the farmer is praised by the words of the queen.*
3. *Servī gladiīs armantur, the slaves are being armed with swords.*

On the first example see 61 and 62. In the second and third, observe that there is no *ā* or *ab* used with *verbīs* and *gladiīs*.

These ablatives, *verbīs* and *gladiīs*, answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Means or Instrument**.

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—**Means and Instrument are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.**

3.

92.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Puellae rosās amant.* 2. *Rosae albae ā puellis amantur.* 3. *Homērus virōs Graecōs laudābat.* 4. *Ab¹ Homērō laudābantur virī Graecī.* 5. *Oppidum nōminābant Rōmam.² Nō: Oppidum Rōma³ nōminābātur.* 6. *Servōs gladiīs armābimus.* 7. *Inimicus gladiō vulnerātur.* 8. *Inimicus ā Galbā vulnerātur.* 9. *Ō Rōmānī, servōs hastīs armāte.*

II. 1. Sing, good boy. 2. Many goddesses were loved by the Greeks. 3. The boy will put the doves to flight.

¹ Before words beginning with
h use *ab*, not *ā*.

² Predicate accusative.

³ Predicate nominative. See 47.

4. The doves will be put to flight by the boy. 5. We shall invite friends and enemies. 6. Friends and enemies will be invited. 7. The Romans were not loved by the Greeks. 8. You will be summoned by a golden¹ trumpet. 9. The slaves will be armed with javelins. 10. The black horse was wounded by a spear.

4.

93.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dum nōs (*we*) labōrāmus, cantat caecus poēta.
 2. Quid (*what*) cantābat caecus poēta dum labōrābāmus?
 3. Dum in oppidō ambulant dominī, servī labōrant in agrō.
 4. Puerī vigilābunt dum somnus grātus virōs dēfessōs recreābit.
 5. Nauta dēfessus aquā frīgidā recreābitur.
 6. Equī dēfessī pābulō bonō recreābuntur.
 7. Verba bona discipulī ā magistrō laudābantur.
 8. Mūrī altī ab oppidānīs aedificābantur.
 9.² Multōs et altōs mūrōs aedificābunt oppidānī.
 10. Nōn ā pigrīs virīs oppidum aedificābātur.

II. 1. While the man was working, the boy was singing.
 2. While the master is being refreshed with sleep, the servant is watching.
 3. Pleasant sleep refreshes the weary boy.
 4. By pleasant sleep the boy will be refreshed.
 5. A high wall is being built by the townsmen.
 6. A famous Roman was called the Sword³ of Italy.
 7. They called a famous Roman the Sword⁴ of Italy.
 8. The tired farmer is refreshed by food and sleep.⁵
 9. We will walk in the streets of the town, while the farmers are working⁶ in the fields.
 10. Sing, O blind poet, while we toil.

¹ *Golden, aureā or ex aurō.*
 The material of which a thing is made is expressed in Latin either by an adjective or by *ē* (*ex*) with the ablative. How is it in English?

² Compare, for order, **77**. I. 5, and **69**. I. 10, and note.

³ *Sword*, in the nominative case, just as if *was* took the place of *was called*. See **92**. I. 6, and note.

⁴ *Sword*, in the accusative case. See **92**. I. 5, and note.

⁵ Cf. 5 and 6 in I.

⁶ Imitate 4 in I.

94.

VOCABULARY.

aedificō, 1, *build*.
 ambulō, 1, *walk*.
 armō, 1, *arm*.
 cantō, 1, *sing*.
 fugō, 1, *put to flight*.
 invitō, 1, *invite, summon*.
 labōrō, 1, *work, toil*.
 laudō, 1, *praise*.
 nōmīnō, 1, *name, call*.
 portō, 1, *carry*.
 recreō, 1, *refresh*.
 superō, 1, *surpass, conquer*.
 vigilō, 1, *watch*.
 vulnerō, 1, *wound*.

aqua,¹ -ae, f., *water*.
 aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden*.
 caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.
 dum, adv., *while*.
 ē (ex), prep. w. abl., *out of, from*.
 frigidus, -a, -um, adj., *cold*.
 gladius, -ī, m., *sword (79)*.
 Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer*.
 Itāliā, -ae, f., *Italy*.
 mūrūs, -ī, m., *wall*.
 oppidānus, -ī, m., *townsman*.
 piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *lazy*.
 Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
 Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*.

5.

95.

COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

Father and little son.

- P. Quae, mī filiōle, in pēnsō hodiernō tractābantur?
 what my little son lesson to-day's treat or discuss
- F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus atque verbum amō.
 case and
- P. Quid significat Anglicē verbum amō?
 means in English
- F. Amō significat "love."
- P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.
 about also me tell
- F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.
 rule you
- P. Rēgulamne tibi dābat magister?
- F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō instrūmentī. Cum ablā-
 certainly instrument with
- tīvō instrūmentī nunquam pōnitur praepositō; ante ablātī-
 never is put preposition before
- vum agentis semper pōnitur praepositō ā vel ab.
 of agent always or
- P. Optimē, mī puer; tibi erit mālum rubrum.
 well done apple

¹ Words are sometimes purposely repeated in the vocabularies.

CHAPTER XII. 1.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

96. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**.

97. The compound tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb **sum** with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like **bonus**) agrees in gender and number with the subject: **amāta est**, *she was loved*; **amātī sunt**, *they were loved*.

98. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Amāvit**, **amāverat**, **amāverit**. 2. **Amātus est**, **amātus erat**, **amātus erit**. 3. **Amāvērunt**, **amāverant**, **amāverint**. 4. **Amāvī**, **amātus sum**. 5. **Amāverāmus**, **amātī erāmus**. 6. **Amāveritis**, **amātī eritis**. 7. **Amāvisse**, **amātus esse**.

II. 1. You loved, you have been loved. 2. You had loved, you had been loved. 3. You will have loved, you will have been loved. 4. He has loved, he has been loved. 5. We had loved, we had been loved. 6. To have been loved, to have loved.

2.

99. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Laudātus est**, **portātus est**, **superātus est**. 2. **Laudāvitne?** **portāveratne?** **superāveritne?** 3. **Portāvistī**, **laudāvistis**, **superāvit**. 4. **Superāverās**, **portāveris**, **laudāveritis**. 5. **Laudātī estis**, **portāta sunt**, **superātus es**. 6. **Nōne laudātae sunt?** **nōne portātae estis?** **nōne superātae sumus?** 7. **Portāvī**, **laudātus sum**, **superātus eram**. 8. **Nōn laudāvimus**, **nōn portāverimus**, **nōn superāverō**. 9. **Laudāvisse**, **portāvisse**, **superāvisse**. 10. **Portātus esse**, **superātus esse**, **laudātus esse**.

II. 1. They have carried, we have been praised, you have been conquered. 2. Have I praised? have you been carried? had they conquered? 3. We had been carried, I shall have

praised, they will have been conquered. 4. You had not carried, thou hadst not praised, thou hadst not been conquered. 5. To have been conquered, to have praised, to have carried. 6. I had praised, I had been conquered, I (*fem.*) had been carried. 7. Has it not been praised? will it not have been carried? have they not been conquered? 8. We (*fem.*) had been carried, thou wilt have praised, he conquered. 9. They praised, you carried, we conquered. 10. I was praised, thou wast conquered, it was carried.

3

100. In Latin, the words for *my, thy, your, our, his, her, its,* and *their,* are very often omitted when they are not emphatic. Accordingly, in the exercises to be turned into Latin, for the present, leave these words untranslated.

101.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pūgna fortūnā mūtāta est. 2. Fortūna pūgnam mūtāvit. 3. Rōmānī Graecōs superāverant. 4. Graecī ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. 5. Virī multī et ēgregiī agrōs arāvērunt. 6. Ministrī scūtīs armātī sunt. 7. Agricola ēgregius ā ministrō miserō vituperātus est. 8. Agrī lātī ab agricolīs arātrō māgnō arātī sunt. 9. Magister malōs discipulōs vituperāvit. 10. Poēta pūgnās et victōriās virōrum clārōrum cantāvit.

Read again the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36.

II. 1. An eagle changed the fortune of the battle. 2. We shall witness a battle on the broad river. 3. Many good men will have been blamed by their enemies. 4. The boys will have recited to their master. 5. The land in Italy has been ploughed with iron ploughs. 6. The master freed his pupils from their hard tasks (*abl.*). 7. The goddess Minerva has been praised by many poets. 8. The victories of famous men have been sung by the poets. 9. The tyrant armed a great number of slaves with swords.

102.

VOCABULARY.

arō, 1, *plough*.liberō, 1, *free, set free*.mūtō, 1, *change*.recitō, 1, *read aloud, recite*.spectō, 1, *look at, witness*.superō, 1, *surpass, conquer*.vituperō, 1, *blame, censure*.ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *excellent*.ferreus, -a, -um, adj., *of iron, iron*.fortūna, -ae, F., *fortune*.numerus, -ī, M., *number*.pēnsum, -ī, N., *task, lesson*.pūgna, -ae, F., *battle*.scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*.terra, -ae, F., *earth, land*.tyrannus, -ī, M., *tyrant*.vīctōria, -ae, F., *victory*.

CHAPTER XIII. 1.

THIRD DECLENSION.

103. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

104. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems*, *liquid stems*, *sibilant stems*. See 3.

MUTE STEMS.

105.

PARADIGMS.

Prīnceps, M., <i>chief.</i>	Rēx, M., <i>king.</i>	Jūdex, M., <i>judge.</i>	Aetās, F., <i>age.</i>	Caput, N., <i>head.</i>
Stem prīncip-	St. rēg-	St. jūdic-	St. aetāt-	St. capit-

SINGULAR.

N.V. prīnceps	rēx	jūdex	aetās	caput
G. prīncipis	rēgis	jūdicis	aetātis	capitis
D. prīncipī	rēgī	jūdicī	aetātī	capitī
Ac. prīncipem	rēgem	jūdicem	aetātem	caput
Ab. prīncipe	rēge	jūdice	aetate	capite

PLURAL.

N.V. prīncipēs	rēgēs	jūdicēs	aetātēs	capita
G. prīncipum	rēgum	jūdicum	aetātum	capitum
D. prīncipibus	rēgibus	jūdicibus	aetātibus	capitibus
Ac. prīncipēs	rēgēs	jūdicēs	aetātēs	capita
Ab. prīncipibus	rēgibus	jūdicibus	aetātibus	capitibus

Pēs, M., <i>foot</i> .	Mīlēs, M., <i>soldier</i> .	TERMINATIONS.	
St. ped-	St. milit-	MASC. & FEM.	
SINGULAR.		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. pēs	mīles	s	ēs
G. pedis	militis	is	um
D. pedī	militī	ī	ibus
Ac. pedem	militem	em	ēs
Ab. pede	milite	e	ibus
PLURAL.		NEUTER.	
N.V. pedēs	militēs	—	a
G. pedum	militum	is	um
D. pedibus	militibus	i	ibus
Ac. pedēs	militēs	—	a
Ab. pedibus	militibus	e	ibus

106. Observe that the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is not always the same in the nominative as in the other cases.

107. Consonant stems may be found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular. But there are some exceptions.

108. Decline *grex*, *poēma*, *servitūs*. Decline together *lapis asper*, *fidus comēs*, and *mīlēs aeger*. For the nouns, see **110**.

2.

109.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Poēta comitī agrō poēma grātum recitāvit. 2. Comēs poētae poēmate grātō liberātus est cūrā.¹ 3. Māgnus erat equitum numerus. 4. Mīlitēs multī ā servō domīnī invītātī sunt. 5. Gregēs albōs habent agricolae² insulae vicīnae. 6. Ager vicīnus lapidēs multōs et asperōs habet. 7. In agrō vicīnō sunt lapidēs multī et asperī. 8. Servitūs ā virīs nōn est amāta. 9. Pēs puerī lapide asperō vulnerātus est. 10. Rēgis amīcī ā mīlitibus gladiīs et pīlis sunt fugātī.

II. 1. The king has changed the fortune of the war. 2. The fortune of the war was changed by the king. 3. The

¹ from care. See 101. II. 6.

² The subject.

CHAPTER XIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

112.

Ē-VERBS.

Moneō (stem monē), *advise*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

I advise, etc.

mon eō	mon ēmus
mon ēs	mon ētis
mon et	mon ent

PASSIVE.

I am advised, etc.

mon eor	mon ēmur
mon ēris, or-re	mon ēmini
mon ētur	mon entur

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, etc.

mon ēbam	mon ēbāmus
mon ēbās	mon ēbātis
mon ēbat	mon ēbant

I was advised, etc.

mon ēbar	mon ēbāmur
mon ēbāris, or-re	mon ēbāmini
mon ēbātur	mon ēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall advise, etc.

mon ēbō	mon ēbimus
mon ēbis	mon ēbitis
mon ēbit	mon ēbunt

I shall be advised, etc.

mon ēbor	mon ēbimur
mon ēberis, or-re	mon ēbimini
mon ēbitur	mon ēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have advised, I advised, etc.

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuīt	monuērunt, or-re

I have been (was) advised, etc.

monitus	{ sum	monitī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised, etc.

monu eram	monu erāmus
monu erās	monu erātis
monu erat	monu erant

I had been advised, etc.

monitus	{ eram	monitī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	monitī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

mon eam	mon eāmus	mon ear	mon eāmur
mon eās	mon eātis	mon eāris, or -re	mon eāminī
mon eat	mon eant	mon eātur	mon eantur

IMPERFECT.

mon ērem	mon ērēmus	mon ērer	mon ērēmur
mon ērēs	mon ērētis	mon ērēris, or -re	mon ērēminī
mon ēret	mon ērent	mon ērētur	mon ērentur

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	monitī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	monitī	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

mon ē, advise thou.	mon ēre, be thou advised.
mon ēte, advise ye.	mon ēminī, be ye advised.

FUTURE.

mon ētō, thou shalt advise.	mon ētor, thou shalt be advised.
mon ētō, he shall advise.	mon ētor, he shall be advised.
mon ētōte, you shall advise.	
mon ento, they shall advise.	mon entor, they shall be advised.

ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES. mon ēre , <i>to advise.</i>	mon ērī , <i>to be advised.</i>	
PERF. mon uisse , <i>to have advised.</i>	monit us esse , <i>to have been adv'd.</i>	
FUT. monit ūrus esse , <i>to be about to advise.</i>	monit um īrī , <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mon ēns, -entis , <i>advising.</i>	_____
FUT. monit ūrus, -a, -um , <i>about to advise.</i>	GER. mon eudus, -a, -um , <i>to be advised.</i>
_____	PERF. monit us, -a, -um , <i>having been advised.</i>

GERUND.

G. mon endī , <i>of advising.</i>
D. mon endō , <i>for advising.</i>
Ac. mon endum , <i>advising.</i>
Ab. mon endō , <i>by advising.</i>

SUPINE.

Ac. monit um , <i>to advise.</i>	Ab. monit ū , <i>to advise, to be advised.</i>
---	---



CHAPTER XV. 1.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

113. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō**.

114. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Monet, monētur. 2. Monēbat, monēbātur. 3. Monēbit, monēbītur. 4. Monē, monēre. 5. Monēte, monēminī. 6. Monēbimus, monēbimur. 7. Monēmus, monēmur. 8. Monēbās, monēs. 9. Monēbis, monēris. 10. Monērī, monēre.

II. 1. You are advising, you will be advised, you were advised. 2. Advise ye, be ye advised. 3. We do advise,

we are advising, we shall be advising. 4. We were advising, we were advised. 5. They are advised, they advised, they were advising. 6. They will advise, they will be advised.

2.

115.

EXERCISES.

Habeō, have, or hold; dēleō,¹ destroy; terreō, frighten.

I. 1. Habet, dēlēbat, terrēbit. 2. Nōne habēmus? nōne dēlēbāmus? nōne terrēbimus? 3. Dēlēs, habēbās, terrēbunt. 4. Habēte, terrēte, dēlēte. 5. Dēlētur,² habēbātur, terrēbātur.² 6. Terrēre, dēlēri, habēri. 7. Habetne? dēlēturne? terrēbatne? 8. Dēlēbitur, habēbantur, terrēbimīnī. 9. Nōn terrēmus, nōn dēlēbunt, nōn habent. 10. Habēbuntur, terrentur, dēlēbantur.

II. 1. We are held, they will be destroyed, he was frightened. 2. I frighten, thou hast (you have), he destroys. 3. To have, to destroy, to be frightened. 4. Is he frightened? are they destroyed? were you held? 5. Destroy (thou), have (ye), frighten (ye). 6. Have we not? does he not frighten? did they not destroy? 7. You will be frightened, it is held, we were frightened. 8. I was holding, he was destroying, you were frightening. 9. I shall destroy, we shall frighten, they have.

3.

116.

EXERCISES.

Before translating the following exercises, review the tables of declensions and terminations, pp. 41 and 42.

I. 1. Poenam merēbis, sī memoriā nōn exercēbis.³

¹ For principal parts of *dēleō*, see vocabulary, 119.

² The present, which denotes continued action, means *it is being (destroyed)*; the imperfect, *he was being (frightened)*.

³ Translate as if it were the present tense; but in Latin the future is necessary, because future time is meant. Cf. 93. I. 4. Observe the difference between the Latin and English idioms.

2. Exercē memoriam, comēs. 3. Studium memoriam auget.
 4. Mīlitēs ā ducibus exercentur et docentur. 5. Perīcula
 mīlitēs nōn terrēbunt. 6. Perīculum nōn timēbit mīlēs.
 7. Oppidum ā mīlitibus tenētur. 8. Jūdicēs poenīs malōs
 coercent. 9. Quid vidēs? 10. Multa videō.

II. 1. The tyrant is restrained. 2. The water of the river
 was increased. 3. The leader will have a statue. 4. The
 faithful comrade advises his friend. 5. The friend is advised
 by his faithful companion. 6. Lazy slaves fear a hard mas-
 ter. 7. A hard master is feared by lazy slaves. 8. Italy is
 the land of famous poets. 9. The soldiers will not be terrified
 by dangers. 10. The boy remembered the master's words.

117. Malōs (I. 8), *bad men*, and multa (I. 10), *many things*,
 are examples of the frequent use in Latin of an adjective without
 a noun. Compare, in English, *the good, the wise*.

4.

118.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equōs et equitēs multōs in viā videō. 2. Cŷrus,
 pŷmus Persārum rēx,¹ nōmina² mīlitum memoriā tenēbat.
 3. Sī oppidum dēlēbunt, poenam merēbunt. 4. Prīncipēs ā
 templō deī prohibēbimus. 5. Voluptātēs memoriāe augē-
 bantur. 6. Studiō augētur memoria. 7. Mīlitēs ā prīncipe
 monēbantur. 8. Rēx māgnūm mīlitum numerum tenēbat.
 9. Prīnceps equitēs pigrōs exercēbat.

II. 1. In ancient states there were many slaves. 2. Why
 had the ancient Romans many slaves? 3. We saw the
 great number of horsemen in the road and were frightened.
 4. Roman boys were often taught by Greek slaves. 5. Greek
 slaves often taught Roman boys. 6. The horsemen were
 trained by the king's son. 7. Many horses and horsemen are
 seen in the town. 8. The chief will deserve a great victory.

¹ Rēx, in apposition with Cŷrus. See 157.

² names.

119.

VOCABULARY.

coerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, *check, restrain.*

exerceō, 2, -uī, -itum, *train, exercise.*

habeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *have, hold.*

mereō, 2, -uī, -itum, *deserve, merit.*

prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *prevent, keep off.*

terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten.*

timeō, 2, -uī, —, *fear.*

augeō, 2, **auxī**,¹ **auctum**, *increase.*

dēleō, 2, -ēvī,² -ētum, *destroy.*

doceō, 2, -uī, **doctum**,³ *teach.*

teneō, 2, -uī, **tentum**,⁴ *keep, hold.*

videō, 2, **vidī**,⁵ **vīsum**, *see; passive, seem.*

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj., old, ancient.*

cīvitās, -ātis, *f., state.*

cūr, *adv., why?*

Cȳrus, -ī, *m., Cyrus.*

dux, **ducis**, *m. & f., leader, general.*

fidus, -a, -um, *adj., faithful.*

memoria, -ae, *f., memory.*

memoriā teneō, *remember.*

perīculum, -ī, *n., danger.*

poēna, -ae, *f., punishment.*

quid, *interrog. pron., what?*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman (94).*

saepe, *adv., often.*

sī, *conj., if.*

studium, -ī, *n., zeal, study.*

templum, -ī, *n., temple.*

To be read.

CHAPTER XVI. 1.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

120. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō**.

121.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Monuit**, **monuerat**, **monuerit**. 2. **Monuērunt**, **monuerant**, **monuerint**. 3. **Monuī**, **monitus sum**. 4. **Monuerit**, **monitus erit**. 5. **Monuistī**, **monuerās**, **monueris**. 6. **Monitus est**, **monitus erat**, **monitus erit**. 7. **Monuisse**, **monitus esse**.

II. 1. You have advised, you had advised, you will have advised. 2. They have been advised, they had been advised,

¹ **Auxī** for **aug-sī**. See p. 1, n. 2.

² Only **fleō**, *weep*, **neō**, *spin*, and the compounds of the obsolete **pleō**, *fill*, are conjugated like **dēleō**, with the perfect in **ēvī**.

³ Observe, not **docitum**.

⁴ Observe, not **tenitum**.

⁵ **Vidī**. Perfect stem formed by lengthening the vowel of the present stem, **vid** to **vidī**.

they will have been advised. 3. I had advised, I had been advised. 4. He has advised, he has been advised. 5. We have advised, we have been advised. 6. To have been advised, to have advised.

2.

122.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Habuit, dēlēvit, terruit. 2. Habuistī, dēlēvistī, terruistī. 3. Nōn dēlēvimus, nōn dēlēverāmus, nōn dēlēverimus. 4. Dēlētum est, territus erat, habita sunt. 5. Habuerōne? estne territa? suntne dēlētae? 6. Nōnne habuerātis? nōnne dēlētum erat? nōnne terruērunt? 7. Terruisse, dēlēvisse, habitus esse. 8. Dēlēverās, territus erās, habuistis. 9. Habuerint, dēlētum erit, habuērunt. 10. Dēlēta sunt, habitū sumus, territae estis.

II. 1. They have had, they have frightened, they have destroyed. 2. I had had, I had been frightened, I had destroyed. 3. Have you had? had he destroyed? has he frightened? 4. We had not destroyed, they (*fem.*) had not been frightened, you had not destroyed. 5. We have had, we shall have destroyed, we had been frightened. 6. To have destroyed, to have been held, to have been frightened. 7. Have you been frightened? had they (*neut.*) been destroyed? has she had? 8. I have destroyed, I have not had, I shall not have been frightened. 9. They will have had, they will have been frightened, they (*neut.*) will have been destroyed. 10. Have you not had? did they not destroy? have you (*fem.*) not been frightened?

3.

123.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēx Rōmam obsēderat. 2. Rōma ā rēge obsēssa erat. 3. Scriba cum (*with*) rēge sedēbat. 4. Īra ferōcem (*fierce*) animum virī mōvit. 5. Rēgulī conjugī et liberīs

alimenta praebuērunt Rōmānī. 6. Captīvī retentī sunt. 7. Novamne lūnam vīdistī? 8. Aquila in (on) templō sēdit. 9. Poēta flēvit quia fīlius captīvus erat. 10. Caesar oppidum Galliae obsēdit.

II. 1. The town was besieged by the general. 2. Why did the general besiege the town? 3. The king is sitting¹ with his clerk. 4. The minds of the men were moved with anger. 5. Regulus was retained (as) a prisoner.² 6. Regulus deserved great glory. 7. The new moon has been seen. 8. The commander's daughter was a prisoner. 9. We wept because we were prisoners. 10. The town had been besieged by Pyrrhus.

4.

124.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militibus māgna praemia ā rēge praebita sunt. 2. Militēs timuērunt quia elephantōs vīdērunt. 3. Numerum verbōrum auximus. 4. Caesar militēs in oppidō retinuerat. 5. Jūdicum bonōrum memoria nunquam dēlēbitur. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum monumenta³ dēlēta sunt. 7. Dux castra ab oppidō mōverat. 8. Dominus servōs in servitūte tenuit. 9. Multa verba in memoriā mānsērunt. 10. Militis conjunx in Minervae templō sedēbat.

II. 1. The king furnished food for his weary soldiers. 2. Elephants had frightened the horses of the Romans. 3. Have you increased the number of your friends? 4. Caesar's soldiers were besieged in the town. 5. The sword of the tyrant has restrained the judge. 6. War has destroyed many monuments³ of great men. 7. The camp had been moved away from the town. 8. We weep if our children are held in slavery. 9. Shall you remain in Italy?

¹ Not passive.

² Predicate nom.; see 47.

³ When a noun is limited both

by an adjective and a genitive, the order often is: *adjective, genitive, noun*. Cf. 118. I. 2 and 8.

125.

VOCABULARY.

fleō, 2, **flēvī**, **flētum**, *weep, bewail.*

maneō, 2, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, *remain, await.*

moveō, 2, **mōvī**,¹ **mōtum**, *move.*

ob-sideō, 2, **-sēdī**,¹ **-sēssum**, *besiege.*

praebeō, 2, **-uī**, **-itum**, *furnish.*

re-tineō, 2, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, *keep back, retain.*

sedeō, 2, **sēdī**,¹ **sēssum**, *sit.*

alimentum, **-ī**, *N.*, *food, support.*

animus, **-ī**, *M.*, *mind.*

Caesar, **-aris**, *M.*, *Caesar.* (134.)

captīvus,² **-ī**, *M.*, *prisoner, captive.*

castra, **-ōrum**, (*pl.*) *N.*, *camp.*

conjunx, **conjugis**, *F.*, *wife.*

elephantus, **-ī**, *M.*, *elephant.*

īra, **-ae**, *F.*, *anger.*

lūna, **-ae**, *F.*, *moon.*

novus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *new.*

nunquam, *adv.*, *never.*

praemium, **-ī**, *N.*, *reward.*

Pyrrhus, **-ī**, *M.*, *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.

quia, *conj.*, *because.*

Rēgulus, **-ī**, *M.*, *Regulus*, a Roman.

scrība, **-ae**, *M.*, *clerk.* (11. 1.)

5.

126.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. **Latīnē** **mibi** **interrogantī** **respondē** **sī** **possīs.** **Quae**
to me asking answer you can what
īnsula **Graeciae** **est** **parva** **quidem** **sed** **clāra?**
to be sure

D. **Admodum** **clāra** **est** **Ithaca** **īnsula**, **ubi** **habitābat** **Ulixēs.**
very where Ulysses

P. **Rēctē**, **mī** **puer**, **Ulixēs** **Ithacae** **rēx** **fuit** **et** **dux** **in** **bellō**
right leader
ēgregius. **Quis** **cantāvit** **dē** **Ulixē** **ēgregiō?**

D. **Homērus**, **poēta** **caecus**, **quī** **autem** **Ulixem** **nunquam**
blind who however never
vīderat.

P. **Tenēsne** **memoriā** **nōmen** **fīdī** **servī** **Ulixis?**
name

D. **Servus** **Ulixis** **fīdus** **erat** **Eumaeus.**

¹ See p. 49, note 5.

² Also *captīva*, *-ae*, *F.*

CHAPTER XVII. 1.

REVIEW.

127.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Magister discipulōs invitāvit. 2. Nōne ā magistrō discipulī invitātī sunt? 3. Vidistīne agricolārum arātra ferrea? 4. Militēs lapidēs māgnōs portābant. 5. Rēx ab oppidō castra mōvit. 6. Gregis custōdēs lapidibus fugātī sunt. 7. Mī¹ fili, poēmata Homērī recitāvistīne? 8. Sī oppidum tenuerimus, victōriam merēbimus. 9. Coniungēs militum pūgnan spectābant et flēbant. 10. In Italiā antiquā ā Pyrrhō Epīri rēge superātī sunt Rōmānī.

II. 1. We shall see the flocks in the fields. 2. The king was not frightened by the elephant. 3. Horses are frightened by elephants. 4. The townsmen were sitting on the wall. 5. The prisoners were wounded by the soldiers with their swords. 6. My boy, what are you looking at? 7. Do you not see the horsemen's swords? 8. Do you remember the poems of the Roman poet? 9. The king's sons were finding fault with fortune. 10. Why are the townsmen armed with swords?

128. *Examine the two following groups of sentences:—*

1. Iter ab Arare Helvētīī āverterant, *the Helvetii had turned their course from the Arar.*
2. Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete, *I will brush down the cobwebs from the wall.*
3. Hannibal ex Italiā excēssit, *Hannibal withdrew from Italy.*
1. Nōs cūrā liberābis, *you will free us from care.*
2. Oculīs sē prīvāvit, *he deprived himself of his sight (eyes).*
3. Homo cibō caret, *the man is in want of food.*

129. The verbs have the general idea of *separation*; and in the first group the ablative with a preposition, in the second the ablative

¹ Vocative singular of *meus*, *my*.

alone, answers the question *from what? of what?* Observe further, that the verbs of the first group are compounds of *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, and the "separation" is *literal*, or *physical*; in the second group the "separation" is *figurative*, or less literal.

130. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Separation is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*), in connection with verbs compounded with these prepositions,¹ or by the ablative alone with simple verbs meaning *to set free, deprive, or want*.

2.

131. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hunc (*him*) *ā* tuīs *ārīs* arcēbis. 2. Fīlius rēgis Rōmānōs cūrā liberāvit. 3. Rōmānī *ā* filiō rēgis cūrā liberātī sunt. 4. Vir aeger aquā prīvātus est. 5. Servī servitūte liberābuntur. 6. Dux Rōmānus Corinthum multīs statuīs prīvāvit. 7. Servī, equīs dēfessīs aquam praebēte. 8.² Sāturnus Italiōs agrī cultūram docuit. 9. Liber vīnī erat deus et in Italiā templa multa habēbat. 10. Avārī milītēs *ārās* dōnīs spoliānt. 11. Mī puer, equus pābulō et aquā caret.

Before translating the following sentences, read over the explanations and rules on pp. 20, 21, and 36, and consider what expressions are equivalent to the Latin ablative of *agent* with *ā* or *ab*, the ablative of *means*, and the ablative of *separation*.

II. 1. They deprived the sick man of water. 2. The state was freed from the tyrant by Brutus. 3. The Italians were taught by Saturn. 4. The leader adorned the town with statues. 5. The horsemen are in want of swords and horses. 6. Corinth was robbed of many statues by a Roman general. 7. The goddess will keep off the Romans

¹ With other verbs than those indicated in 129 and 130, of similar meaning, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes omitted.

² Observe the two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*, with *doccō*.

from her temple. 8. The town was destroyed by the plans of the general. 9. Will not the Romans be kept off from the temple? 10. They thrust forth the leaders from the town. 11. The leaders are hustled out of town.

132.

VOCABULARY.

<i>agrī cultūra</i> , -ae, F., <i>agriculture</i> .	<i>exturbō</i> , 1, <i>thrust out</i> .
<i>avārus</i> , -a, -um, adj., <i>greedy</i> .	<i>Italus</i> , -i, M., <i>an Italian</i> .
<i>arceō</i> , 2, -uī, -tum, <i>keep off</i> .	<i>Liber</i> , -erī, M., <i>Bacchus, god of wine</i> .
<i>Brūtus</i> , -i, M., <i>Brutus, a Roman</i> .	<i>meus</i> , -a, -um, poss. adj., <i>my, mine</i> .
<i>carēō</i> , 2, -uī, -itum, <i>want, lack</i> .	<i>ōrnō</i> , 1, <i>adorn</i> .
<i>causa</i> , -ae, F., <i>cause</i> .	<i>privō</i> , 1, <i>deprive</i> . [agriculture.
<i>Corinthus</i> , -i, F., <i>Corinth (11. 4)</i> .	<i>Sāturnus</i> , -i, M., <i>Saturn, god of</i>
<i>custōs</i> , -ōdis, M. & F., <i>keeper</i> .	<i>spoliō</i> , 1, <i>rob, despoil</i> .
<i>Ēpīrus</i> , -i, F., <i>Ēpirus (11. 4)</i> .	<i>tuus</i> , -a, -um, poss. adj., <i>thy, your</i>

3.

133.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

- P.* Dīcē mīhī, puer, elephantōsne aliquandō vīdistī?
tell ever
- D.* Certē, praecceptor, elephantōs māgnōs et parvōs vīdī.
- P.* In agrīsne?
- D.* Minimē vērō; in circō et interdum in vīīs.
indeed circus sometimes
- P.* Quis rēx clārus elephantōrum auxiliō pūgnābat?
what aid
- D.* Pyrrhus, rēx Ēpīrī, ita pūgnābat.
- P.* Nōnne elephantī equōs Rōmānōrum terrēbant?
- D.* Terrēbant. Militēs quoque terrēbantur.
yes also
- P.* Superāvitne Pyrrhus Rōmānōs?
- D.* Saepe superāvit.
often
- P.* Quibus armīs pūgnant elephantī?
with what
- D.* Dentibus, proboscide, pedibus, capite pūgnant.
tusks trunk feet

CHAPTER XVIII. 1.

THIRD DECLENSION.

LIQUID STEMS.

134.

PARADIGMS.

Cōnsul , M., <i>consul.</i> St. cōnsul-	Pater , M., <i>father.</i> St. patr-	Pāstor , M., <i>shepherd.</i> St. pāstōr-	Leō , M., <i>lion.</i> St. leōn-
SINGULAR.			
N.V. cōnsul	pater	pāstor	leō
G. cōnsulis	patris	pāstōris	leōnis
D. cōnsulī	patrī	pāstōrī	leōnī
Ac. cōnsule m	patre m	pāstōre m	leōne m
Ab. cōnsule	patre	pāstōre	leōne

PLURAL.

N.V. cōnsul ēs	patr ēs	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs
G. cōnsul um	patr um	pāstōr um	leōn um
D. cōnsul ibus	patr ibus	pāstōr ibus	leōn ibus
Ac. cōnsul ēs	patr ēs	pāstōr ēs	leōn ēs
Ab. cōnsul ibus	patr ibus	pāstōr ibus	leōn ibus

Imāgō, F.,
image.

St. imāgin-

Nōmen, N.,
name.

St. nōmin-

TERMINATIONS.

MASC. & FEM.

SINGULAR.		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. imāgō	nōmen	—	ēs
G. imāginis	nōminis	is	um
D. imāginī	nōminī	ī	ibus
Ac. imāgin em	nōmen	em	ēs
Ab. imāgin e	nōmin e	e	ibus

PLURAL.

NEUTER.

N.V. imāgin ēs	nōmin a	—	a
G. imāgin um	nōmin um	is	um
D. imāgin ibus	nōmin ibus	ī	ibus
Ac. imāgin ēs	nōmin a	—	a
Ab. imāgin ibus	nōmin ibus	e	ibus

135. *Examine the following:—*

1. Hieme et aestate, *in winter and summer.*
2. Sōlis occāsū,¹ *at the setting of the sun.*
3. Primā luce, *at daybreak (first light).*
4. Hīs vīgintī annīs, *within these twenty years.*

It will be seen that the above phrases are expressions of *time*, and answer the question *when?* or, *within what time?*

136. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Time when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; *time within which*, by the ablative alone, or by the ablative with *in*.

2.

137.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Tertiā hōrā militēs fugātī sunt. 2. Primō annō Brūtum cōsulem creāvērunt Rōmānī. 3. Oppidum militibus ab imperātore implētum est. 4. Imperātor oppidum militibus implēbit. 5. Terror clāmōre hominum augētur. 6. Clāmōrēs dēfēnsōrum omnēs² puerōs³ terrēbunt. 7. Nōmen et imāginem amīcī semper in memoriā habēbat. 8. Semper erit clārum imperātōris ēgregiī nōmen. 9. Nōne Hannibal Rōmānīs fuit terror? 10. Hannibal fortitūdinem māgnam semper habēbat.

II. 1. Europe has no⁴ lions. 2. A slave had a great lion. 3. The name of the slave was Androclus. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The friend of my brothers has seen a lion. 6. A lion has been seen by my father and my brother. 7. The shouts of the soldiers scared the men in the town. 8. The defenders of the town were scared by the shouts of the men. 9. Why are many men miserable in time⁵ of war? 10. Do we not see by the sun's light? 11. At daybreak they saw Hannibal's horsemen.

¹ Ablative of the fourth declension. See 245.

² All.

³ Children. See 60.

⁴ Not.

⁵ Tempore.

138.

VOCABULARY.

clāmor, -ōris, M., *shout.*dēfēnsor, -ōris, M., *defender.*fortitūdō, -inis, F., *bravery.*frāter, -tris, M., *brother.*Hannibal, -ālis, M., *Hannibal*, a Carthaginian general.homo, -inis, M., *man.*imperātor, -ōris, M., *general.*lūmen, -inis, N., *light.*sōl, sōlis, M. (no gen. pl.), *sun.*terror, -ōris, M., *terror.*timor, -ōris, M., *fear.*Āfrica, -ae, F., *Africa.*Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus.*annus, -ī, M., *year.*creō, 1, *elect, choose.*Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe.*Horātius, -ī, M., *Horace*, a Roman poet (79).impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill.*juventūs, -ūtis, F., *youth.*semper, adv., *always.*voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure.*

homo, *man*, as distinguished from lower animals; general word for man, *mankind*.

vir (60), *man*, as distinguished from woman; man in an honorable sense, *hero*.

3.

139.

COLLOQUIUM.

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS.

M. Quae, mī puer, sunt in pēnsō hodiernō?
what things to-day's

D. Multa sunt in pēnsō, ut nōmina, adjectīva, dēclīnā-
many things as nouns declensions

tiōnēs, rēgulāe.

M. Quot genera sunt nōminibus Latīnīs?
how many genders

D. Genera sunt tria: masculīnum, fēmiānum, neutrum.
genders three

M. Dē quibus nōminibus est rēgula prīma?
what

D. Prīma rēgula est dē nōminibus generis masculīnī.
 Secunda rēgula est dē nōminibus generis fēminīnī.

M. Verbōrum quot sunt conjugātiōnēs?
verbs how many

D. Quattuor sunt conjugātiōnēs, dēclīnātiōnēs autem
four but

quīnque.
five

CHAPTER XIX. 1.

THIRD DECLENSION.

SIBILANT STEMS.¹

140.

PARADIGMS.

Mōs , M., <i>custom.</i> St. mōs-	Jūs , N., <i>right.</i> St. jūs-	Opus , N., <i>work.</i> St. opes-	Corpus , N., <i>body.</i> St. corpos-
---	--	---	---

SINGULAR.

N.V. mōs	jūs	opus	corpus
G. mōris	jūris	operis	corporis
D. mōrī	jūrī	operī	corporī
Ac. mōrem	jūs	opus	corpus
Ab. mōre	jūre	opere	corpore

PLURAL.

N.V. mōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
G. mōrum	jūrum	operum	corporum
D. mōribus	jūribus	operibus	corporibus
Ac. mōrēs	jūra	opera	corpora
Ab. mōribus	jūribus	operibus	corporibus

141.

ADJECTIVE.

Vetus, *old*. Stem **vetes-**

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. vetus	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G. veteris	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D. veterī	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac. veterem	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab. veterē	veterē	veterē	veteribus	veteribus

142. The above were originally sibilant stems, the *s* having been changed to *r* between two vowels. Compare **eram** for **esam**, **erō** for **esō**, p. 25. But for practical purposes they may be regarded as stems in *r*.

¹ For table of terminations, see 134.

143.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cerēs agrī cultūrae erat dea. 2. Cererī multa erant templa in Siciliā. 3. Cerēs multa templa in Siciliā habēbat. 4. Cerēs agrī cultūram docēbat. 5. Aestāte est pulvis molestus. 6. Servīs temporibus antīquīs nōn erant jūra. 7. Servī temporum veterum jūra nōn habēbant. 8. Equus peritō ab equite exercitus erat. 9. Equitī peritō praebitus erit equus niger.

II. 1. The statue of Minerva has been seen. 2. The statue of Minerva had often been praised. 3. The works of the Greeks were pleasing to the Romans. 4. Our pleasures have been increased by work¹ and zeal. 5. What² were seen in the temples of Greece? 6. In ancient times men saw statues of gods and goddesses. 7. Statues of gods and goddesses were seen by men in ancient times.

2.

144. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Cum virtūte vīxit**, *he lived with virtue (virtuously).*
2. **Agricola agrum cūrā arat**, *the farmer ploughs his field with care (carefully).*
3. **Agricola agrum māgnā cum cūrā arat**, *the farmer ploughs his field with great care.*
4. **Summā vī proelium commīsērunt**, *they joined battle with the greatest violence.*

Manner is usually expressed by adverbs: **benē**, *well*; **liberē**, *freely*. So the phrases **cum virtūte**, **cum cūrā**, **māgnā cum cūrā**, and **summā vī**, plainly denote manner,—*how* a thing is done,—like adverbs of manner.

145. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—Manner is sometimes expressed by the ablative with *cum*; but if the ablative has an adjective, *cum* is often omitted.

¹ Read again explanations and rule, p. 36. ² *Quae* = *what things*.

146.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Captīvī lūmen sōlis māgnō gaudiō vīdērunt. 2.¹ Sī in agrīs tempore flōrum critis,² libenter eōs (*them*) vidēbitis. 3. Māgnā voluptāte aestāte videntur pulchrī flōrēs. 4. Librōs cum studiō et voluptāte recitāmus. 5. Puerī corpora cum studiō et cūrā exercent. 6. Multa Rōmānōrum opera tempore³ nōn dēlēta sunt.

II. 1. They look at the lion with great fear. 2. If he blames (is blaming) the boy angrily,⁴ he deserves punishment. 3. Dædalus had fitted wings to Icarus with care. 4. They remember the words of the good judge with joy. 5. The words of the good judge will be carefully⁴ remembered. 6. How many works of the Romans time has not destroyed!

147.

VOCABULARY.

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

flōs, flōris, M., *flower*.

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust*.

tempus, -oris, N., *time*.

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer*.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*.

cūra, -ae, F., *care*.

gaudium, -i, N., *joy*.

Icarus, -i, M., *Icarus*.

ira, -ae, F., *anger*.

libenter, adv., *gladly, with pleasure*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome*.

quam, adv., *how, than*.

sacer, -era, -erum, adj., *sacred*.

Sicilia, -ae, F., *Sicily*.

3.

148.

COLLOQUIUM.

DUO PUERĪ.

Hodiē dūrum pēnsū habuī.

Studuistīne cum cūrā et dīligentiā?

did you study

diligence

Certē cum dīligentiā, nōn cum voluptāte studuī.

¹ Notice that *in the fields* = in agrīs; *in the time* = tempore.

² See p. 47, note 3.

³ Why would it be wrong to write *ā tempore*?

⁴ Compare 144. 1.

Cūr nōn cum voluptāte studuistī? Eratne magister
mōrōsus an pēnsū longum?

cross or

Mehercule! longum erat pēnsū neque memoriā tenēbam.
truly and not

Aspice. Nōnne vidēs multa vocābula in vocābulārīō et ver-
look words vocabulary

bum *moneō* et dēclīnātiōnis tertiæ substantīva et adjectīva?

Heu amīcum miserum, quam studēs!

ah

have to study



CHAPTER XX. 1.

THIRD DECLENSION.

STEMS IN *i*.

149.

PARADIGMS.

Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nūbēs, F., <i>cloud.</i>	Turris, F., <i>tower.</i>	Īgnis, M., <i>fire.</i>
St. hosti-	St. nūbi-	St. turri-	St. īgni-

SINGULAR.

N.V. hostis	nūbēs	turris	ignis
G. hostis	nūbis	turris	ignis
D. hostī	nūbī	turrī	ignī
Ac. hostem	nūbem	turrim, em	ignem
Ab. hoste	nūbe	turrī, e	ignī, e

PLURAL.

N.V. hostēs	nūbēs	turrēs	ignēs
G. hostium	nūbium	turrium	ignium
D. hostibus	nūbibus	turribus	ignibus
Ac. hostēs, īs	nūbēs, īs	turrēs, īs	ignēs, īs
Ab. hostibus	nūbibus	turribus	ignibus

Animal, N., <i>animal.</i>	Mare, N., <i>sea.</i>	Calcar, N., <i>spur.</i>	TERMINATIONS.	
St. animāli-	St. mari-	St. calcāri-	MASC. & FEM.	
SINGULAR.			<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.V. animal	mare	calcar	is, ēs	ēs
G. animālis	maris	calcāris	is	ium
D. animālī	marī	calcārī	ī	ibus
Ac. animal	mare	calcar	em, im	ēs, is
Ab. animālī	marī	calcārī	e, ī	ibus
PLURAL.			NEUTER.	
N.V. animālia	maria	calcāria	e or —	ia
G. animālium	marium	calcārium	is	ium
D. animālibus	maribus	calcāribus	ī	ibus
Ac. animālia	maria	calcāria	e or —	ia
Ab. animālibus	maribus	calcāribus	ī	ibus

150.

ADJECTIVES.

Ācer, keen, eager. St. ācri-

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.V. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, is	ācrēs, is	ācria
Ab. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Levis, light, nimble. St. levi-

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.	
N.V. levis	leve	levēs	levia	
G. levis	levis	levium	levium	
D. levī	levī	levibus	levibus	
Ac. levem	leve	levēs, is	levia	
Ab. levī	levī	levibus	levibus	

Memor, mindful. St. memori-

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
M. & F.	NEUT.	
N.V. memor	memor	memorēs
G. memoris	memoris	memorum
D. memorī	memorī	memoribus
Ac. memorem	memor	memorēs, is
Ab. memorī	memorī	memoribus

151. An inspection of the tables shows:—

1. That the *i* of the stem is sometimes lost, and sometimes changed to *e*. It appears in the terminations *im*, *is* (acc. plur.), *ī* (abl. sing.), *ia*, and *ium*.

2. That the ablative singular has in some nouns *ī*, in some *e*, and in some *ī* or *e*; in adjectives, always *ī*.

3. That the genitive plural has *ium*, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter *ia*. Compare these endings with the nominative and genitive plural of consonant stems (**105, 134, 140**).

4. **Memor** has *um* in the genitive plural, masculine and feminine. It has no neuter plural. Like **memor** decline **vigil**, *watchful*, which has neuter plural **vigilia**, **vigilium**, etc.

152. To stems in *i* belong:—

1. Nouns in *is* and *ēs* not increasing in the genitive.¹
2. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.
3. Adjectives of two terminations.
4. Adjectives of the third declension of three terminations.

153. Nouns in *ēs* (gen. *is*) are declined like **nūbēs**. Most nouns in *is* are declined like **hostis**. **Canis**, *dog*, has genitive plural **canum**.

154. The principal nouns declined like **turris** are: **clāvis**, *key*; **nāvis**, *ship*; **puppis**, *stern of a ship*; **secūris**, *axe*.

Like **ignis** are: **amnis**, *river*; **anguis**, *snake*; **avis**, *bird*; **cīvis**, *citizen*; **clāssis**, *fleet*; **collis**, *hill*; **fīnis**, *end*; **orbis**, *circle*; **postis**, *post*. **Sitis**, *thirst*, has acc. in *-im*, abl. in *-ī*.

¹ That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

155. Adjectives declined like *ācer* are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like *levis*, adjectives of two terminations; while those declined like *vetus* (141), *audāx* and *prūdēns* (164), are called adjectives of one termination.

156. Decline together *nāvis longa*, *ship of war*; *vallis profunda*, *deep valley*; *Alpēs altae*, *high Alps*. See 161.

2.

157. *Paradigm illustrating apposition:—*

- N.V. *Cicerō cōsul*, *Cicero, the consul*.
 G. *Cicerōnis cōsulis*, *of Cicero, the consul*.
 D. *Cicerōnī cōsulī*, *to or for Cicero, the consul*.
 Ac. *Cicerōnem cōsulem*, *Cicero, the consul*.
 Ab. *ā Cicerōne cōsule*, *by Cicero, the consul*.

158. RULE OF SYNTAX. — An appositive is in the same case as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

159.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In vallibus Alpium sunt fluvīi pulchrī. 2. Quae (*what*) animālia aquilam timent? 3. Nāvēs Gallōrum erant longae et altae. 4. Gallī longās nāvēs habēbant. 5. Fui-mus in nāvī altā. 6. Rōbur tuum levī labōre augēbitur. 7. Somnus hominibus voluptātem praebet. 8. Habentae militēs dēfessī cibum et aquam? 9. Hominēs cibum ignī coquunt (*cook*). 10. Leōnēs et elephantī sunt animālia fera.

II. 1. In the tower there were many men. 2. The towers of the ships were high. 3. From the high tower we saw the broad sea. 4. The broad sea was seen by men in the high tower. 5. The flight of the horsemen was seen by brave soldiers. 6. Robbers fear a brave man. 7. A brave man is feared by robbers. 8. On the shore they built a tower

for the king. 9. Numa, king of the Romans, changed the number of the months. 10. The number of the months was changed by Numa, a Roman king.

3.

160.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Turrim altam vidēbant rēgis comitēs. 2. Corpora hominum nōn animī sunt mortālia. 3. Capita animālium multōrum vidēbantur. 4. Acrī animō nāvem latrōnum submovent nautae. 5. Nāvis latrōnum ab ācribus nautīs submovētur. 6. Victōriam dēbēmus turribus nostrīs validīs. 7. Multa animālia sunt levia et vigilia. 8. Avium nōn multa genera in ruīnīs turrium antīquārum habitant. 9. Servī Graeci filiōs Rōmānōrum nōbīlium ēducābant. 10. Filīi Rōmānōrum nōbīlium ā servīs Graecīs saepe ēducābantur.

II. 1. Polyphemus, son of Neptune, had a huge body. 2. Cyrus, the first king of the Persians, remembered all the names of his soldiers. 3. The names of all his soldiers were remembered by Cyrus, king of the Persians. 4. How many ships of the Gauls were driven off? 5. The number of fires in the town was great.

161.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, -iam, F., *Alps*.
avis, -is, F., *bird* (154).
fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.
mēnsis, -is, M., *month*.
mortālis, -e, adj., *mortal*.
nāvis, -is, F., *ship* (154).
nōbīlis, -e, adj., *noble*.
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every*.
vallis (or -ēs), -is, F., *valley*.
vigil, -is, adj., *watchful*.

animus, -ī, M., *mind, soul*.
ēducō, 1, *train, educate*.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild*.
fuga, -ae, F., *flight*.
genus, -eris, N., *kind, race*.
habitō, 1, *dwell, inhabit*.
latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber*.
lītus, -ōris, N., *shore*.
multitūdō, -inis, F., *multitude*.
Neptūnus, -ī, M., *Neptune, god of the sea*.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., *our, ours*.
Numa, -ae, M., *Numa, a Roman king*.
Persae, -ārum, M., *the Persians*.

Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *Polyphemus.* **sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum,**
quot, adj. indecl., *how many?* (*move from beneath*) *remove, drive*
rōbur, -ōris, n., *strength.* *away.*
ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin.* **vītō, 1,** *avoid, shun.*

4.

162.

COLLOQUIUM.

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCŪLA.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi
habitābat? where

F. Polyphēmus filiū Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in
īnsulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Poly-
neither ploughman nor
phēmus.

S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus
therefore
nāvīgābat.

F. Errāvistī, mea sorōreula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor atque
and
māgnōs ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit autem ingentis corporis
sheep moreover huge
et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum
only crafty for him his one
oculum stīpite perforāvit.
stake dug out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!
Oh dear! poor

CHAPTER XXI. 1.
THIRD DECLENSION.

MIXED STEMS.¹

163.

PARADIGMS.

Cliēns, M. & F., <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>	
SINGULAR.			TERMINATIONS.
N.V. cliēns	urbs	arx	s
G. clientis	urbis	arcis	is
D. clientī	urbī	arcī	ī
Ac. clientem	urbem	arcem	em
Ab. cliente	urbe	arce	e
PLURAL.			
N.V. clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	ēs
G. clientium	urbium	arcium	ium
D. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	ibus
Ac. clientēs, īs	urbēs, īs	arcēs, īs	ēs, īs
Ab. clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	ibus

164.

ADJECTIVES.

Audāx, *bold*; prūdēns, *sagacious*.

SINGULAR.			
M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V. audāx	audāx	prūdēns	prūdēns
G. audācis	audācis	prūdentis	prūdentis
D. audācī	audācī	prūdentī	prūdentī
Ac. audācem	audāx	prūdentem	prūdēns
Ab. audācī, e	audācī, e	prūdentī, e	prūdentī, e
PLURAL.			
N.V. audācēs	audācia	prūdentēs	prudentia
G. audācium	audācium	prūdentium	prudentium
D. audācibus	audācibus	prūdentibus	prudentibus
Ac. audācēs, īs	audācia	prūdentēs, īs	prudentia
Ab. audācibus	audācibus	prūdentibus	prudentibus

¹ Usually classed as *i* stems. See 166.

165.

PARTICIPLE.

Amāns, loving.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
G.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
D.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Ac.	amantem	amāns	amantēs, is	amantia
Ab.	amante, ī	amante, ī	amantibus	amantibus

166. Note in the above tables:—

1. That the nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems (105, 134, 140), and the adjectives also, except that, like *i* stems, they have an ablative in *ī*.

2. That the plural of both nouns and adjectives is like that of *i* stems (149, 150).

167. To the class of mixed stems belong:—

1. Nouns in *ns* and *rs*. But *parēs* has the genitive plural *parentum*.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *x* following a consonant, together with *nix*, *nivis*, *snow*; *nox*, *noctis*, *night*; *os*, *ossis*, *bone*; *mūs*, *mūris*, *mouse*.

3. Adjectives of one ending, with some exceptions, of which the most important are: *dīves*, *rich*; *pauper*, *poor*; *particeps*, *sharing*; *prīnceps*, *chief*; and compounds of nouns that have consonant stems. These all have the genitive plural in *um*.

4. Present active participles.

168. RULES OF GENDER. — 1. Nouns ending in *ō*, *or*, *ōs*, *er*, *es* (gen. *īdis*, *ītis*), are masculine.

But nouns ending in *dō* and *gō*, of more than two syllables, together with abstract¹ and collective² nouns in *iō*, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in *ās*, *ēs* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *x*, and *s* following a consonant, are feminine.

¹ Abstract nouns are such as denote a *thought* rather than a *thing*: *ratio*, *method*.

² Collective nouns are such as in the singular imply a number of *things* or *persons*: *legiō*, *legion*.

3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur,* and *us*, are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which the learner should note as he advances.

169. Decline together *fōns profundus*, *deep spring*; *hostis audāx*, *bold enemy*; *māgna pars*, *great part*. See **172**.

2.

170.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Alpēs sunt montēs Eurōpae. 2. Saepe in lateribus montium sunt silvae. 3. Multōrum amnium fontēs sunt parvī. 4. In Alpibus sunt regiōnēs pulchrae et suāvēs. 5. Sunt vallēs profundae, rūpēs altae, silvae māgnae. 6. Ibi māgnam vidēbis multītūdinem vulpium. 7. Aestāte ovium gregēs videntur. 8. Mīlitem fortem nōn terrēbit perīculum. 9. Mīles fortis perīculō nōn terrēbitur. 10. Omnēs adulēscētēs erunt mīlitēs fortēs.

II. 1. There are mountains in Europe. 2. On the sides of the mountains are tall trees. 3. Many rivers have small sources. 4. Parts of the Alps are beautiful. 5. The Alps have deep valleys and high cliffs. 6. Wild beasts are seen on the sides of the Alps. 7. There you will see shepherds and sheep. 8. Brave soldiers do not fear dangers. 9. The fathers of the young men are soldiers. 10. We honor the brave soldier.

3.

171.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quid vident hominēs in montibus altīs? 2. Aquilam, avem audācem, in rūpibus vident. 3. Nōnne in arboribus altīs habitat rēx avium? 4. Certē, et parvīs avibus est terror māgnus, nam inter avēs rēgnat. 5. Acrēs sunt aquilārum oculī; longē vident vūnātōrem. 6. In marī clāssēm hostium vidēmus. 7. Clāssis nāvium ā latrōnibus vidēbātur. 8. Magister mōrēs bonōs et dīligentiam discipulōrum laudā-

bit. 9. Mōrēs bonī et dīligentia ā magistrō laudābuntur.
10. Omnis Galliae sunt partēs trēs (*three*).

II. 1. Men dwell in the deep valleys of the mountains. 2. In summer they have flocks on the mountains. 3. Why do men call the eagle the king¹ of birds? 4. Do not keen hunters see the eagle from afar? 5. The enemy's ships plough the deep sea. 6. The robbers saw the ships with great terror.² 7. Solon was the author of many good laws. 8. In ancient states there were free men and slaves. 9. The memory of the wise Solon has been honored.

172.

VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, M. & F., <i>youth, young man.</i>	latus, -eris, N., <i>side</i> . Cf. <i>lātus</i> , <i>broad</i> .
fōns, fontis, M., <i>source, spring.</i>	lēx, lēgis, F., <i>law.</i>
mōns, montis, M., <i>mountain.</i>	longē, adv., <i>afar, at a distance.</i>
pars, partis, F., <i>part.</i>	mōs, mōris, M., <i>manner, custom.</i>
sapiēns, -entis, adj., <i>wise.</i>	nam, conj., <i>for.</i>
	ovis, -is, F., <i>sheep.</i>
	pāstor, -ōris, M., <i>shepherd.</i>
amnis, -is, M., <i>river (154).</i>	periculum, -ī, N., <i>danger, peril.</i>
arbor, -ōris, F., <i>tree.</i>	profundus, -a, -um, adj., <i>deep.</i>
auctor, -ōris, M., <i>author.</i>	regiō, -ōnis, F., <i>region.</i>
Belgae, -ārum, M., <i>the Belgians.</i>	rēgnō, I, <i>be king, rule, reign.</i>
clāssis, -is, F., <i>fleet (154).</i>	rūpēs, -is, F., <i>rock, cliff.</i>
dīligentia, -ae, F., <i>diligence.</i>	silva, -ae, F., <i>wood, forest.</i>
fera, -ae, F., <i>wild beast.</i>	Solōn, -ōnis, M., <i>Solon, an Athenian lawgiver.</i>
honōrō, I, <i>honor.</i>	suāvis, -e, adj., <i>sweet, pleasant.</i>
hostis, -is, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	vēnātor, -ōris, M., <i>hunter.</i>
ibi, adv., <i>there.</i>	vulpēs, -is, F., <i>fox.</i>
inter, prep. w. acc., <i>between, among.</i>	

amnis, a large, deep river; not the common prose word for river.

flūmen (203), general word for river; flowing, as opposed to still water, as a lake or pond.

fluvius (84), not different from flūmen, but much less used.

hostis, general word for enemy: a public enemy, enemy in war.

inimicus (78), a private or personal enemy; opposed to amicus.

¹ Predicate accusative.

² See 144, 145.

4.

COLLOQUIUM.

173. *Translate into Latin:—*

FATHER AND SON.

F. Tell me (*mihī*) about Solon, if you please (*sī placet*).

S. Solon was a wise Athenian (*Athēniēnsis*); his (*ejus*) laws were famous, and his memory will always be honored. He was the friend of poor men (*pauperum*). He saw many lands and many men. He did not fear Pisistratus the usurper (*tyrannum*).

F. Was Miltiades also (*quoque*) an Athenian?

S. Certainly; he overcame the Persians (*Persās*) in the battle of Marathon.¹ He was a brave and skilful leader. He had a brave son.



CHAPTER XXII. 1.

REVIEW.

174. Decline together *gladius ācer*, sharp sword; *cōnsilium ūtile*, useful counsel; *aquila celeris*, swift eagle; *animal vĕlōx*, fleet animal. See 179.

175. Examples of the locative case in the third declension are: *Carthāginī*, or *Carthāgine*, at Carthage; *rūrī*, in the country.

176. *Affix the proper terminations to the adjectives in the following, and translate:—*

1. *Equō celer-*, *equōrum vĕlōc-*, *equīs vĕlōc-*. 2. *Puella trist-*, *puellae trist-*, *puellam trist-*, *puellārum prudēt-*. 3. *Gladīis ācr-*, *gladiōs ācr-*, *gladium ācr-*. 4. *Librō ūtil-*, *librōrum ūtil-*, *librum ūtil-*. 5. *Dōnum ūtil-*, *dōna ūtil-*, *dōnī ūtil-*. 6. *Servī fidĕl-*, *servō fidĕl-*, *servōs fidĕl-*, *servīs fidĕl-*.

¹ *Of Marathon, Marathōnius, -a, -um.*

177.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equī sunt celerēs. 2. Proelium equestre fuit.
 3. Virī fortēs laudantur. 4. Virum fortem laudāmus.
 5. Omne initium est difficile. 6. Bella sunt trīstia. 7. Cōn-
 silium ducis audāx fuit. 8. Vetus vīnum est bonum.
 9. Ācris et vēlōx est aquila. 10. Multa animālia vītās
 brevēs habent.

II. 1. The soldiers have keen weapons. 2. I have a
 swift horse. 3. We praise brave men. 4. Do you like
 sweet food? 5. The lessons are not hard. 6. The plans of
 the commander are sagacious. 7. Life is short. 8. There
 are swift eagles in the mountains. 9. The king has bold
 sailors. 10. The wings of the swift eagle are long.

2.

178.

EXERCISES.

Write out the whole of 177. I. in Latin, changing singulars
 to plurals and plurals to singulars. Thus, 4 will be *virōs
 fortēs laudō*.

Turn II. into Latin, first changing the sentences as
 directed above in regard to I.

179.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., sharp, eager.</i>	<i>fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful.</i>
<i>brevis, -e, adj., short.</i>	<i>initium, -ī, n., beginning.</i>
<i>celer, celeris, celere, adj., quick, fleet, swift.</i>	<i>tēlum, -ī, n., weapon.</i>
<i>difficilis, -e, adj., difficult, hard.</i>	<i>trīstis, -e, adj., sad.</i>
<i>equester, -tris, -tre, adj., eques- trian.</i>	<i>ūtilis, -e, adj., useful.</i>
	<i>vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, fleet.</i>
	<i>vīta, -ae, f., life.</i>

celer, quick, with the added notion of eagerness or energy.

vēlōx, swift, sometimes implying nimbleness.

CHAPTER XXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

180.

Ē-VERBS.

Regō (stem *rege*), *rule*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī,¹ rēctum.²

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.

I rule, etc.

regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

PASSIVE.

I am ruled, etc.

regor	regimur
regēris, or -re	regimini
regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, etc.

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

I was ruled, etc.

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or -re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall rule, etc.

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

I shall be ruled, etc.

regar	regēmur
regēris, or -re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

I have ruled, etc.

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or -re

I have been ruled, etc.

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled, etc.

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

I had been ruled, etc.

rēctus	{ eram	rēctī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

¹ Rēxi for reg-si. See p. 1, note 2.² Rēctum for reg-tum.

ACTIVE.		FUTURE PERFECT.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I shall have ruled, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been ruled, etc.</i>			
rēx erō	rēx erimus	rēct us	{ erō eris erit	rēct ī	{ erimus eritis erunt
rēx erīs	rēx erītis				
rēx erit	rēx erint				

SUBJUNCTIVE.¹

PRESENT.

reg am	reg āmus	reg ar	reg āmur
reg ās	reg ātis	reg āris, or -re	reg āminī
reg at	reg ant	reg ātur	reg antur

IMPERFECT.

reg erem	reg erēmus	reg erer	reg erēmur
reg erēs	reg erētis	reg erēris, or -re	reg erēminī
reg eret	reg erent	reg erētur	reg erentur

PERFECT.

rēx erim	rēx erimus	rēct us	{ sim sis sit	rēct ī	{ sīmus sītis sint
rēx erīs	rēx erītis				
rēx erit	rēx erint				

PLUPERFECT.

rēx issem	rēx issēmus	rēct us	{ essem essēs esset	rēct ī	{ essēmus essētis essent
rēx issēs	rēx issētis				
rēx isset	rēx issent				

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

reg e, rule thou.	reg ere, be thou ruled.
reg ite, rule ye.	reg iminī, be ye ruled.

FUTURE.

reg itō, thou shalt rule.	reg itor, thou shalt be ruled.
reg itō, he shall rule.	reg itor, he shall be ruled.
reg itōte, ye shall rule.	
reg untō, they shall rule.	reg untor, they shall be ruled.

¹ See p. 26, note.

ACTIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES. <i>regere, to rule.</i>	<i>regī, to be ruled.</i>	
PERF. <i>rēxisse, to have ruled.</i>	<i>rēctus esse, to have been ruled.</i>	
FUT. <i>rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule.</i>	<i>rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.</i>	

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>regēns, -entis, ruling.</i>	-----
FUT. <i>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.</i>	GER. <i>regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled.</i>
-----	PERF. <i>rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled.</i>

GERUND.

- G. *regendī, of ruling.*
 D. *regendō, for ruling.*
 Ac. *regendum, ruling.*
 Ab. *regendō, by ruling.*

SUPINE.

- Ac. *rēctum, to rule.* Ab. *rēctū, to rule, to be ruled.*



CHAPTER XXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

181. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *regō*.

182. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Regitis, regēbātis, regētis.* 2. *Regitur, regēbātur, regētur.* 3. *Regō, regēbam, regam.* 4. *Reguntur, regēbantur, regentur.* 5. *Regere, regī.* 6. *Regite, regere.* 7. *Regis, regeris.* 8. *Regimus, regimur.* 9. *Regit, regitur.* 10. *Regitis, regiminī.*

- II. 1. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 2. To be ruled, to rule. 3. They rule, they were ruling, they will

rule. 4. We rule, we are ruled. 5. We shall rule, we shall be ruled. 6. You are ruling, you were ruling, you will rule. 7. Rule (thou), be (thou) ruled. 8. He is ruling, he is ruled. 9. They ruled, they were ruled. 10. I rule, I ruled, I shall rule.

2.

183.

EXERCISES.

Scrībō,¹ *write*; *mittō*,¹ *send*; *emō*,¹ *buy*.

I. 1. *Scrībis, mittis, emis.* 2. *Mittitur, scrībitur, emitur.* 3. *Nōne mittēbās? nōne scrībēbant? nōne emēbam?* 4. *Scrībētur, mittēbantur, ementur.* 5. *Mitte, scrībite, emite.* 6. *Emere, scrībere, mittere.* 7. *Nōn mittant, nōn scrībītis, nōn emet.* 8. *Scrībamne? emuntne? mittimusne?* 9. *Mitteris, mittēris, scrībētur.* 10. *Scrībī, mittī, emī.*

II. 1. *He writes, he is sent, they buy.* 2. *Is it written? does he send? are they bought?* 3. *I shall buy, thou wilt send, he will write.* 4. *It will not be written, we shall not be sent, thou wilt not be bought.* 5. *To write, to send, to buy.* 6. *Write, send, buy.* 7. *We are sent, they were bought, it is (being) written.* 8. *They write, they will buy, they were sending.* 9. *I was writing, we were sending, I shall buy.* 10. *You are sent, it was (being) written, they are bought.*

184.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Imperātor multās urbēs vincet.* 2. *Multae terrae ab Rōmānīs regēbantur.* 3. *Omnem mundum regit Deus.* 4. *Dux Rōmānus ex Graeciā in Italiam portābat multās statuās.* 5. *Virī fortēs timōre nōn vincuntur.* 6. *Pābulum mīlitibus² emētur.* 7. *Hannibal mīlitēs trāns Alpēs dūcēbat.*

¹ For principal parts, see 186.

² What would be the meaning of *ā mīlitibus*?

8. Trāns fluvium erat parva urbs. 9. Urbs ā cīvibus dēfēndēbātur. 10. Nautae, ē nāvī dēscendite.

II. 1. The commander writes a letter. 2. Letters are written by the commander. 3. Hannibal was leading his soldiers into Italy. 4. The citizens are defended by their¹ leaders. 5. Cæsar conquered all his enemies. 6. Rome will be defended by the citizens. 7. Drive the sheep into the fields. 8. There are many robbers in the city. 9. Near the town is a broad valley. 10. Come down out of the tower.

3.

185.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Omnis mundus ā Deō regitur. 2. Puerīs librōs emam. 3. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidī ā Caesaris militibus vincentur. 4. In Āfricā servī emuntur. 5. Hieme multa animālia in vallēs dēscendunt. 6. Agricolaē in urbem ovēs agent. 7. Omnēs canēs ex urbe agēmus. 8. Epistulam dē bellō scrībēbam. 9. Puer epistulam dē pēnsīs scrībēbat. 10. Poēta bonus poēmata bona scrībet.

II. 1. The king's brothers send soldiers into Greece. 2. I will send my brother's son into Africa. 3. You will be sent into Sicily. 4. Send men across the river. 5. The city was defended with² great bravery by all the citizens. 6. Pyrrhus led many men across the sea into Italy. 7. In³ winter many animals are overcome by hunger. 8. The farmers are buying food for their sheep. 9. Strong men were driving the white horses into the river. 10. The good shepherd leads his sheep.

¹ See 100.

² Is it necessary to translate with by *cum*? See examples and rule, 144, 145.

³ Is *in* to be separately expressed in Latin? See fifth sentence above, and examples and rule, 135, 136.

186.

VOCABULARY.

<i>agō</i> , 3, <i>ēgī</i> , <i>āctum</i> , <i>drive, lead.</i>	<i>Caesar</i> , - <i>āris</i> , M., <i>Caesar.</i>
<i>dē-fendō</i> , 3, - <i>dī</i> , - <i>sum</i> , <i>defend.</i>	<i>canis</i> , - <i>is</i> , M. & F., <i>dog. (153.)</i>
<i>dē-scendō</i> , 3, - <i>dī</i> , - <i>sum</i> , <i>descend,</i> <i>go down, come down.</i>	<i>civis</i> , - <i>is</i> , M. & F., <i>citizen.</i>
<i>dūcō</i> , 3, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductum</i> , <i>lead.</i>	<i>dē</i> , prep. w. abl., <i>concerning, about.</i>
<i>emō</i> , 3, <i>ēmī</i> , <i>ēemptum</i> , <i>buy.</i>	<i>epistula</i> , - <i>ae</i> , F., <i>letter.</i>
<i>mittō</i> , 3, <i>mīsī</i> , <i>missum</i> , <i>send.</i>	<i>famēs</i> , - <i>is</i> , F., <i>hunger, famine.</i>
<i>scribō</i> , 3, <i>scripsī</i> , <i>scriptum</i> , <i>write.</i>	<i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> , F., <i>winter.</i>
<i>sūmō</i> , 3, <i>sūmpsī</i> , <i>sūmptum</i> , <i>take.</i>	<i>latrō</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , M., <i>robber.</i>
<i>vincō</i> , 3, <i>vicī</i> , <i>victum</i> , <i>conquer.</i>	<i>mundus</i> , - <i>ī</i> , M., <i>world, universe.</i>
<i>superō</i> (102), <i>to have the upper hand, surpass, conquer.</i>	<i>prope</i> , prep. w. acc., <i>near.</i>
<i>vincō</i> , <i>to get the mastery, vanquish, conquer.</i>	<i>trāns</i> , prep. w. acc., <i>across, beyond.</i>

What difference do you make out from a comparison of the meanings?

4.

187.

COLLOQUIUM.

CHARŌN ET MERCURIUS.

Ch. Salvē, Ō Mercurī!
hail

M. Et tū, salvē, portitor.
ferryman

Ch. Mercurī, dūcisne hodiē multōs mănēs?
souls

M. Hodiē mănium dūcō numerum māgnum. Trīste est
sad
officium meum. Ithaca tibi procul dubiō nōta est atque Ulixēs.
duty without doubt known

Ch. Rēctē dixistī. Ithaca est insula inter Graeciam et
you have said
Ītāliam sita; et mihi nōtus est Ulixēs, nam ipse ōlīm hūc
situated himself formerly hither
vēnit.
came

M. Jam aspice mănēs procerum et servōrum infīdōrum.
now see chiefs unfaithful

Hī omnēs ab Ulixē necātī sunt.
these

Ch. Istud mihi placet. Mănēs in cymbā trānsvelam.
that boat carry over

Valē, Mercurī.

M. Et tū valē, Charōn.

5.

188.

FOR TRANSLATION.¹

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCĪPIŌ.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō mājor,² adulēscēns³ septendecim annōrum, ad Ticīnum flūmen patrem vulnerātum servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsī fortiter dīmīcāvit. Postēā Carthāginem Novam, urbem in Hispāniā Poenōrum firmissimam expūgnāvit. Obsidēs Hispānōrum benignē tractāvit et libertāte dōnāvit.⁴ Nōn minus fēliciter Scīpiō in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs ita ursit⁵ ut Hannibalem ex Ītaliā revocārent.⁶ Ad Zamam Scīpiōnis et Hannibalis exercitūs⁷ castra habuērunt; clārum est illud colloquium, quod Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, et Scīpiō, cōsul Rōmānus, ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scīpiōne superātī fugātique sunt. Scīpiō triumphum magnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus appellātus est.



CHAPTER XXV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

189. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *regō*.

190.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint. 3. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 4. Rēctum est, rēctum erat, rēctum erit. 5. Rēxistī, rēxerās, rēxeris. 6. Rēximus,

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

² The elder.

³ When a youth.

⁴ Presented them with their liberty = set them free.

⁵ From *urgeō*; ita ursit, pressed them so hard.

⁶ Ut . . . revocārent, that they recalled.

⁷ Nom. plur., subject of *habuērunt*.

rēctī sumus. 7. Rēxistis, rēctī estis. 8. Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō. 9. Rēxerant, rēctī erant. 10. Rēcta est, rēcta erat, rēcta erit.

II. 1. I have ruled, I had ruled, I shall have ruled. 2. I have ruled, I have been ruled. 3. They have ruled, they have been ruled. 4. You ruled, you had ruled, you will have ruled. 5. He will have ruled, he will have been ruled. 6. To have been ruled, to have ruled. 7. They had ruled, they had been ruled. 8. She has ruled, she has been ruled. 9. It was ruled, it had been ruled, it will have been ruled. 10. They (*neut.*) were ruled, they had been ruled, they will have been ruled.

2.

191.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dūxit, ēmerit, sūmpserit. 2. Ēmit,¹ dūxistī, sūmpsi. 3. Sūmptus est, ductae sumus, ēmpta sunt. 4. Eratne ductus? erantne ēmptae? eratne sūmptum? 5. Dūxerimus, sūmpseritis, ēmerint. 6. Nōnne dūximus? nōnne ēmerāmus? nōnne ēmerimus? 7. Dūxistī, ēmērunt, sūmpsimus. 8. Ducta est, ēmptum est, sūmpta erat. 9. Dūxisse, ēmissee, sūmpsisse. 10. Nōn dūxeram, nōn ēmerātis, nōn sūmpserō.

II. 1. She had been led, it has been bought, they (*neut.*) will have been taken. 2. I have taken, you have bought, he has led. 3. Has it not been taken? had he not been led? have they (*neut.*) not been bought? 4. I had led, you had bought, he had taken. 5. They will have taken, I shall have led, thou wilt have bought. 6. I was led, it was bought, it had been taken. 7. To have been led, to have been bought, to have been taken. 8. We shall have taken, I shall have bought, he will have led. 9. Did he take? didst thou buy? did you lead? 10. They did not lead, you had not bought, she will not have taken.

¹ How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

192.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs vīcimus. 2. Hostēs territī vīctique sunt. 3. Horātius oculum in proeliō amiserat. 4. Ō patria, vīcistī iram meam. 5. Scīpiō in Hispāniam missus est. 6. Spartacus, dux gladiātōrum, cōsulēs Rōmānōs vīcit. 7. Gallia inter Pūrēnaeōs montēs et Rhēnum posita est.¹ 8. Metellus bellum in Hispāniā gessit. 9. Quid timēs? Caesarem vehis. 10. Bellum ā Pyrrhō in Italiā gestum est. 11. Ā Spartacō, duce gladiātōrum, cōsulēs Rōmānī vīctī sunt.

II. 1. Have you lost your books? 2. My brother will sail² in a small ship. 3. Do men live in trees? 4. Neptune ruled (over) the deep sea. 5. A river flows out of the mountain. 6. The girl's head was encircled with flowers. 7. War has been waged in Italy. 8. A lazy boy is often despised. 9. The ancient Romans did not despise war. 10. The king had surrounded the city with walls. 11. Did not Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, wage war in Italy?

3.

193.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Avēs multae in arboribus vīvunt. 2. Virī fortēs urbem templaque deōrum dēfendērunt. 3. Dux trāns mare in nāvī vectus est. 4. Tyrannī ā virīs fortibus contemptī sunt. 5. Pōnite pedēs in rūpem. 6. Virgō ā templō tracta erat. 7. Hannibal ā Scīpiōne vīctus est. 8. Caesar militēs in equōs posuit. 9. Oppidum mūrō altō cinctum erat. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō cinxērunt. 11. Inter montem et oppidum fluēbat fluvius lātus. 12. Bellum in Hispāniā ā Metellō imperātōre Rōmānō gestum est.

II. 1. A large fleet was bought with gold by Cæsar. 2. The general's daughter had been carried in a wagon.

¹ Posita est, is situated.

² Future passive of vehō.

4.

195.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Carthāginiēnsis?
Carthaginian

D. Fuit Carthāginiēnsis et ā Scīpiōne vīctus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?
where

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr fuit? cūr nōn est in Āfricā?
why

D. Quia Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne delēta est.
was destroyed

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?
how many

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina. Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō.
three

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen Pūblius; Cornēlius nōmen
first name

gentīle; Scīpiō cōgnōmen.
family cognomen

D. Nōnne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō Āfricānus?
sometimes was called

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī.
this moreover
 cōgnōmen secundum.



CHAPTER XXVI. 1.

REVIEW.

196.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dēfendite, cīvēs, cīvitatē. 2. Cīvitas est māter
 nostra. 3. Cīvēs sunt frātrēs nostrī. 4. Puerī, frātrēs
 amāte. 5. Ōrnāte, cīvēs, urbem monumentis statuīsq̄.
 6. Urbēs pulchrae in Ītaliā videntur. 7. Habitāsne in urbe
 pulchrā? 8. Urbs Rōma¹ mūrō cincta est. 9. Rōma ā cīvibus
 cum fortitūdine dēfēnsa est. 10. Militēs Rōmānī erant fortēs.

¹ See 157, 158.

II. 1. The citizens are defenders of the state. 2. Roman mothers furnished brave heroes for the state. 3. Do you write letters to your brothers? 4. From¹ springs in the mountains the rivers flow. 5. The city will be adorned with golden² statues. 6. In Greece we do³ not see many beautiful cities. 7. The city is defended by watchful guards. 8. A high wall encircles the farmer's field. 9. We shall remain near Cæsar's camp. 10. We teach our children by means of stories.⁴

2.

197.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulēs ā Pyrrhō vīctī sunt. 2. Urbs ā cōsulibus dēfendētur. 3. Filīi rēgis audācis sunt cīvītātis dēfēnsōrēs. 4. Clāmōribus mīlitum nostrōrum terrītī sunt hostēs. 5. Mīlītēs in urbe nostrā nōn saepe vidēmus. 6. In montibus et silvīs vīvunt aprī. 7. Malī⁵ poenae timōre coercentur. 8. Lēgibus patriae omnēs⁶ coercentur. 9. Fluvius oppidum cingit. 10. Mōrēs malī ab hominibus bonīs contemnuntur.

II. 1. Who defeated the Roman consuls? 2. The consul was besieging a city of Spain. 3. We all have seen the pleasant light of the moon. 4. The sad maidens were sitting near a deep river. 5. The maidens were weeping because they had lost their flowers. 6. The boars are descending headlong into the sea. 7. Soldiers are not often seen in our streets. 8. The ancient city of Rome⁷ was ruled by kings. 9. The shepherd's son will weep if he loses (shall have lost) a sheep. 10. The teacher was teaching his pupils⁸ the poems of Homer.

¹ ē rather than ā.

² See p. 37, note 1.

³ See p. 14, note 1.

⁴ See 90 and 91.

⁵ See 117.

⁶ Omnēs agrees with the understood subject of *coercentur*.

⁷ *The city of Rome = the city Rome.* See 157, 158.

⁸ Accusative. See p. 54, note 2.

198.

VOCABULARY.

fābula, -ae, f., *story, tale, fable.*frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*māter, -tris, f., *mother.*omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, whole.*praeceps, -cipitis, adj., *headlong.*tristis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy.*

3.

199.

FOR TRANSLATION.¹

PRŌSERPĪNA.

Prōserpina, Cereris filia, aliquandō in Siciliā ad urbem Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat, sarta nectēbat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchrīs sparsī² sunt. Subitō terra concussa³ est atque Plūtō, īferōrum deus, ē terrā ēmersit;⁴ ējus currum equī atrī vehēbant. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor sua et īferōrum rēgīna esset;⁵ clāmōrem puellae compressit.⁶ Jūppiter autem frātrī permīserat ut Prōserpinam abdūceret.⁷ Māter cum⁸ ignōrāret, ubi filia esset,⁹ tōtum orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

[Continued on p. 92.]



CHAPTER XXVII. 1.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

200. The following adjectives have *īus* (rarely *īus*) in the genitive singular of all genders, and *ī* in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*nūllus, -a, -um, *no one, none, no.*sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole.*tōtus, -a, -um, *whole.*ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone.*

¹ For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

² From spargō.

³ From concutiō.

⁴ From ēmergō.

⁵ Ut . . . esset, *that she might be.*

⁶ From comprimō.

⁷ Ut . . . abdūceret, *that he might lead away = to lead away.*

⁸ Cum ignōrāret, *since she did not know.*

⁹ Was.

alter, altera, alterum, *the other of two.*

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither of two.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which of two?*

uterque, utrâque, utrumque, *each of two, both.*

201.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
G.	alius	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Ac.	alium	aliā	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

202.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Virtūs sōla vēram dat voluptātem. 2. Alius¹ aliud dixit. 3. In utram partem² fluit flūmen? 4. Alter³ Graecus, alter³ Rōmānus erat. 5. Utrī cōsulī dat civitās tōtam laudem? Neutrī. 6. Aliī⁴ virtūte, aliī⁴ dolīs hostēs superant.⁵ 7. Ūnūs hominis mors tōtam urbem servāvit. 8. Alterī discipulō laudem, alterī culpam dat⁵ praeceptor. 9. Nulliūs precibus cēdēmus. 10. Ā Cicerōne ūnō urbs servāta est.

II. 1. The farmer was ploughing his field alone. 2. He is praised by one, blamed by another. 3. To which of the two does the teacher give the praise? 4. Some like⁶ boys, others like girls. 5. Death is feared by no good man. 6. The consul conquered some of his enemies, by others he

¹ Literally, *another said another thing.* The English of it is, *one said one thing, another another.*

² *Into which part?* i.e., *in which direction?*

³ **Alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.*

⁴ **Aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others;* **aliud . . . aliud,** *one thing . . . another thing.*

⁵ This sentence illustrates a common usage of the Latin. A verb belonging to two groups of words is often placed only with the last, and must be mentally supplied with the first. With the English it is the reverse. Show the application of the remark.

⁶ See note 5.

was conquered. 7. One leg is long, the other short. 8. Some praise one thing, others another. 9. The plan of the whole war was disclosed to the enemy. 10. The citizens praised Cicero alone.

203.

VOCABULARY.

brevis, -e, adj., *short*.

cēdō, 3, *cēssi*, *cēssum*, *yield*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*, a Roman orator.

crūs, *crūris*, n., *leg*.

culpa, -ae, f., *blame*, *fault*.

dolus, -ī, m., *trick*, *deceit*.

ē-nūntiō, 1, *disclose*, *announce*.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*. (172.)

laus, *laudis*, f., *praise*.

mors, *mortis*, f., *death*.

praeceptor, -ōris, m., *teacher*.

precēs, -um, f. (plur.), *prayers*, *entreaty*.

ratio, -ōnis, f., *plan*, *method*, *reason*.

servō, 1, *save*, *preserve*.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true*.

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *virtue*, *courage*.

2.

204.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

D. Quis fuit Cicerō?

P. Clārus cōsul Rōmānus fuit.

D. Multane bella gessit?

P. Minimē. Ōrātor fuit; dux mīlitum semel.
once only

D. Nōne ējus ōrātiōnēs in scholā legimus?
his read

P. Complūrēs. Multās epistulās quoque scrīpsit Cicerō.
several also

D. Ad quōs epistulās scrīpsit?
whom

P. Ad frātre[m] et amīcōs.

D. Fuitne Cicerō ējus "nōmen"?

P. Nōn fuit "nōmen," sed "cōgnōmen."

D. Quid fuit ējus "nōmen"?

P. Tullius.

¹ See 195.

D. Et prænōmen?

P. *Mārcus*.

D. Hōc dīcās mihi, praeceptor ērudītissime, sī placet;
tell most learned
 difficilēsne sunt Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs?
hard

P. Sine dubiō difficilēs sunt, puer autem ācer eās intellegere potest.
but them



X CHAPTER XXVIII. 1.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

205. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, change their terminations to express different degrees of quality: **altus, altior, altissimus, high, higher, highest.**

Adjectives may also be compared in Latin, as in English, by means of adverbs.

206. *Examine the following:—*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus (alto)	altior, altius	altissimus, etc.
levis (levi)	levior, levius	levissimus, etc.
prūdēns (prūdent)	prūdentior, prūdentius	prūdentissimus, etc.
pulcher (pulchro)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, etc.
miser (misero)	miserior, miserius	miserimus, etc.
ācer (acri)	ācrior, ācrius	ācerimus, etc.

Observe (1) that the comparative is formed in both the above groups by dropping the final vowel of the stem, if the stem ends in a vowel, and adding *ior, ius*.

(2) That the superlative is formed in the first group from the shortened stem by adding *issimus, issima, issimum*.

(3) But if the adjective ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*, *rima*, *rimum*, to the positive.

207. Six adjectives in *lis* drop the final vowel of the stem and add *limus* to form the superlative:

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, facilius	facilimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i> .	difficilior, difficilius	difficilimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, dissimilius	dissimilimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, humilius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, gracilius	gracillimus, -a, -um

208. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	pējor, -us	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	mājor, -us	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—, plūs ¹	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
vetus	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE.

209. PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.V.	altiōr	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
G.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, īs	altiōra
Ab.	altiōre, ī	altiōre, ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

Compare, and decline in the comparative:—

atrōx, -ōcis, <i>fierce</i> .	līber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i> .
audāx, -ācis, <i>bold</i> .	piger, pigra, pigrum, <i>lazy</i> .
celer, -eris, <i>swift</i> .	placidus, -a, -um, <i>calm</i> .
fēlix, -īcis, <i>lucky</i> .	sapiēns, -entis, <i>wise</i> .

¹ Plūs has in singular only plural, nom. plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium, etc.

210.

EXERCISES.

1. Of bolder soldiers. 2. For a bolder soldier. 3. On the highest tree. 4. The wisest king. 5. Of fiercer lions. 6. By a more lucky general. 7. With calmer joy. 8. Of a swifter horse. 9. For freer men. 10. Of wiser judges. 11. A deeper river. 12. Of deeper rivers. 13. In a deeper river. 14. For lazier boys.

2.

211. We can say in Latin without difference in meaning:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Quis est eloquentior quam Cicerō? | } Who is more eloquent |
| 2. Quis est eloquentior Cicerōne? | |

212. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when *quam* (than) is omitted.

But the ablative can take the place only of *quam* and the nominative, or *quam* and the accusative.

213.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Fluvii altiōrēs sunt rīvīs, maria altissima¹ sunt. 2. In Africā sunt animālia atrōciōra quam in Americā. 3. Leōnēs sunt audācissimae bēstiae. 4. Elephantī sunt prudētiōrēs leōnibus. 5. Gentēs Africae et Europae sunt dissimillimae. 6. Pēsum tuum facillimum, meum difficillimum est. 7. Rōma est Italiae urbs veterrima,¹ sed vetustiorēs sunt in litoribus colōniae Graecōrum. 8. Tempa Graeca erant humillima. 9. Nihil est pējus quam mendācium. 10. Mendācium autem pējus pigritiā et ignāviā est.

II. 1. A river is longer than a brook. 2. Seas are deeper than rivers. 3. The sources of great rivers are not always in high mountains. 4. Elephants bear heavier burdens than

¹ The superlative must often be translated by *very* with the positive.

horses. 5. The horse and the dog are very faithful. 6. Your dog is better than mine. 7. Not many cities are more beautiful than Rome. 8. The elephant is bolder than the horse. 9. Your task is easier than mine; but mine is not very hard. 10. The bravest men are not always the wisest.

214.

VOCABULARY.

America, -ae, f., *America*.

autem,¹ conj., *but, moreover*.

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast*.

colōnia, -ae, f., *colony*.

gēns, *gentis*, f., *nation, people*.

ignāvia, -ae, f., *cowardice*.

lītus, -oris, n., *shore*.

mendācium, -ī, n., *lying*.

nihil, n. (indecl.), *nothing*.

pīgritia, -ae, f., *laziness*.

quam, conj., *than*.

rīvus, ī, m., *brook*.

3.

*“ Proserpin gathering flowers,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world.”*

215.

FOR TRANSLATION.²

Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōnspicit, audīvit quis filiam abdūxisset.³ Itaque statim iter ad Jovem⁴ flexit⁵ et precibus animum ējus inflexit, ut filia ā Plūtōne remitteretur.⁶ Jūppiter id permīsit, sī jējūna mānsisset.⁷ Sed cum⁸ Prōserpina mālī Pūnicī septem grāna gustāvisset,⁹ nōn licuit. Tandem Prōserpinae permissum est,¹⁰ ut per partem annī dūnidiam apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud inferōs esset.¹¹

¹ Always placed after the first or second word in the sentence.

² Continued from p. 86.

³ *Had led away*.

⁴ Nom. Jūppiter.

⁵ From *flectō*.

⁶ *Ut . . . remitteretur*, *that her daughter might be sent back*.

⁷ *Had remained*.

⁸ *Since*.

⁹ *Had tasted*.

¹⁰ *It was permitted = permission was given*.

¹¹ *Ut . . . esset*, *that she should be = to be*. For the order, see p. 87, note 5.

CHAPTER XXIX. 1.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

216. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives, and follow them in comparison.

217. *Examine the following:—*

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
grātus, <i>thankful.</i>	grāto-	grāt ē, <i>thankfully.</i>
benignus, <i>kind.</i>	benigno-	benign ē, <i>kindly.</i>
miser, <i>wretched.</i>	misero-	miser ē, <i>wretchedly.</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful.</i>	pulchro-	pulchr ē, <i>beautifully.</i>
fortis, <i>brave.</i>	forti-	forti ter, <i>bravely.</i>
ācer, <i>eager.</i>	ācri-	ācri ter, <i>eagerly.</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise.</i>	prūdent-	prūden ter, <i>wisely.</i>
fēlix, <i>lucky.</i>	fēlici-	fēlici ter, <i>luckily.</i>

Observe (1) that the adjectives of the first group are of the *o* (or second) declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by changing the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

(2) That the adjectives of the second group are of the third declension, and that the adverbs are formed from the stem of the adjectives by adding *ter*.

(3) But stems in *nt* drop *t* before adding the suffix *ter*.

218. *Examine the following:—*

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much.</i>	multum, <i>much.</i>
facilis, <i>easy.</i>	facile, <i>easily.</i>
impūnis, <i>unpunished.</i>	impūne, <i>with safety.</i>
citus, <i>quick.</i>	citō, <i>quickly.</i>
subitus, <i>sudden.</i>	subitō, <i>suddenly.</i>
prīmus, <i>first.</i>	prīmō, <i>at first.</i>

Observe that in the first group the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used as an adverb; in the second, the ablative.

219. *Examine the following:—*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
grātē	grātius	grātissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
ācritēr	ācrius	ācerrimē
fēliciter	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
benē ¹	melius	optimē
malē	pējus	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
—	magis	māximē

Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final *o* of the stem to *ē*.

If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is likewise.

Compare:—

placidē, <i>calmly.</i>	liberē, <i>freely.</i>	pulchrē, <i>beautifully.</i>
audācter, <i>boldly.</i>	celeriter, <i>quickly.</i>	prūdentēr, <i>wisely.</i>

2.

220.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ōlim fuit² Athēniēnsis clārissimus. 2. Fidēliter lēgibus³ cīvitātis pārēbat. 3. Jūstē omnibus rēbus⁴ agēbat. 4. Audācter pūgnāvit atque amīcum fortiter dēfendit. 5. Sapienter juvenēs aliōsque docēbat. 6. Falsō et turpiter accūsātus est; liberē sē⁵ dēfendit neque timēbat. 7. Injūstissimē ad mortem damnātus est ā cīvibus. 8. Venēnum in carcere bibit placidē. 9. Ejus⁶ memoria delēbitur nunquam. 10. Quis fuit Athēniēnsis?

II. 1. Was Socrates an illustrious Athenian? 2. Was he more illustrious than other citizens? 3. Did he not act most

¹ Formed irregularly from *bonus*.

² *There was*.

³ Observe the dative with *pārēō*.

⁴ *Things*. See 260.

⁵ *Himself*.

⁶ *Of him*.

justly in all respects?¹ 4. Did he very² faithfully obey the laws of the Athenians? 5. Did he not teach the Athenians very wisely? 6. Did he not defend a young man in battle very bravely? 7. Why was he most basely accused and condemned to death? 8. We shall cherish his memory more diligently. 9. His memory will be cherished faithfully by the best men. 10. In vain shall we seek for a better man than Socrates.

III. 1. Julius Cæsar was a very famous man. 2. He was excellently brought up by his mother. 3. He learned the Greek language very well. 4. He was an illustrious general and fought many battles most successfully. 5. In Gaul he took towns, and cruelly slew many men. 6. He boldly sailed to Britain with many ships. 7. But the inhabitants did not basely beg for peace. 8. He quickly overcame all his enemies. 9. (As) consul he ruled the Roman state wisely and well. 10. He was foully slain by Brutus and other Romans.

221.

VOCABULARY.

crūdēliter [crūdēlis], *cruelly*.

diligenter [diligēns], *diligently*.

falsō [falsus], *falsely*.

fidēliter [fidēlis], *faithfully*.

frūstrā, *in vain*.

injūstē [injūstus], *unjustly*.

jūstē [jūstus], *justly*.

liberē [liber], *freely, fearlessly*.

ōlim, *formerly*.

optimē, *very well, excellently*.

sapienter [sapiēns], *wisely*.

turpiter [turpis], *basely, foully*.

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *Athenian*.

bibō, 3, bibi, pōtum, *drink*.

carcer, -eris, m., *prison*.

colō, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, cherish, care for*.

damnō, 1, *condemn*.

discō, 3, didici, —, *learn*.

juvenis, -is, m. & f., *youth*.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.

nāvīgō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail*.

necō, 1, *kill*. Cf. interficiō.

pāreō, 2, -uī, —, *obey* (w. dat.).

pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.

petō, 3, -ivī, -ii, -itum, *beg for, ask*.

quaerō, 3, quaesivī, -ii, quae-
sītum, *seek for, ask, inquire*.

sed, conj., *but*. Cf. autem (214).

Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates, an Athenian philosopher*.

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison*.

¹ Compare I. 3.

² See p. 91, note.

3.

222.

COLLOQUIUM.

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

P. Quid, mī filiōle, in scholā hodiē discēbās?
little son

F. Discēbam, mī pater, pēnsū de adverbīis longissimū.

P. Cuī partī orātīōnis est adverbium simillimū?
to what speech

F. Simillimū, ut opīnor, est adverbium adjectīvō.
as I think

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī,
this explain if you can
 ut dīcis, adverbium adjectīvō est simile, unde nōmen traxit?
whence has derived

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quod saepissimē verbīs ad-
perhaps on account of this because very often verbs
 jungitur.

P. Optimē, filiōle; ēn tibi āssem!
here is for you penny



CHAPTER XXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

223.

Ī-VERBS.

Audiō (stem audī), *hear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum.

ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
<i>I hear, etc.</i>		<i>I am heard, etc.</i>	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, or-re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
		IMPERFECT.	
<i>I was hearing, etc.</i>		<i>I was heard, etc.</i>	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, or-re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

ACTIVE.		FUTURE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I shall hear, etc.</i>				<i>I shall be heard, etc.</i>	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar		audiēmur	
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, or-re		audiēminī	
audiet	audient	audiētur		audientur	
		PERFECT.			
<i>I have heard, etc.</i>				<i>I have been heard, etc.</i>	
audivī	audivimus	auditus	{ sum	audītī	{ sumus
audivistī	audivistis		{ es		{ estis
audivit	audivērunt, or-re		{ est		{ sunt
		PLUPERFECT.			
<i>I had heard, etc.</i>				<i>I had been heard, etc.</i>	
audiveram	audiverāmus	auditus	{ eram	audītī	{ erāmus
audiverās	audiverātis		{ erās		{ erātis
audiverat	audiverant		{ erat		{ erant
		FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>I shall have heard, etc.</i>				<i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i>	
audiverō	audiverīmus	auditus	{ erō	audītī	{ erimus
audiverīs	audiverītis		{ eris		{ eritis
audiverit	audiverint		{ erit		{ erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE.¹					
PRESENT.					
audiam	audiāmus	audiar		audiāmur	
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, or-re		audiāminī	
audiat	audiant	audiātur		audiantur	
IMPERFECT.					
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer		audīrēmur	
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, or-re		audīrēminī	
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur		audīrentur	
PERFECT.					
audiverim	audiverīmus	auditus	{ sim	audītī	{ sīmus
audiverīs	audiverītis		{ sīs		{ sītis
audiverit	audiverint		{ sit		{ sint

¹ See p. 26, note.

ACTIVE.		PLUPERFECT.	PASSIVE.	
audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus	{ essem { essēs { esset	{ essēmus { essētis { essent
audivissēs	audivissētis			
audivisset	audivissent			

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.*
 audīte, *hear ye.*

audīre, *be thou heard.*
 audīminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*
 audītō, *he shall hear.*
 audītōte, *ye shall hear.*
 audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
 audītor, *he shall be heard.*
 audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*
 PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*
 FUT. auditūrus esse, *to be about
 to hear.*

audīrī, *to be heard.*
 auditus esse, *to have been heard.*
 auditum irī, *to be about to be
 heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*
 FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, *about
 to hear.*

GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to be
 heard.*
 PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard,
 having been heard.*

GERUND.

G. audiendī, *of hearing.*
 D. audiendō, *for hearing.*
 Ac. audiendum, *hearing.*
 Ab. audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Ac. auditum, *to hear.*

Ab. auditū, *to hear, to be heard.*

CHAPTER XXXI. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

224. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō*.

225.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Audiō, audiēbam, audiam.* 2. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 3. *Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur.* 4. *Audī, audire.* 5. *Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur.* 6. *Audire, audiri.* 7. *Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis.* 8. *Audīs, audiris.* 9. *Audiunt, audiuntur.* 10. *Audient, audientur.*

II. 1. Thou hearest, thou wast hearing, thou wilt hear. 2. I hear, I am heard. 3. He is hearing, he was hearing, he will hear. 4. To be heard, to hear. 5. We were hearing, we were (being) heard. 6. We hear, we heard, we shall hear. 7. They will hear, they will be heard. 8. You heard, you were heard: 9. Hear (ye), be ye heard. 10. I hear, I heard, I shall be heard.

2.

226.

EXERCISES.

Pūniō, punish; mūniō, fortify; vestiō, clothe.

I. 1. *Pūniēbam, mūniēbam, vestiēbam.* 2. *Mūnītur, pūnītur, vestītur.* 3. *Pūniet, vestiet, mūniet.* 4. *Pūnī, mūnīte, vestīminī.* 5. *Vestiētur, pūniētur, mūniētur.* 6. *Nōnne pūnīmus? nōnne vestīmur? nōnne mūniuntur?* 7. *Vestiamne? pūnietne? mūniētur?* 8. *Mūniēbaut, pūniēbāminī, vestior.* 9. *Nōn vestīris, nōn pūnit, nōn mūniēmus.* 10. *Pūniar, mūniam, vestiēbāris.*

II. 1. He was clothing, he was punishing, he was fortifying. 2. They will be clothed, they will be fortified, they will be punished. 3. Be thou clothed, punish (thou), fortify. 4. I fortify, he punishes, we are clothing. 5. Are you not being clothed? was it not fortified? will he not be pun-

ished? 6. They are being punished, it is being fortified, thou wilt be clothed. 7. We punish, we were fortifying, they will clothe. 8. Were you being clothed? will it be fortified? shall I be punished? 9. I shall not fortify, you are not being clothed, they will not be punished. 10. I punished, you will fortify, they clothe.

3.

227.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Vēre terra grāmine et flōribus vestītūr. 2. Vēre avium cantūs¹ audīmus. 3. Mors vītā nostrā finiet. 4. Puerī in grāmine dormiēbant. 5. Somnō mollīmus cūrās. 6. Canēs agricolārum ovēs custōdiunt. 7. Militēs urbem custōdient. 8. Bellum ā Scīpiōne finiētūr. 9. Audīte verba sapientium. 10. Injūstē puer pūnītūr.

II. 1. A good father will nurture, clothe, and instruct his children. 2. It is very² pleasant³ to hear the sweet voice of the nightingale. 3. All our pains are ended by death. 4. The general justly punishes a cowardly soldier. 5. The sheep are carefully⁴ guarded by the dog. 6. Scipio finished the war in Africa. 7. The pupils are very faithfully instructed by their teachers. 8. My son, soothe your mother's cares. 9. The city is fortified by strong walls. 10. In summer the trees are clothed with leaves.

228.

VOCABULARY.

custōdiō, 4 [custōs], *guard*.

dormiō, 4, *sleep*.

ē-rudiō, 4 [rudis], *teach, instruct*.

finiō, 4 [finis], *end, finish*.

mollīō, 4 [mollis], *soften, soothe*.

mūniō, 4, *fortify, defend*.

nūtriō, 4, *nurture, nourish*.

pūniō, 4, *punish*.

vestiō, 4, *clothe*.

carmen, -inis, n., *song*.

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain*.

folium, -i, n., *leaf*.

grāmen, -inis, n., *grass*.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *cowardly*.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant*.

luscīnia, -ae, f., *nightingale*.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*.

¹ Songs. ² See p. 91, note. ³ Neuter gender. ⁴ See 144, 145.

CHAPTER XXXII. 1.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

229. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *audiō*.

230.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Audīvī, audīveram, audīverō.* 2. *Audītus est, audītus erat, audītus erit.* 3. *Audīvimus, audīverāmus, audīverimus.* 4. *Audīverant, audītī erant.* 5. *Audīvistī, audīverās, audīveris.* 6. *Audīvisse, audītus esse.* 7. *Audīverātis, audītī erātis.* 8. *Audīvit, audīverat, audīverit.*

II. 1. Thou hast heard, thou hadst heard, thou wilt have heard. 2. They have been heard, they had been heard, they will have been heard. 3. I have heard, I have been heard. 4. To have been heard, to have heard. 5. We have heard, we had heard, we shall have heard. 6. We have been heard, we had been heard, we shall have been heard. 7. You have heard, you have been heard. 8. He had heard, he had been heard.

2.

231.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Fīnīveram, ērudīveram, vestīveram.* 2. *Fīnītum est, ērudītus sum, vestītus sum.* 3. *Nōnne fīnīta sunt? nōnne vestītus eram? nōnne ērudītus erō?* 4. *Vestīverās, ērudīverās, fīnīverās.* 5. *Fīnīveris, ērudītus eris, vestīverimus.* 6. *Vestītāe erant, fīnīta erant, ērudītī erant.* 7. *Ērudīverātis, fīnīveram, vestīverint.* 8. *Vestītīne sumus? estne ērudītus? estne fīnītum?* 9. *Ērudīta es, fīnīstī,¹ vestīerās.²* 10. *Nōn ērudīstis, nōn fīnīverātis, nōn vestīverit.*

¹ For *fīnīvistī*. Perfects in *īvī* often drop *v* and contract *ī* to *ī*.

² For *vestīverās*.

II. 1. Have they not been clothed? have they (*neut.*) not been finished? were they not taught? 2. We have finished, we have clothed, we have taught. 3. She had been taught, they (*neut.*) had been finished, we (*fem.*) had been clothed. 4. Didst thou teach? have you finished? has she clothed? 5. They had clothed, they will have taught, I have finished. 6. I had clothed, thou hadst taught, he had finished. 7. We shall not have finished, they will not have clothed, you will not have taught. 8. It was not finished, we had not been taught, you will not have been clothed. 9. You have taught, you had finished, you will have clothed. 10. I shall have clothed, I had taught, I finished.

3.

232.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Medicus régis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit.¹ 2. Fabricius medicum vinxit et ad dominum mīsit. 3. Urbs virtūte et fortitūdine militum mūnīta erit. 4. Rōmānī artibus² et lītterīs² ā Graecīs ērudītī sunt. 5. Octō hōrās dormīre puerīs satis est. 6. Lūce sōlis calōreque aperiuntur flōrēs. 7. Omnēs terrās fortibus virīs aperuit nātūra. 8. Militēs arcem fidēliter custōdīvērunt. 9. Brūtus in castra Caesaris vēnerat. 10. Nihil scīre turpissimum est.

II. 1. The king's physician was bound by Fabricius' slave. 2. The valor and endurance (*fortitūdō*) of the soldiers fortified the city. 3. The Greeks instructed the Romans in the arts.³ 4. Is it enough for a boy to sleep two hours?⁴ 5. The light and heat of the sun had opened the flowers. 6. The citadel was very⁵ carefully guarded by

¹ How do you know whether this form is present or perfect?

² In the arts and literature.

⁴ *Duās hōrās.*

³ Compare I. 4.

⁵ See p. 91, note.

the soldiers. 7. To know many things¹ is very useful. 8. To be ignorant of many things is not disgraceful. 9. The general's camp² had not been fortified. 10. Did you not hear the voice of your father?

233.

VOCABULARY.

aperiō, 4, -uī, -tum, *open, disclose.*

ne-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of.*

sciō, 4, *know, know how.*

veniō, 4, *vēni, ventum, come.*

vinciō, 4, *viuxī, vinctum, bind.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards.*

ars, artis, F., *art. (167. 2.)*

calor, -ōris, M., *heat.*

Fabricius, -i, M., *Fabricius, a Roman general.*

litterae, -ārum, F., *letters, literature; often = epistula.*

lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight.*

medicus, -i, M., *physician.*

nox, noctis, F., *night. (167. 2.)*

octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*

turpis, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful.*

4.

234.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Dē quā rē est pēnsūm hodiernūm?

D. Pēnsūm hodiernūm est iterūm dē conjugātiōne quartā.

P. Herī quartam conjugātiōnem nesciēbās; scīsne hodiē?

D. Partim sciō, modum autem subjunctivum nesciō.

P. Mox subjunctivum quoque discēs.
partly mood

D. Estne ūtilius indicātivum scīre quam subjunctivum?

P. Utrumque dēbēmus scīre; indicātivus autem saepius invenītur.

D. Adhūc conjugātiōnēs didicī quattuor. Suntne plūrēs?
thus far

P. Nōn plūrēs; sed multa verba sunt anōmala.
irregular

¹ See 117.

² Remember that the Latin word for *camp* is plural, *castra*,

castrōrum. What must be the number of the verb of which *castra* is the subject?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

235.

VERBS IN *iō*.¹

Capiō (stem cape), take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capiō, capere, cēpi, captum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.

I take, etc.

capiō	capimūs
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

PRESENT.

PASSIVE.

I am taken, etc.

capior	capimur
caperis, or -re	capiminī
capitur	capiantur

IMPERFECT.

I was taking, etc.

capiebam	capiebāmus
capiebās	capiebātis
capiebat	capiebant

I was taken, etc.

capiebar	capiebāmur
capiebāris, or -re	capiebāminī
capiebātur	capiebantur

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.

capiam	capiemūs
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

I shall be taken, etc.

capiar	capiemur
capieris, or -re	capieminī
capietur	capientur

PERFECT.

cēpi, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.

captus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.

captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, cēperēs, cēperit, etc.

captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

¹ Verbs in *iō* of the third conjugation are distinguished from those of the fourth by the active

infinitive present. What forms of **capio** are like those of **audio**? Make a general statement.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ACTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris or -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris or -re, -erētur.

PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperīs, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, take thou.

capite, take ye.

FUT. capito, thou shalt take,
etc.

capere, be thou taken.

capimini, be ye taken.

capitor, thou shalt be taken,
etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, to take.

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.

FUT. captūrus esse, to be about
to take.

capī, to be taken.

captus esse, to have been taken.

captum īrī, to be about to be
taken.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. capiēns, taking.

FUT. captūrus, about to take.

GER. capiendus, to be taken.

PERF. captus, having been taken.

GERUND.

capienti, of taking,
etc.

SUPINE.

Ac. captum, to take.

Ab. captū, to take, to be taken.

CHAPTER XXXIV. 1.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

236.

VERBS IN *iō*.

Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *capiō*.

237.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Capiunt, capiēbant. 2. Capior, capiēbar, capiar. 3. Capimur, capiēbāmur, capiēmur. 4. Capis, caperis. 5. Cēpī, captus sum. 6. Cēpimus, cēperāmus, cēperimus. 7. Capta sunt, capta erant, capta erunt. 8. Cape, capere. 9. Capere, capī. 10. Cēpisse, captus esse.

II. 1. We are taking, we were taking, we shall be taking. 2. Take, be taken. 3. Thou art taking, thou wast taking, thou wilt take. 4. You have taken, you had taken, you will have taken. 5. It is taken, it was taken, it will be taken. 6. I was taking, I was taken. 7. To take, to have taken. 8. To be taken, to have been taken. 9. It (*fem.*) has been taken, it had been taken, it will have been taken. 10. We have taken, we have been taken.

2.

238.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Tarentīnī lēgātīs Rōmānōrum injūriam fēcērunt. 2. Pyrrhus, Ēpīnī rēx, ad Tarentīnōs vēnit. 3. Contrā Pyrrhum missus est Laevīnus cōsul. 4. Pyrrhus elephantīs vīcit, nam Rōmānōrum equī territī sunt et fugiēbant. 5. Nox proelī finem fēcīt; Laevīnus per noctem fūgīt. 6. Multī et fortēs Rōmānī in pūgnā interfectī sunt. 7. Captīvōs Rōmānōs summō in honōre habuit Pyrrhus. 8. Deinde¹ in Campāniam sē recēpit. 9. Lēgātī, ā Rōmānīs missī,²

¹ Pronounced *de-in' de*.² *Sent*.

honōrificē ā Pyrrhō exceptī sunt. 10. Pāx cum Pyrrhō nōn facta est.

II. 1. A wrong was done to the Romans by the Tarentines. 2. Against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, the Romans sent the consul Lævinus. 3. The spies of Pyrrhus were taken by Lævinus and led through his camp. 4. The Romans did not make peace with King Pyrrhus. 5. Fabricius saw through the design of the king and was not¹ frightened. 6. You will welcome your friend to-day. 7. I welcome my best friend with great pleasure.² 8. The enemy threw their spears and fled into the woods. 9. Did not Cæsar either conquer or slay all his enemies? 10. Finally he was himself (*ipse*) slain by Brutus his friend, and others.

239.

VOCABULARY.

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum

[capiō], *catch, accept, welcome.*

faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, *make, do.*

fugiō, 3, fūgī, fugitum, *flee.*

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *kill, slay.* Cf. necō (221).

jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum, *throw.*

per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum

[speciō], *see through, into.*

re-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [cap-

iō], *take back, get again, receive.*

sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat.*

aut . . . aut, conj., *either . . . or.*

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania, a division of Italy.*

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*

de-inde, adv., *then, next.*

dēnique, adv., *finally.*

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout, spy.*

finis, -is, m., *end.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor.*

honōrificē, adv., *honorably.*

injūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injury.*

Laevīnus, -ī, m., *Lævinus, a Roman.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, lieutenant.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through.*

proclium, -ī, n., *battle.* Cf. pūgna (102).

summus, -a, -um (sup. of superus), adj., *highest.*

Tarentīnus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Tarentum, a Tarentine.*

¹ And . . . not, neque.

² See 144, 145.

CHAPTER XXXV. 1.

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

240.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, agunt, custōdiunt. 3. Ūrnābam, dēlēbam, vincēbam, mūniēbam. 4. Cantāvistī, habuistī, posuistī, vinxistī. 5. Mūtāvērunt, tenuērunt, ēgērunt, cēpērunt, mūnīvērunt. 6. Portāverātis, dēlēverātis, praeberātis, dūxerātis, dormīverātis.

II. 1. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, vincitur. 2. Servāberis, tenēberis, mittēre, vestiēre. 3. Laudātī sumus, prohibītī sumus, ductī sumus, ērudītī sumus. 4. Ūrnāre, monēre, trahere, pūnīre. 5. Amārī, docērī, contemnī, jacī, aperīrī. 6. Amātae sunt, monitae sunt, exceptae sunt, audītae sunt.

III. 1. Dormīte, superāte, faciēte, vincēte, vincēte, praebeēte. 2. Vulnērāvīsse, jēcīsse, vēnīsse, docuīsse, flūxīsse. 3. Recīpimur, spectāmur, agimur, vēstīmur, docēmur. 4. Docēbitis, pūniētis, trahētis, fugiētis, creābitis. 5. Mīsīt, habuit, armāvit, jēcīt, fūgit. 6. Vincimīnī, vituperāminī, terrēmīnī, vincīmīnī, capīmīnī.

2.

241.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou hear-est. 2. I shall praise, I shall destroy, I shall drive, I shall guard. 3. You were adorning, you were seeing, you were conquering, you were fortifying. 4. We have sung, we have had, we have placed, we have bound. 5. You have changed, you have held, you have driven, you have taken, you have fortified. 6. I had carried, I had destroyed, I had furnished, I had led, I had slept.

II. 1. We are put to flight, we are frightened, we are placed, we are bound. 2. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be clothed. 3. They have been praised, they have been prevented, they have been led, they have been instructed. 4. They will be adorned, they will be advised, they will be drawn, they will be punished. 5. To be loved, to be taught, to be despised, to be thrown, to be opened. 6. Thou hast been loved, thou hast been advised, thou hast been welcomed, thou hast been heard.

III. 1. Sleep, surpass, do (*fac*), bind, conquer, furnish. 2. To wound, to throw, to come, to teach, to flow. 3. They are received, they are witnessed, they are driven, they are clothed, they are taught. 4. I shall teach, I shall punish, I shall draw, I shall flee, I shall create. 5. They have sent, they have had, they have armed, they have thrown, they have fled. 6. Thou art conquered, thou art blamed, thou art frightened, thou art bound, thou art taken.

3.

242.

COLLOQUIUM.

JACŌBUS ET AUGUSTUS.

J. Dēnique ad finem pēnsī pervēnimus; quid jam in-
finally end now
 cipiēmus?
begin

A. Tū quidquid vidēbitur incipiēs: ego incipiam nihil.
you whatever seems good

J. Quārē? esne dēfessus?
why

A. Certē, admodum dēfessus; pēnsūm recōgnōscendum
certainly downright review
 mē quidem paene finīvit.
at least almost

J. Mox recreāberis, sī mēcum ad natandum veniēs.
soon will be rested with me swim

A. Profectō tēcum veniam, nam natāre mihi est jūcun-
 surely with you for
 dissimum et semper et praecipuē cum,
 both especially when

"Sōle sub ardentī resonant arbusta cicādīs."
 under glowing resound groves the cicadae

J. Quam lautē poētā aliquem laudās!
 how elegantly some quote

A. Hunc Vergilī versiculum mē docuit praeceptor.
 this Vergil line



CHAPTER XXXVI. 1.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

243. The stem ends in *u*.

244. RULE OF GENDER. — Nouns in *us* are masculine; those in *ū* are neuter.

1. The following nouns, and a few others, are feminine: *acus*, needle; *domus*, house; *Īdūs* (plur.), *Ides*; *manus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe.

245. PARADIGMS.

Gradūs, M., <i>step</i> .		Genū, N., <i>knee</i> .	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. grad us	grad ūs	gen ū	gen ua
G. grad ūs	grad uum	gen ūs	gen uum
D. grad uī (ū)	grad ibus	gen ū	gen ibus
Ac. grad um	grad ūs	gen ū	gen ua
Ab. grad ū	grad ibus	gen ū	gen ibus

MASC.		TERMINATIONS.	NEUT.	
N.V. us	ūs	ū	ua	
G. ūs	uum	ūs	uum	
D. uī (ū)	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)	
Ac. um	ūs	ū	ua	
Ab. ū	ibus (ubus)	ū	ibus (ubus)	

246. The fourth declension is a modification of the third. Thus, *gradūs* is for *graduis*, *gradum* for *graduem*, *gradū* for *gradue*, etc.

247. *Artus*, *joint*, *partus*, *birth*, *tribus*, *tribe*; sometimes *portus*, *harbor*, *verū*, *a spit*; also dissyllables in *cus*, have the termination *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural.

248. *Domus*, *house*, has also forms of the second declension. See special paradigms, 262.

249. Decline together *domus mea*, *my house*; *exercitus māgnus*, *large army*; *Īdūs Mārtiae*, *Ides of March*.

2.

250.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Vēre adventus avium hominibus est jūcundissimus.* 2. *Sēnsūs avium ācrēs sunt, mōtūs celerēs.* 3. *In lacubus et in palūdibus māgna avium est multitudō.* 4. *Avēs multae in porticibus altīs domicilium habent.* 5. *Quercus Jovī sacra erat.* 6. *Quercūs frōns est victōris ōrnāmentum.* 7. *Cōsulātus erat Rōmānōrum magistrātus amplus.* 8. *Salūs cīvitātis in manibus cōsulum erat.* 9. *Cōsulēs exercituum erant imperātōrēs.* 10. *Erant in portibus nāvēs¹ longae.*

II. 1. The enemy (*plur.*) were conquered on the arrival² of *Cæsar*. 2. Many animals fight with their horns. 3. Many lakes are seen in the Alps. 4. The ancients honored the oak (as) the tree³ of *Jupiter*. 5. The songs of birds are heard among the oaks. 6. In ancient times men fought with bows and arrows. 7. The consulship of *Cicero* was very renowned. 8. *Cæsar* came into Italy with a large army. 9. The arrival of the army freed the citizens from fear.⁴ 10. Between school and home we take (make) many steps.

¹ *Nāvēs longae*, *ships of war*.

³ Predicate accusative.

² See 136.

⁴ See 128, 129, 130.

251.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, M. [adveniō],
arrival, approach.
arcus, -ūs, M., bow.
cantus, -ūs, M., song. [sulship.
cōnsulātus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], con-
cornū, -ūs, N., horn.
exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō],
army.
lacus, -ūs, M., lake.
magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magister],
office, magistrate.
manus, -ūs, F., hand.
metus, -ūs, M., fear.
mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], move-
ment, motion.

palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.
portus, -ūs, M., harbor.
quercus, -ūs, F., oak. (11. 4.)
sēnsus, -ūs, M. [sentīō], sense,
feeling.
amplus, -a, -um, adj., great, re-
nowned, honorable.
domicilium, -ī, N., home. (79.)
frōns, frondis, F., chaplet of leaves.
Jūppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, the
supreme god. (262.)
sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.
salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.
schola, -ae, F., school.
victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], conqueror.



CHAPTER XXXVII. 1.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

252. The stem ends in *ē*.

253. RULE OF GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

254.

PARADIGMS.

Diēs, day.		Rēs, thing, affair.		TERMINATIONS.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.V. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	ēs	ēs
G. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	ēī	ērum
D. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	ēī	ēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	rem	rēs	em	ēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	ē	ēbus

255. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

256. Decline together *rēs pūblica*, *state*; in sing., *bona fidēs*, *good faith*; *māgna spēs*, *great hope*; *diēs quīntus*, *fifth day*.

257.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In omnibus rēbus certus ōrdō est. 2. Domina rērum hūmānarum est fortūna. 3. Tertiō diē cōsul in urbem veniet. 4. Dux exercitum in plānitē dūxit. 5. Ibi aciem instrūxit et hostēs expectābat. 6. Māgnam victōriac spem habuit. 7. Nam māximae erant mīlitum fidēs et virtūs. 8. Pro salutē rei pūblīcae pūgnābant. 9. Posterō diē hostēs in pūgnam prōcēssērunt. 10. Ad diē finem victī sunt et fugātī.

II. 1. God is the creator of all things. 2. The commonwealth is dear to all good citizens. 3. In all human affairs there is much uncertainty.¹ 4. The army was marshalled in a large plain. 5. The enemy advanced against² the Romans' line of battle. 6. The general praised the soldiers for³ their⁴ fidelity. 7. In the line of battle were many foot-soldiers. 8. They had great hopes of victory. 9. In⁵ a few days the arrangement of things will be changed. 10. The consul gave a pledge to the state.

258.

VOCABULARY.

aciēs, -ēī, F., *line of battle*.

fidēs, -ēī, F., *faith, fidelity, pledge*.

plānitēs, -ēī, F., *plain*.

rēs pūblica, F., *commonwealth*,

spēs, spēī, F., *hope*. [state.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain*.

creātor, -ōris, M., *creator*.

domina, -ae, F., *mistress*.

exspectō, I, *await, expect*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *human*.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*.

in-struō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum, *draw up, marshal*.

ōrdō, -inis, M., *order, arrangement*.

paucus,⁶ -a, -um, adj., *few, little*.

pedes, -itis, M. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., *following, next*.

prō, prep. w. abl., *for, in behalf of*.

prō-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, *advance*.

¹ Many things are uncertain.

² In with accusative.

³ Dē with ablative.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ See 135, 136.

⁶ Mostly used in the plural.

259. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Claudus alterō pede, lame in one foot.*
2. *Mōribus similēs, similar in character.*
3. *Virtūte praecēdunt, they excel in courage.*
4. *Numerō ad duodecim, about twelve in number.*

Observe that the ablatives *pede*, *mōribus*, *virtūte*, and *numerō*, answer the question *in what respect?* This ablative is called the **Ablative of Specification**.

260. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which anything is said to be, or to be done.

2.

261.

COLLOQUIUM.

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima?
which

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs?
why think

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātīvō singularī.
variety on account

Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim nōminum
gender also especially nouns
 in is dēsinentiū.
ending

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum in
ium habeant?
have

D. Prīmum nōmina in *is* et *ēs* dēsinentia, sī in genetīvō
first
 singularī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs*.

Deinde monosyllaba in *s* vel *x* dēsinentia, sī ante *s* et *x*
 stat cōsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx*.
consonant

Tum nōmina in *ns* et *rs* dēsinentia; ut *cliēs* et *cohors*.

Dēnique nentra in *e*, *al*, *ar* dēsinentia; ut *mare*, *animal*,
neuters
calcar.

2.

263.

FOR TRANSLATION.

PROSERPINA IS CARRIED OFF BY PLUTO.

[Review 199 and 215.]

Dum Proserpina luco
 Ludit, et aut violas aut candida lilia carpit,
 Dumque puellari studio¹ calathosque² sinumque²
 Implet, et aequales³ certat superare legendo,⁴
 Paene simul visa est dilectaque⁵ raptaque⁶ Diti.⁷

HER CHANCE OF RETURN IS LOST.

Dixerat.⁸ At Cereri certum est⁹ educere¹⁰ natam.¹¹
 Non ita fata siuunt, quoniam jejunia virgo
 Solverat et, cultis¹² dum simplex errat¹³ in hortis,
 Poeniceum¹⁴ curva¹⁵ decerpserat arbore pomum,
 Sumptaque callenti septem de cortice grana
 Presserat¹⁶ ore suo : solusque ex omnibus illud
 Ascalaphus vidit. . . .
 Vidit, et indicio reditum crudelis ademit.

¹ Puellāri studiō = puellāri cum studiō. See 144 and 145.

² Que . . . que, both . . . and.

³ Aequālēs = comitēs.

⁴ Legendō, in gathering (flowers).

⁵ Dilecta, from diligō.

⁶ Rapta, from rapiō. With dilecta and rapta supply est.

⁷ Diti. Translate as if, instead of the dative, it were ā Dite.

⁸ Dixerat, i.e. Jūppiter.

⁹ Cereri certum est, to Ceres it is determined = Ceres is resolved.

¹⁰ Educere, that is, from the lower world.

¹¹ Nātam = filiam.

¹² Cultis, with hortis.

¹³ Errat. Translate as if it were errābat. The present is very often used after dum, referring to past time. So lūdit, l. 2.

¹⁴ Poeniceum, with pōmum.

¹⁵ Curvā, bending. The tree is loaded with fruit.

¹⁶ Presserat, from premō.

CHAPTER XXXIX. 1.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns may be divided into eight classes, and arranged in three groups:

- | | | | | | |
|------|----------------|-------|-------------------|--------|-------------------|
| I. { | 1. Personal. | II. { | 4. Determinative. | III. { | 6. Relative. |
| | 2. Reflexive. | | 5. Demonstrative. | | 7. Interrogative. |
| | 3. Possessive. | | | | 8. Indefinite. |

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

264.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

Egō, *I.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. egō, <i>I.</i>	nōs, <i>we.</i>
G. meī, <i>of me.</i>	nostrum, or nostrī, <i>of us.</i>
D. mihī (mī), <i>to, for me.</i>	nōbīs, <i>to, for us.</i>
Ac. mē, <i>me.</i>	nōs, <i>us.</i>
Ab. (ā) mē, <i>by me.</i>	(ā) nōbīs, <i>by us.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

Tū, *thou.*

N. tū, <i>thou.</i>	vōs, <i>you, ye.</i>
G. tuī, <i>of thee.</i>	vestrum, or vestrī, <i>of you.</i>
D. tibī, <i>to, for thee.</i>	vōbīs, <i>to, for you.</i>
Ac. tē, <i>thee.</i>	vōs, <i>you.</i>
Ab. (ā) tē, <i>by thee.</i>	(ā) vōbīs, <i>by you.</i>

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

Suī, *of himself, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. _____	_____
G. suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself.</i>	suī, <i>of themselves.</i>
D. sibī, <i>to, for himself, etc.</i>	sibī, <i>to, for themselves.</i>
Ac. sē (sēsē), <i>himself, etc.</i>	sē (sēsē), <i>themselves.</i>
Ab. (ā) sē (sēsē), <i>by himself, etc.</i>	(ā) sē (sēsē), <i>by themselves.</i>

265. 1. The personal pronoun of the third person is *is, ea, id, he, she, it*. But when reference is made in the oblique cases to the subject of the sentence, the reflexive *suī* is used: *Omnēs hominēs sē* (or *sēsē*) *amant, all men love themselves*.

2. The nominatives of the personal pronouns are much less frequently used in Latin than their equivalents in English. Why is this? In general, they are used only for emphasis or contrast: *Ego sum aegrōtus, tū valēs, I am sick, you are well*.

3. "With me, with you," etc., are not expressed, as you would expect, by *cum mē, cum tē, etc.*, but always by *mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum*. So *quibuscum* (279).

4. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are often used with reflexive sense: *Tū tē amās, thou lovest thyself; ego mihi noceō, I do harm to myself*.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

266. Possessive adjective pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns:

<i>meus, -a, -um, my, mine</i> (voc. sing. masc. <i>mī</i>).	<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their (own)</i> .
<i>tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine;</i> <i>your, yours.</i>	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.</i>
	<i>vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.</i>

2.

267.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Pater mē amat et patrem ego amō.* 2. *Tū quoque patrem meum amās.* 3. *Patrem tuum ego quoque amō.* 4. *Puella nimium sē culpat.* 5. *Filium tuum amāmus nōs omnēs.* 6. *Vōs (acc.) agitātis.* 7. *Nōn ut aliī nōs (acc.) vidēmus.* 8. *Brūtus sē suō gladiō perfōdit.* 9. *Nōs sumus miserī, beātī estis vōs.* 10. *Sine tē et tēcum pariter sumus miserī.* 11. *Mēcum eris miserrimus.* 12. *Dē tē erat mea orātiō.* 13. *Vōbīscum tristis erō nunquam.* 14. *Mihi mea vīta, tibi tua est cāra.* 15. *Amīcus noster est memor vestrī.*

II. 1. *Thy mother is dear to thee, mine to me.* 2. *All your plans are known to us.* 3. *The boy loves himself too much.* 4. *The burden will be carried by me, by you, by us,*

by thee. 5. With you and without you we shall be equally happy. 6. Thee I love, but not thy dog. 7. O, how I shall miss you, my friend! 8. We¹ are poor, you¹ are rich. 9. Our life is very short. 10. The boy carried a wooden cup with him(self).

268.

VOCABULARY.

agitō, 1 [agō, put in motion], dis-
turb, vex, chase.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy.

culpō, 1 [culpa], blame, censure,
reproach.

dēsiderō, 1, desire, long for, miss.

ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum,
wood], of wood, wooden.

nimum, adv., too, too much.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., known.

onus, -eris, n., burden

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], speech,
talk, address.

pariter, adv. [pār, equal], equally.

pauper, -eris, adj., poor. (167. 3.)

per-fodiō, 3, -fōdi, -fōssum, dig
through, stab, pierce.

quoque, conj., also, too.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

ut, adv. and conj., as

3.

269.

COLLOQUIUM.

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
come little sister walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre? Nōnne
whither

in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
yes shade

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen . . .
gladly but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum ambulās
so much hesitate
libenter?

S. Nōlī mē rīdēre. Metuō anguēs. "Frīgidus latet
don't laugh at snakes cold lurks
anguis in herbā," ut cantat Vergilius.

F. Nōlī metuere. Venī; ubi frāga mātūra sunt repperī.
where strawberries ripe are have found.

S. Ō quam suāve! In mē nōn jam est mora.
delightful now delay

¹ Why should the pronouns be expressed in Latin?

CHAPTER XL. 1.
DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

270. PARADIGMS: *Is, ĭdem, ipse.*

Is, that, this; also, he, she, it.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>	
G. <i>ĕjus</i>	<i>ĕjus</i>	<i>ĕjus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	
Ac. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>	
Ab. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	

Īdem, same.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>īdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	
G. <i>ĕjusdem</i>	<i>ĕjusdem</i>	<i>ĕjusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	{ <i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i>	

Iipse, self (himself, etc.).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	
G. <i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	

1. Determinative pronouns, like adjectives, agree with nouns expressed or understood; *īdem* and *ipse* also with pronouns.

2. *Is* is very often used as a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it, they*. Also as the antecedent of *quī, who; is quī, he who*.

3. *Īdem* is compounded of *īs* and the suffix *dem*. *Īdem* is for *īsdem*; *īdem* for *īddem*; *eundem, etc.*, for *eundem, etc*; *eōrundem, etc.*, for *eōrundem, etc.*

4. **Ipse, self** (intensive) is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, and must be distinguished from **sē, self** (reflexive):

- (1) **Homo ipse veniet**, *the man himself* (and not another) *will come*.
- (2) **Hominem ipsum vīdī**, *I saw the man himself*.
- (3) **Homo sē culpāt nimium**, *the man blames himself too much*.
- (4) **Mīles frātrēm, dein sē ipsum interfēcīt**, *the soldier killed his brother, then himself*.

5. How do we indicate in English in speech, and how in writing, when we use *self* (*himself*, etc.) whether we intend the intensive or the reflexive *self*?

6. **Ipse** may be variously translated: **ipse fēcī**, *I MYSELF did it*, *I did it ALONE*, *I did it OF MY OWN ACCORD*.

271. Decline together is **homo**, *that man*; **ea nāvis**, *that ship*; **id bellum**, *that war*; **īdem diēs**, *the same day*; **eadem manus**, *the same hand*; **īdem onus**, *the same burden*; **vir ipse**, *the man himself*.

2.

272.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cicerō est sc̄riptor ēlegantissimus; ējus librōs legimus. 2. Fīdum amīcum habeō; eum ego magis quam tū amās. 3. Eum magis quam tē amō. 4. Nōn semper eundem hominem laudāmus. 5. Magister ipse tē laudābit. 6. Sunt sex partēs orbis terrārum; māxima eārum est Asia. 7. Fortūna nunc mihi,¹ nūc eī¹ favet. 8. Interdum amīcīs¹ ipsīs, interdum inimīcīs¹ nocet. 9. Semper īdem erat Sōcratis vultus. 10. In eōdem specū habitābant Androclus et leō.

II. 1. Sallust is an elegant author; have you read his writings? 2. I have not read those, but Cicero's. 3. Fortune favored now you,² now them.² 4. Even (*ipse*) your own friend will blame you. 5. The minds of men are not always the same. 6. We were sailing³ with you in the same ship. 7. He gave me the book of his own accord.⁴ 8. The master

¹ Indirect object, though translated as a direct object. See 343.

² Dative. Cf. I. 7.

³ Use passive of **vehō**.

⁴ See 270. 6.

offers the same rewards to the boys. 9. The same rewards are offered by the master himself.

273.

VOCABULARY.

Androclus, -ī, M., *Androclus*.
auctor, -ōris, M. [**augeō**, *increase*],
maker, author.

ēlegāns, -ntis, adj., *choice, elegant*.

faveō, 2, **fāvī**, **fautum**, *be favorable to, befriend* (with dat.).

interdum, adv., *sometimes*.

mēns, **mentis**, F., *mind, purpose*.

noceō, 2, **nocuī**, **nocitum**, *do harm to, hurt, injure* (with dat.).

orbis, -is, M., *circle*.

orbis terrārum, *the earth, the world*.

Sallustius, -ī, M., *Sallust, a historian*. (79.)

scrīptor, -ōris, M. [**scrībō**], *writer, author*.

scrīptum, -ī, N. [**scrībō**], *writing, written work*.

sex, num. adj., indecl., *six*.

specus, -ūs, M., *cave*.

suāviter, adv. [**suāvis**], *sweetly, delightfully*.

vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, features, looks*.

animus (161), *mind, soul, heart*; the general word for *mind*.

mēns, *mind*, as that which thinks, *intellect*; more limited in meaning.

3.

COLLOQUIUM.

274. *Translate into Latin:—*

BROTHER AND LITTLE SISTER. — *Continued*.

B. Let us carry¹ with us two² little-baskets.³

S. See!⁴ I have them in my hand already.⁵

B. The sun is hot,⁶ but there is a cool⁷ breeze.

S. Oh, how the trees and flowers delight me!

B. To stay in the house is downright⁸ stupid.⁹

S. Yes, indeed,¹⁰ and I don't mean to any more.¹¹

B. Here are¹² the strawberries. Now we will fill our baskets. Isn't it jolly?¹³

¹ *Let us carry, portēmus.*

² **Duās**. See 311. 4.

³ **Corbula**, -ae.

⁴ **Ecce**. ⁵ **Jam**.

⁶ **Ardēns**. ⁷ **Frigidus**.

⁸ **Admodum**. ⁹ **Molestus**.

¹⁰ *Yes, indeed, ista sunt, those things are (true).*

¹¹ *Neither is it in mind to me more.*

See 269, l. 2.

¹² *Here are = ēn! or ecce!*

¹³ **suāvissimum**.

CHAPTER XLI. 1.
DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

275. PARADIGMS: **Hīc**, iste, ille.

Hīc, *this (near), this of mine.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, *that, that of yours.*

N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Ille, *that (yonder).*

N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

1. **Hīc** is used of that which is near the speaker in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the First Person: **Hīc equus**, *this horse (near me, or belonging to me)*.

2. **Iste** is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Second Person: **Iste equus**, *that horse (near you, or belonging to you)*.

3. **Ille** is used of that which is relatively remote from the speaker, or person addressed, in *place, time, or thought*, and hence is called the Demonstrative of the Third Person: **Ille equus**, *that horse (yonder)*.

4. **Ille** often means *that well-known, that famous*.

5. **Hīc** and **ille** are sometimes used in contrast: **Hīc**, *the latter*, **ille**, *the former*.

6. **Is**, as a determinative pronoun, sometimes approaches **hīc** in meaning, sometimes **ille**. Hence it is to be translated *this* or *that*, according to the connection.

276.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Illū hōmīnis filiū laudābant omnēs. 2. Iste canis semper lātrat. 3. Hūjus scholae semper memorēs erimus. 4. Dabō tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Illī lapidēs dūrī sunt. 6. Multī virī dīvitēs in hāc urbe habitant. 7. Variī sunt colōrēs hūjus flōris. 8. Nōmen illīus poētae est clā-rissimum. 9. Hārum avium cantus nōs dēlectat. 10. Ista tua studia amō et laudō. 11. Hās terrās silvīs pulcherrimīs ōrnāvit Deus. 12. Illud ducis cōnsilium nōbīs ūtile fuit.

II. 1. These mountains are very¹ high. 2. I shall always be mindful of that friend of yours.² 3. This thing will be hurtful to you. 4. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous³ orators; the former⁴ was a Greek, the latter⁴ a Roman. 5. The citizens of yonder city are most wretched. 6. The air in these mountains is lighter than in those valleys. 7. He gave me this pretty bird. 8. That old farmer's wine is good. 9. I have read that book of yours. 10. That book of yours has been read by me, by you, by us, by us ourselves.

2.

277.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hannibal, clā-rissimus ille imperātor, Alpēs montēs superāvit. 2. Militum animōs hāc ōrātiōne firmāvit. 3. Vidētis, milītēs fortissimī, Ītaliā illam. 4. Illud est domicilium hostium nostrōrum. 5. Gallī, incolae hārum regiōnum, sociī amīcīque nostrī erunt. 6. Hī nōbīs omnēs rēs neces-sariās praebēbunt. 7. Hī erunt hostēs illōrum Rōmānōrum

¹ See p. 91, note.

² *That of yours* = **iste**.

³ Superlative.

⁴ See 275. 5.

improbōrum. 8. Rōma illa praeda vestra erit. 9. Vōs ipsī expūgnāvistis Saguntum, oppidum illud firmissimum. 10. Hās Alpēs, illōs Pyrēnaeōs montēs superāvistis; Rōmānōs mox vincētis.

II. 1. Hannibal increased the courage of the soldiers by these words. 2. Again, soldiers, have you defeated those famous Romans. 3. The gods and your own courage have given us the victory. 4. This fair Italy will soon be ours. 5. Rome itself, that proud city, will be taken. 6. Those arms of yours will be stained with the best blood of Rome. 7. Those famous legions have been defeated. 8. Cross with me yonder mountains. 9. Those fierce enemies of the Romans, the Samnites, will welcome us. 10. Rome shall be the reward of valor. Forward!¹

278.

VOCABULARY.

āēr, āēris, *m.*, *air*.

cantus, -ūs, *m.*, *singing, song*.

dēlectō, *l.*, *delight*.

Dēmōsthenēs, -is, *m.*, *Demosthenes*, an Athenian orator.

dīvēs, -itis, *adj.*, *rich*. (167. 3.)

dō, dare, dēdī, datum, *give*.

ex-pūgnō, *l.*, *take by storm, take*.

firmō, *l.* [*firmus*], *make firm or steadfast, fortify, strengthen*.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *strong, firm*.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *bad*.

īterum, *adv.*, *a second time, again*.

lātrō, *l.*, *bark, bark at*.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, *legion*.

maculō, *l.*, *stain*.

mox, *adv.*, *soon*.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, *necessary*. [sary.]

praeda, -ae, *f.*, *booty, spoil*.

Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, *Saguntum*, town

in Spain.

Samnīs, -ītis, *m. & f.*, *a Samnite*.

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, *blood*.

silva, -ae, *f.*, *wood, forest*.

socius, -ī, *m.*, *ally, associate*.

superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *proud*.

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, *thin, light*.

trāscendō, 3, -ī, -sum, *cross*.

cantus, *song, melody*, whether of the voice of man, of birds, or of musical instruments.

carmen, *song*, as *melody*, and also in a wider sense; often with reference to the composition. Hence, a *poem*.²

¹ Prōcēdite.

² It must not be supposed that

distinctions in synonymous words are always observed in usage.

CHAPTER XLII. 1.

PRONOUNS: RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

279. PARADIGMS: *Quī, quis, aliquis.*RELATIVE: *Quī, who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	
G. cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D. cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus	
Ac. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

INTERROGATIVE: *Quis, who, which, what?*

N. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G. cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INDEFINITE: *Aliquis, some one, some, any one.*

	SINGULAR.		
N. aliquis	aliqua	aliquid <i>or</i> -quod	
G. alicūjus	alicūjus	alicūjus	
D. alicuī	alicuī	alicuī	
Ac. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid <i>or</i> -quod	
Ab. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	

	PLURAL.		
N. aliquī	aliquae	aliqua	
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum	
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua	
Ab. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	

1. Observe the feminine nominative singular, and the neuter nominative plural of *aliquis*, and compare them with corresponding forms of *quis*.

2. **Aliquis** is used adjectively in the neuter form **aliquod**, and sometimes in the masculine and feminine forms. The same is true of **quīdam** and **quisque** (4).

3. Besides the interrogative **quis** and its compounds, there is an interrogative adjective **quī** (*which, what?*) declined like the relative **quī**.

4. Besides **aliquis**, the most important indefinites are:

quīdam	quaedam	quiddam , or quoddam , <i>certain one, certain.</i>
quisquam	(<i>wanting</i>)	quidquam , <i>any one (at all)</i> , no plural.
quisque	quaeque	quidque , or quodque , <i>each one, every.</i>

5. **Quīdam**, **quisquam**, and **quisque** are declined like the simple pronouns. **Quīdam** changes *m* to *n* before *d*; **quendam**, etc., **quōrundam**, etc.

6. **Aliquis**, *some one, any one* (without emphasis); **quisquam**, *any one at all* (emphatic), also in negative and interrogative sentences. **Quis** after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, is indefinite, *any one*.

7. **Aliquis** means *some man*, I don't know who; **quīdam**, *a certain man*, whom I know, but don't mean to describe.

280. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Puer quī vēnit**, *the boy who came.*
2. **Puella quae vēnit**, *the girl who came.*
3. **Librī quōs legis**, *the books which you read.*
4. **Puellae quās vīdistī**, *the girls whom you saw.*

Compare the relative in each of the above examples with the noun to which it refers (called the *antecedent*) in respect, first to gender, and then to number.

Look now at the case of the relative in each of the examples, and compare the English with the Latin. Plainly, the case of the relative has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. It may be the same or different.

281. RULE OF SYNTAX.¹—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.

¹ As the *person* of the antecedent has no effect on the relative, it is wrong, though customary, to

say "the relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person."

282. *Examine the following:—*

1. Ego quī vēnī, *I who came.*
2. Vōs quī vēnistis, *you who came.*

Observe now the person and number of the verb in these two examples, and in the first two given in 280.

283. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—**The verb of which a relative pronoun is the subject agrees in person and number with the antecedent of the relative.**

2.

284.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quis forum Rōmānōrum rōstrīs ōrnāvit? 2. Gājus Duilius, quī māgnam praedam ā Carthāginiēnsibus reportāvit. 3. Quae amicitia potest esse¹ inter improbōs? 4. Quis clārior fuit in Graeciā Themistocle?² 5. Quem timēs in meā domō? 6. Quae animālia sunt celerrima et ferōcissima? 7. Omne animal quod sanguinem habet cor habet. 8. Divitēs sunt ī quī suis rēbus contentī sunt. 9. Erant quōque³ annō duo cōsulēs in civitāte Rōmānā. 10. Sunt animālia quaedam in quibus est aliquid simile ratiōnī.

II. 1. What have you in your hand? 2. By whom was the Roman forum adorned with the prows of ships? 3. We see the general whom you praise. 4. He is rich who is contented. 5. He will be praised whose⁴ courage saved our country. 6. We love those whose manners are pleasing. 7. The boy has something in his hand. 8. Certain labors are pleasant to us. 9. We are the same⁵ to-day that⁵ we were yesterday. 10. What things are brought to us from Africa?

¹ Potest esse, *can be.*

² See 212.

³ Ablative of quisque.

⁴ Of whom.

⁵ The same . . . that, or same . . .

as, *idem . . . quī.*

3.

285.

EXERCISES.

Before trying to do the following exercises, review the declension of irregular adjectives (200, 201), and write out the declension of *quīdam*, *quisquam*, and *quisque*.

I. 1. Est quisquam tibi cārior quam parentēs tuī? 2. Proprii liberī cārissimī cuique sunt. 3. Erant duo filiī Rhēae Silviae, quōrum alterī erat nōmen Rōmulus, alterī Rēmus; uterque fortis erat. 4. Estne in ūllō animālī māior prudentia quam in cane? 5. Vidēsne illa duo sidera? utrīus lūx clārior est? 6. Virtūs eōrum quī patriam nostram servāvērunt semper laudābitur. 7. In istīs arboribus quae hortum ōrnant avēs variae cantant. 8. Rīsus aliōrum saepe causa irae nostrae est. 9. Nūllum malum sine aliquō bonō est. 10. Nēmō nostrum idem est in senectūte quī¹ fuit in juventūte. 11. Urbēs illae, quārum glōria māgna est, ā militibus nostrīs expūgnātae sunt.

II. 1. All animals that have blood have hearts. 2. We shall be the same¹ to-morrow as¹ we are to-day. 3. Is any² animal more sagacious than the elephant?³ 4. We have five fingers on each hand. 5. Those have hope who have nothing else.⁴ 6. Many men build houses which they will never inhabit. 7. The moon sends upon the earth the light which she has received from the sun. 8. Cornelia had two sons, both of whom⁵ were killed. 9. Hector, by whose bravery many Greeks were slain, was himself killed. 10. Will not some friend relieve me of this burden?⁶

286.

VOCABULARY.

accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [*accipiō*], take to, receive, accept.
bonum, -ī, n., good thing, blessing.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [*Carthāgō*], of Carthage, Carthaginian.
clārus, -a, -um, bright, famous.

¹ See p. 128, note 5.

³ See 211, 212.

⁵ Of whom each.

² See I. 4.

⁴ Aliud.

⁶ See 128, 129.

contentus, -a, -um, adj., *contented*.
 cor, cordis, n., *heart*.
 crās, adv., *to-morrow*.
 digitus, -ī, m., *finger*.
 duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two* (311.4).
 ex-pūgnō, l [pūgna], *take, capture*.
 forum, -ī, n., *market-place, forum*.
 Gājus Duilius, -ī, m., *Caius Duilius*.
 Hector, -oris, m., *Hector, chief of the Trojan heroes*.
 herī, adv., *yesterday*.
 hodiē, adv., *to-day*.
 labor, -ōris, m., *labor*.
 malum, -ī, n., *bad thing, evil*.
 nēmō (-inis), m. & f. [nē, homo], *no one*. For genitive and ablative use nullius, nullō.

parēns, -entis, m. & f., *parent*. (167.1.)
 proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own*.
 prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom*.
 Remus, -ī, m., *Remus, brother of Romulus*.
 re-portō, l, *bring back*.
 Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*.
 rīsus, -ūs, m. [rīdeō], *laughter*.
 Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus, first king of Rome*.
 rōstrum, -ī, n., *proW of a vessel*.
 sidus, -eris, n., *star, constellation*.
 Themistoclēs, -is, m., *Themistocles, a famous Greek*.
 varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.

CHAPTER XLIII. 1.

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

Review the paradigms.

287.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Īdem es quī¹ semper fuisti. 2. Hodiē eadem dictitat quae¹ herī. 3. Ecce domum quam aedificāvit Jōhanniculus. 4. Quīdam puer cachinnābat. 5. Iste homo, quī tē laudābat, est stultissimus. 6. Sūa cuique² carissima sunt. 7. Sūi cuique² carissimi sunt. 8. Cōram mē aliquis illam fābulam nārrābat. 9. Egēns est et is quī nōn satis habet, et is cui nihil satis est. 10. Beātus est quī³ nōn cupit quae³ nōn habet.

¹ See p. 128, note 5.

² Notice the order; **quisque** likes to stand after the reflexives.

³ The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is some form of **is**.

II. 1. She is the same that¹ she always has been. 2. He will say the same things to-morrow as¹ to-day. 3. Certain boys laughed out loud in school. 4. That friend of yours is a very wise man. 5. Those trees yonder are covered with leaves. 6. This man is praised by the citizens, that one is blamed. 7. The general himself led his brave soldiers. 8. The soldiers were led by the brave general himself. 9. Danger itself is pleasing to the brave.² 10. Those who are most faithful to their friends are most dear to us.

2.

288.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quod³ nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ēripit. 2. Līber est quī³ nūllī turpitūdīnī servit. 3. Quis est amīcior frātrī quam frāter? 4. Saepe nihil est inimīcius hominī quam ipse sibi. 5. Saepe ī nōbīs nocent⁴ quī nōs amant. 6. Eōs quī aliōrum rēbus adversīs nōn moventur omnēs contemnunt. 7. Eōs vincere difficile est, quī nihil timent. 8. Dēforme est dē sē ipso praedicāre. 9. Aliud⁵ bonum, aliud⁵ malum est. 10. Alterī⁶ laudem, alterī⁶ culpam dabat.

II. 1. Some one has done this. 2. Yesterday a story was read to us by some one. 3. The slave killed himself together with his master. 4. My friend will migrate with me into Gaul. 5. The inhabitants of the city were frightened by the coming of the enemy. 6. Some⁷ bear⁸ thirst easily, others⁷ hunger. 7. The fruits of this tree are pleasing to me, for they are sweet. 8. Those⁹ trees are higher than these⁹ houses. 9. These towers are high, those are low. 10. Those¹⁰ maidens, whose modesty is known, are praised by all.

¹ See p. 128, note 5.⁶ See p. 87, note 3.² Plural. See 117.⁷ See p. 87, note 4.³ See p. 130, note 3.⁸ See p. 87, note 5.⁴ See 343.⁹ See 275. 1 and 3.⁶ See p. 87, note 4.¹⁰ A form of *is*.

289.

VOCABULARY.

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., *unfavorable*.

cachinnō, 1, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rideō.

cōram, prep. w. abl., *in presence of*.
cupiō, 3, -ivī, -itum, *desire*.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly, base, disgraceful*.

dictitō, 1 [dicō], *keep saying*.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

egēns, -entis, adj., *in want, needy*.

ē-ripiō, 3, -ui, ēreptum [rapiō],
snatch away; seize and bear off.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, famine*.

frondōsus, -a, -um, adj. [frōns],
covered with leaves, leafy.

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit*.

Jōhanniculus, -i, m., *little John, Johnny, Jack*.

migrō, 1, *move from one place to another, migrate*.

modestia, -ae, f., *modesty*.

nārrō, 1, *tell, relate, report*.

prae-dicō, 1 [prae, before; dicō, -āre, make known], *proclaim, boast*. Cf. praedicō, *predict*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

serviō, 4 [servus], *be a slave to, serve* (w. dat.).

sitis, -is, f., *thirst*. (154.)

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure*.

turpitūdō, -inis, f. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.

3.

290.

COLLOQUIUM.

SŌCRATĒS ET RHADAMANTHUS.

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.
unless I am mistaken

S. Rēctē dicis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, filius, ut ferunt,
as say
Sōphroniscī.

R. Cūr dicis ut ferunt? Nōnne rē vērā es filius illius?
in truth

S. Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūjus sim filius.
indeed not know am

R. Num¹ mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē sapien-
mock beware
tem dīxit ōrāculum?
oracle

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse
yes why understand

īnsciūm perspicīō.
ignorant see plainly

¹ This word is used in asking questions when the answer *no* is expected. It is not to be translated.

R. Quō modo aetātem dēgīstī?
how pass

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte
for the most part I used to talk especially
 quacrēbam.
inquired

R. Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per breve tempus
 tibi aurēs praebēbō.

S. Eheu! Rhadamanthe, istīus rei sum īnsciūs, nam mihi
alas!
 explicāre poterat nēmō.
was able no one

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris. At quid
seem but
 hōc locō tibi est in animō facere?

S. Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim et Ulixē
seem good I should like
 et aliīs clārissimīs Graeciae pīncipibus loquī.
to talk

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.
be off then shades

4.

291. FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF MARATHON, B.C. 490.

Hōc in tempore nūlla cīvitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō¹ fuit
 praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea² mille mīsit mīlitum. Itaque hōrum
 adventū decem mīlia armātōrum³ complēta sunt, quae manus
 mīrābili flagrābat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est⁴ ut
 plūs quam collēgae Miltiādēs valēret.⁵ Ejus ergō auctōritāte
 impulsī⁶ Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe cōduxērunt locōque⁷
 idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde postērō diē proelium com-
 mīserunt. Dātis, etsi nōn aequum⁸ locum vidēbat suīs,⁹

¹ Auxiliō fuit, was for assist-
 ance = assisted. See 344.

² Supply cīvitās.

³ Armātōrum (participle as
 noun), of armed men.

⁴ Quō factum est, by which it
 was brought about = the result was.

⁵ Plūs . . . valēret, had more
 influence.

⁶ Impulsī (participle from im-
 pellō) prompted.

⁷ Locō = in locō.

⁸ Aequum, favorable.

⁹ Supply mīlitibus.

tamen frētus numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnfligere cupiēbat, eōque¹ magis, quod, priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō² venirent,³ dīmicare ūtile arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum centum,⁴ equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit proeliumque comīsīt. In quō tantō⁵ plūs virtūte⁶ valuērunt Athēniēnsēs, ut decemplicem numerum hostium prōfligārint,⁷ adeōque eōs perterruērunt, ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint.⁸ Quā pūgnā⁹ nihil adhūc exstitit nōbilius: nūlla enim unquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvit.¹⁰ — *Nepos. Milt. v.*

CHAPTER XLIV. 1.

COMPOUNDS OF *Sum*.

292. *Possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can.*

Possum is compounded of *potis, able*, and *sum*. *Potis* is everywhere shortened to *pot*; then *t* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* is dropped after *t*.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. <i>I am able, can, etc.</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possīmus</i>
	<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>	<i>possis</i>	<i>possītis</i>
	<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>
IMPER. <i>I was able, could, etc.</i>	<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
FUT. <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>	<i>poterō</i>	<i>poterimus</i>		

¹ *Eōque magis, and the more.*

² *Subsidiō*: cf. *auxiliō*, first line, and note.

³ *Venirent, should come.*

⁴ *Centum*: supply *mīlia*.

⁵ *Tantō plūs valuērunt, were so much superior.*

⁶ *Virtūte*. See 259, 260.

⁷ *Prōfligārint, they routed.*

⁸ *Petierint, fled to*. See p. 101, note 1.

⁹ *Pūgnā*: ablative after the comparative *nōbilius*. (212.)

¹⁰ From *prōsternō*.

PERF. *I have been able, could, etc.*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerīmus

PLUP. *I had been able, could have, etc.*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

FUT. PERF. *I shall have been able, etc.*

potuerō potuerīmus

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *posse, to be able.* PERF. *potuisse, to have been able.*

293. Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *benefit.*

Prōsum is compounded of prōd (old form of prō), *for*, and sum. The *d* of prōd is retained before *e*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PRES. *I benefit, etc.*

prō-sum prō-sumus prō-sim prō-sīmus

prōd-es prōd-estis prō-sīs prō-sītis

prōd-est prō-sunt prō-sit prō-sint

IMP. prōd-eram prōd-erāmus prōd-essen prōd-essēmus

FUT. prōd-erō prōd-erimus

PERF. prō-fuī prō-fuimus prō-fuerim prō-fuerimus

PLUP. prō-fueram prō-fuerāmus prō-fuissem prō-fuissēmus

F. P. prō-fuerō prō-fuerīmus

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōd-es, prōd-este FUT. prōd-estō, prōd-estōte

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōd-esse PERF. prō-fuisse

Fut. prō-futūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prō-futūrus

The other compounds of **sum** are inflected like the simple verb.

294. Learn the tenses of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive of *possum* and *prōsum*.

295. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *absūm*, all take the dative; but *īnsūm* is often followed by *in* with the ablative, and *intersūm* by *inter* with the accusative.

2.

296.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In *vērā amīcitiā māgnūm inest praesidium*. 2. *Amīcus vērū adest amīcō, nequē deerit in periculō*. 3. *Amīcō prōdesse dulce est, amīcō deesse turpe*. 4. *Amīcus fidus nōn aberit ab amīcō in cāsibus fortunae*. 5. *Mōrēs malī amīcitiāe obsunt; inter hominēs malōs vērā amīcitiā nōn interest*. 6. *Cicerō cōsul rei pūblicae praefuit*. 7. *Multae epistulae Cicerōnis et ejus amīcōrum supersunt*. 8. *Virī praestantēs Athēniēnsibus nullō tempore defuerunt*. 9. *Mōrēs tyrannī sibi amīcōs parāre nōn poterant*. 10. *Nōn omnēs hominēs rēgēs esse possunt*.

II. 1. Cornelia was able to train her sons wisely. 2. All can be good citizens.² 3. Hannibal was not able to take the city. 4. In Hannibal there was great cunning and bravery. 5. Hannibal was long absent from his own country. 6. He commanded armies in Spain and Italy. 7. He was present at many battles, and was the terror³ of the Romans. 8. He benefited his country in many ways.⁴ 9. But his enemies in his own land injured him. 10. Scipio defeated him in battle⁵ in Africa. 11. He survived this defeat many years.⁶ 12. His name will never lack renown.⁷

¹ For *him*. ² See 47.

⁵ Ablative without *in*.

³ Compare *auxiliō*, 291, first line, and note.

⁶ Accusative.

⁴ *Ways* = things. See 259, 260.

⁷ *Renown will never be wanting to his name.*

297.

VOCABULARY.

ab-sum, -esse, *āfuī*, *be away, absent (ā or ab w. abl.)*.

ad-sum, -esse, *-fuī* (also *āfuī*), *be present, stand by, side with*.

dē-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *be wanting, lack*.

in-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *be in, among*.

inter-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *be present at, among*.

ob-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *be against, opposed to, injure*.

possum, posse, *potuī*, *be able, can*.

prae-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *be before, at the head of, command*.

prō-sum, prōd-esse, *prō-fuī*, *be useful, benefit*.

super-sum, -esse, *-fuī*, *remain over, survive, exist*.

calliditās, -ātis, F. [*callidus*], *shrewdness, cunning*.

cāsus, -ūs, M. [*cadō, fall*], *falling down, mischance, misfortune*.

clādēs, -is, F., *destruction, defeat*.

diū, adv., *long, a long time*.

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*. Cf. *suāvis*.

fāma, -ae, F., *rumor, fame, renown*.

ne-que, conj., *and not, nor*; *neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.

parō, I, *make ready, prepare, get*.

patria, -ae, F., *native land, country*.

praesidium, -i, N. [*prae, sedeō*], *defence, help, garrison*.

praestāns, -tis, adj. [*prae-stō, stand before*], *pre-eminent, distinguished*.



CHAPTER XLV. 1.

DEPONENT VERBS.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

298. Dependent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meaning of the active. There are deponents of each of the four regular conjugations:

Admīrāmur opera Deī, we admire the works of God.

Miserōs tuēbimur, we shall protect the wretched.

Audī multa, loquere pauca, listen much, say little.

Caesar prōvinciam sortītus est, Caesar obtained (by lot) a province.

299. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **amō** and **moneō**. (86, 112).

The principal parts of deponent verbs are thus given :

admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus (sum).
tueor, tuērī, tuitus (sum).
loquor, loquī, locūtus (sum).
sortior, sortīrī, sortītus (sum).

300.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Admīrāmur māgnitūdinem caelī. Quis nōn admīrābitur?* 2. *Nocte contemplāmur sīdera.* 3. *Pars vagātur certīs cursibus, plūrima nōn vagantur.* 4. *Sōl dominātur inter stellās.* 5. *Terram lūna comitātur ūna, Jovis stellam lūnae comitantur quattuor.* 6. *Dārēus Alexandrō māgnam Asiae partem pollicitus est.* 7. *Improbī sunt īī quī nēmīnem verentur.* 8. *Homo facinus cōfessus est.* 9. *Comitēs quī salūtem rēgis tuitī erant, māximum praemium accēpērunt.*

II. 1. Who does not admire the beauty of the stars? 2. Other nations accompanied the Cimbri across the Rhine. 3. They wandered far¹ and wide¹ through Gaul and Spain. 4. The Romans wondered at the great bodies of the Germans. 5. Certain animals imitate human voices. 6. We were contemplating that beautiful likeness. 7. The general promised the soldiers² a great reward. 8. He³ is a bad man who does not respect any one.⁴ 9. Children respect their parents, slaves fear their master.

301.

VOCABULARY.

admīror, 1, *wonder at, admire.*
Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander,*
king of Macedon.
beneficium, -ī, n., *benefit, favor.*
caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens.*

Cimbri, -ōrum, m., *Cimbri, a Ger-*
man tribe.
comitor, 1 [**comes, -itis**], *accom-*
pany, attend.
cōn-fiteor, 2, **-fessus**, *confess.*

¹ Longē lātēque.² Not accusative.³ Is.⁴ Not any one = no one.

P. Certē, filiōle, idque vehementer.
right hard

F. Num ego, sī diligenter didicerō, eruditus, ut tū, fiam?
learn learned as become

P. Procul dubiō. At jam tibi eundem est dormitum.
you must go to bed

CHAPTER XLVI. 1.

DEPONENT VERBS.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

303. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Ūtor* vestrā benignitāte, *I avail myself of (use) your kindness.*
2. *Abūtitor* patientiā nostrā, *he abuses our patience.*
3. *Lūx* quā fruimur ā Deō nōbīs datur, *the light which we enjoy is given us by God.*
4. *Fungor* vice cōtis, *I serve as (discharge the office of) a whetstone.*
5. *Māgnā* praedā potitus est, *he got great booty.*
6. *Lacte* et carne vescēbantur, *they lived upon milk and flesh.*

Compare the translation of the examples with the Latin. Observe that the direct object of the verb, or of the preposition closely connected with the verb in English, is represented in Latin by the ablative case.

304. *RULE OF SYNTAX.*—The deponents *ūtōr*, *frutor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, take the ablative.

305. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Meminit* praeteritōrum, *he remembers the past.*
2. *Haec* ōlim meminisse juvābit, *to remember these things will one day give pleasure.*

3. **Tōtam causam oblītus est, he forgot the whole case.**

4. **Tōtius causae oblītus est, he forgot the whole case.**

Observe that in the above examples the genitive is used in 1 and 4, the accusative in 2 and 3.

306. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Verbs of remembering and forgetting take the genitive or accusative.

1. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are commonly put in the accusative. **Recordor** regularly takes the accusative.

307. Review the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of **regō** and **audiō**. (180, 223).

308.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sūlla urbem Rōmam armātus¹ ingressus est. 2. Athēniēnsium dux māximam adeptus est glōriam. 3. Alexander Māgnus in Asiam profectus est. 4. Eum multī et nōbilēs virī secūtī sunt. 5. Quās injūriās passus es oblīviscere.² 6. Beneficia quae accēpimus nōn oblīviscēmur. 7. Quod beneficium accēpit id oblīviscitur. 8. Omnia patī³ discimus. 9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā cōsulātū fūctus est. 10. Lūx quā fruimur dōnum est Deī.

II. 1. Alexander and his companions entered Asia. 2. They suffered both⁴ hunger and thirst. 3. He obtained great glory by his victories. 4. He did not forget the words of his master. 5. For he had been the pupil of a wise man. 6. The soldiers follow their general. 7. They⁵ are bad men who forget benefits. 8. We can learn to endure all things. 9. Who does not enjoy the light which is given us by God? 10. The boys faithfully discharged their duty.

2.

309.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar, Pompējus, Crassus, imperium inter sē partītī sunt. 2. Caesar Galliam prōvinciam sortītus est. 3. Sae-

¹ Armed.

² Imperative.

³ Present infinitive of **patior**.

⁴ Et.

⁵ **II.** See 270. 2.

pissimē bellī fortūnam expertus est. 4. Postea tōtā Ītaliā potitus est. 5. Patrēs bona sua cum liberis partiuntur. 6. Multa in Ītaliā bella orta sunt. 7. Frōns, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur. 8. Quī post mortem Alexandrī rēgnō illius potiti sunt? 9. Optimē scimus quod experti sumus.

II. 1. Soldiers often try the fortune of war. 2. The leaders had divided among themselves the property¹ of the enemy. 3. The Rhone rises not far from the sources of the Rhine. 4. The Rhine, which rises in the Alps, flows into the ocean. 5. The best friends share perils with friends. 6. Who possessed the kingdom after Alexander? 7. We will make trial of our valor. 8. They got possession of the camp of the enemy. 9. Who gets by lot Sicily (as) his province?²

310.

VOCABULARY.

adipiscor, 3, **adeptus**, *get, obtain.*

Cf. **potior**.

castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.), *camp.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus, a rich Roman, contemporary of Cæsar.*

ex-prior, 4, **expertus**, *make trial of, test.*

frōns, **frontis**, f., *brow, forehead.*

fruor, 3, **fruitus** and **fructus**, *enjoy.*

fungor, 3, **fūnetus**, *perform, discharge.*

imperium, -ī, n. [**imperō**], *command, authority, power.*

in-gredior, 3, **gressus** [**gradior**], *enter.*

mentior, 4, *lie, deceive.*

obliviscor, 3, **oblitus**, *forget.*

ōceanus, -ī, m., *ocean.*

officium, -ī, n., *duty.*

optimē, adv., *most excellently, best.*

orior,³ 4, **ortus**, *rise, appear, begin.*

partior, 4 [**pars**], *divide, share.*

patior, 3, **passus**, *bear, suffer.*

Pompējus, -ēī, m., *Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

postea, adv., *afterwards.*

potior, 4, *become master of, get.*

Cf. **adipiscor**. [**march**.

proficiscor, 3, -**fectus**, *set out,*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom.*

sequor, 3, **secutus**, *follow.*

sortior, 4, *draw lots, obtain by lot.*

Sūlla, -ae, m., *Sulla, a Roman general and statesman.*

¹ Compare I. 5. ² Predicate accusative. ³ See vocab. p. 247.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum	centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus, <i>or</i> centum et ūnus	{ centēsīmus p̄mīmus, <i>or</i> centēsīmus et p̄mīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
600.	sēscentī	sēscentēsīmus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsīmus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mīlle	mīllēsīmus
2,000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus
100,000.	centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsīmus

1. Cardinal numbers answer the question *how many?* Ordinals, *which in order?*

2. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable: **quattuor hominēs**, *four men*; **quattuor hominum**, *of four men*.

3. **Ūnus** is declined like **bonus**, except that it has genitive and dative singular **ūnīus**, **ūnī**, like **alius** (201).

4. **Duo** and **trēs** are thus declined:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

5. The hundreds, **ducentī**, etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

6. **Mille** is indeclinable in the singular, and is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun: **mīlle hominēs**, *a thousand men*; **mīlle hominum**, *a thousand (of) men*. The plural has the forms **mīlia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, and is always a noun: **tria mīlia hominum**, *three thousand men (three thousands of men)*.

7. The ordinals are declined like **bonus**.

8. Other kinds of numerals are the distributives : **singulī**, -ae, -a, *one each*, **bīnī**, -ae, -a, *two each*, etc.; and the numeral adverbs : **semel**, *once*, **bis**, *twice*, etc.

312. *Examine the following :—*

1. **Decem annōs Trōja oppūgnābātur**, *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. **Turris alta est centum pedēs**, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

The accusative **annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*; **pedēs**, extent of *space*. The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the **Accusative of Extent**.

313. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**—**Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.**

2.

314.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Homo ūnum ōs, duās aurēs, duōs oculōs habet.**
 2. **Alexander Māgnus tredecim annōs rēgnāvit.** 3. **Templum Diānae quadringentōs quīnquāgintā pedēs longum et ducētōs vīgintī pedēs lātum erat.** 4. **Annus spatium trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum est.** 5. **Duodecim sunt mēnsēs.**
 6. **Mēnsis trīgintā diēs habet, Februārius duodētrīgintā.**
 7. **Diēs vīgintī quattuor hōrās habet.** 8. **Rōmānōrum veterum annus decem mēnsēs habēbat; Mārtius erat prīmus, December decimus.** 9. **Aut tertius decimus aut quīntus decimus diēs mēnsis Īdūs nōminābātur.**

II. 1. **Romulus, the first king of Rome, reigned thirty-seven years.** 2. **This house is fifty-nine¹ feet long and forty-eight feet wide.** 3. **The river is fourteen feet deep and ninety-two feet wide.** 4. **With² the ancient Romans September was the seventh month; with us September is the ninth month.** 5. **The Roman consuls held power for one year.**

¹ See p. 143, note.

² **Apud**, with accusative.

6. In the five hundred and fiftieth year of the city Scipio was consul. 7. Five and twenty languages were known to King Mithridates. 8. In the first month of the year there are thirty-one days. 9. A Roman legion had five thousand foot-soldiers and three hundred horse-soldiers.

315.

VOCABULARY.

annus, -ī, m., year.

auris, -is, f., ear.

December, -bris, m. [decem],

December. Often as adj.

Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, goddess of the chase. [as adj.]

Februārius, -ī, m., February. Oft.

Īdūs, -uum, f., plur., the Ides of the month. (244. 1.)

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language.

Mārtius, -ī, m. [Mārs], March.

Often as a j.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., Mithridates, king of Pontus.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.

September, -bris, m. [septem],

September. Often as adj.

spatium, -ī, n., room, space, period.

CHAPTER XLVIII. 1.

316.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish.

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not.

Mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer.

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlunus	mālunus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPER.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
	IMPER.	vellem	nōllem
vellēs		nōllēs	māllēs
vellet		nōllet	māllet
vellēmus		nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis		nōllētis	māllētis
vellent		nōllent	māllent
PERF.		voluerim	nōluerim
	PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	(Wanting)	nōlī	(Wanting)
		nōlīte	
FUT.	(Wanting)	[nōlītō, etc.]	(Wanting)

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	(Wanting)
-------	--------	--------	-----------

317. Learn the tenses of the indicative and infinitive of volō, nōlō, and mālō, and the present imperative of nōlō.

2.

318.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōs scribere volumus, tū vīs legere, ille puer lūdere vult. 2. Cūr in hortō ambulāre volunt? 3. In hortō ambulāre mālunt quod ibi sunt fontēs et arborēs. 4. Volēbantne vitia sua excūsāre? 5. Nōlī excūsāre vitia tua. 6. Nōlīte

amō, *love*, not implying and not excluding *esteem*; the common word.
diligō, *love* unselfishly and with *esteem*; more restricted in meaning than **amō**.

volō means both less and more than *wish*, namely, *consent* and *will*; very much used.

dēsiderō means *wish ardently*, with the notion (which **volō** has not) of *lacking* or *missing* the thing much desired; more restricted in meaning than **volō**.

3.

320. FOR TRANSLATION.

Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn faciunt; nam velle et facere nōn idem est. Saepe homo rēctē agere vult, sed vīrēs dēsunt. Multī peccāta sua excūsāre quam dēpōnere mālunt. Saepe aliēna peccāta vituperāre quam nostra corrigere mālunt. Multī suā sorte nōn sunt contentī, sed aliēna appetere mālunt. At cūr nōn fēliciter vīvere māvīs? Fēlix is est quī rēctē agere vult rēctēque agit.



CHAPTER XLIX. 1.

321. THE IRREGULAR VERB **Ferō.**

Ferō, *ferre*, tulī, lātum: *bear, carry, endure.*

	ACTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES.	ferō ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers fertis	ferris , <i>or-re</i>	ferimini
	fert ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPER.	ferēbam	ferēbar	
FUT.	feram	ferar	
PERF.	tulī	lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram	lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō	lātus erō	
		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	feram	ferar	
IMPER.	ferrem	ferrer	
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim	
PLUP.	tulisset	lātus essem	

IMPERATIVE.			
ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES. fer ¹	ferte	[ferre]	feriminī
FUT. fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	feruntor

INFINITIVE.			
PRES.	ferre		ferī
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse		lātum irī

PARTICIPLES.			
PRES.	ferēns		—————
FUT.	lāturus	GER.	ferendus
	—————	PERF.	lātus

GERUND.	
G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
Ac.	ferendum
Ab.	ferendō

SUPINE.	
Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

322. Compounds of *ferō* are conjugated like the simple verb. Observe the changes suffered by certain of the prepositions in the following:

ab-	auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum.
ad-	adferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl).
com-	cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (conl).
dis-	differō, differre, distulī, dilātum.
ex-	efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum.
in-	inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum (inl).
ob-	offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum.
sub-	sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum.

323. Learn the tenses of the indicative, the imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of *ferō*.

¹ For *ferē*; *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*, have imperative present second singular *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

324.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Aufert, aufertur. 2. Auferet, auferētur. 3. Abs-tulit, ablātus est. 4. Cōnferrē, cōnferrī. 5. Cōnferunt, cōnferuntur. 6. Cōnferent, cōnferentur. 7. Contulerant, collātī erant. 8. Distulērunt, dilātī sunt. 9. Distulerit, dilātus erit. 10. Distulisse, dilātus esse. 11. Differēbant, differēbantur.

II. 1. We bear, we are borne. 2. We were bearing, we were borne. 3. We have borne, we have been borne. 4. We shall bear, we shall be borne. 5. We had borne, we had been borne. 6. Bear thou, bear ye. 7. To offer, to be offered. 8. Ye shall offer, ye shall be offered. 9. To have offered, to have been offered. 10. Ye offer, ye will offer. 11. Ye are offered, ye will be offered.

2.

325.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ferte patienter¹ labōrēs. 2. Bene ferre māgnam fortunam disce. 3. Ferte patienter quae² mūtārī nōn possunt. 4. Nōn omnis ager quī seritur fert frūgēs. 5. Benīgnum rēgem nōn tulistis; jam ferum et barbaram fertōte. 6. Nōlite differre pēnsū quod hodiē facere potestis. 7. Imperātor militibus dēfessīs auxiliū attulit. 8. In ūnum locum collātum est ex agrīs omne frūmentum. 9. Longa³ nōbīs est omnis mora quae gaudia differt. 10. Caesar omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant veniam dedit.

II. 1. They bore labor with patience. 2. They did not endure a good king; now they are enduring a bad one.⁴ 3. We cannot put off our tasks. 4. We shall learn to bear our good fortune well. 5. They bore with patience that⁵ which they could not change. 6. The robbers bore off the

¹ What might be substituted for the adverb? See 144, 145.

² See p. 130, note 3.

³ *Tedious.*

⁴ Omit.

⁵ *Id.*

booty which they had seized. 7. Do not¹ bring me that which I do not want. 8. Delays which postpone our joy are always tedious. 9. The townsmen carried their all² with them out of the town.

326.

VOCABULARY.

ad-ferō (afferō), adferre, at-
tuli, adlātum, bear to, bring.

an-ferō, auferre, abstuli, ablā-
tum [ab(s)], bear off, carry
away.

auxilium, -i, n., help, aid.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign,
barbarous.

benignus, -a, -um, adj., kind, good.

cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contuli,
collātum (conlātum), bring
together, collect; sē cōnferre, be-
take one's self.

dif-ferō, differre, distuli, dilā-
tum [dis, apart], bear apart,
scatter, put off, postpone.

ef-ferō, efferre, extuli, elātum
[ex], bear out, bring forth.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, cruel.

frūgēs, -um, f., plur., fruits.

gaudium, -i, n. [gaudeō, re-
joice], joy, delight.

in-ferō, inferre, intuli, illātum
(inlātum), bear in, cause; bellum

inferre, to make war, w. dat.

jam, adv., already, now, at last.

mora, -ae, f., delay.

of-ferō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum
[ob, before], present, offer.

patienter, adv. [patiēns], pa-
tiently, with patience.

serō, 3, sēvī, satum, sow, plant.

suf-fero, sufferre, sustuli, sub-
lātum [sub], undergo, endure.

venia, -ae, f., indulgence, kind-
ness, mercy.

CHAPTER L. 1.

327.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

EŌ, ire, ii [ivī], itum, go.

FĪŌ, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), be made, become.

INDICATIVE.

	EŌ.		FĪŌ.
PRES.	eō	imus	fīō
	īs	itis	fīs
	it	eunt	fiunt

¹ Compare I. 6.

² Their all, omnia sua.

329.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nōlite velle id quod fierī nōn potest. 2. Amīcī Alexandrī rēgēs factī sunt. 3. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū fit bonus. 4. Leve fīēbat onus, quod bene ferēbātur. 5. Apud veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolis fīēbant cōsulēs. 6. Omnēs ferē¹ hominēs senectūte fiunt prūdentiōrēs. 7. Quidam amnēs subeunt terram rūsusque in terram red-eunt. 8. Alpēs nēmō ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trāns-iit. 9. Miltiadēs Parum īnsulam expūgnāre nōn potuit et in patriam rediit. 10. Populus solet nōn nunquam² dīgnōs praeterīre.

II. 1. That has been done which you wished. 2. My friends, you become wiser by old age. 3. Men never become good by chance. 4. Who will cross the river with me?³ 5. The generals crossed the mountains with a large part⁴ of their forces. 6. Light become the burdens that are patiently borne. 7. Our friends have gone away, but they will return. 8. The people passed by many worthy men. 9. The inhabitants of the city went out with their horses and wagons. 10. The generals return to⁵ their country with prisoners and booty. 11. Do not⁶ cross the very deep river.

2.

330.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Septiēs Marius, quī Cimbrōs et Teutonēs duōbus ācerimīs proeliis vīcit, cōsul factus est. 2. Sōcratēs aequō animō diem suprēmum obiit. 3. Ariovistī cōpiae intrā annōs quattuordecim tectum nōn subierant. 4. Autumnō multae avēs in aliās terrās proficiscuntur, at vēre novō

¹ Ferē is often thus placed between an adjective and its noun.

² Nōn nunquam, not never = sometimes.

³ See 265. 3.

⁴ See p. 21, note 1.

⁵ To = into.

⁶ See 318. I. 5 and 6.

redeunt. 5. Abeunt omnia unde orta sunt. 6. Alexander cōnsiliō¹ fortitudīneque omnēs anteibat; omnēs labōrēs subibat.

II. 1. In winter² the days become shorter and the nights longer. 2. After the battle many perished of cold³ and hunger. 3. Cicero was made consul⁴ by the Romans. 4. By the prudence (cōnsilium) and valor of Scipio, Hannibal was compelled to return into Africa. 5. We ought to meet our last day with equanimity.⁵ 6. Alexander came off victorious⁶ from all his battles.

331.

VOCABULARY.

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go off, come off, go away.* (327. 2.)

aequus, -a, -um, *adj., level, equal; calm.*

ante-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *go before, surpass.*

apud, *prep. with acc., with, in, near, among.*

Ariovistus, -ī, *m., Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.*

autumnus, -ī, *m., autumn.*

cōgō, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [com, agō], *drive together; compel.*

cōpia, -ae, *f., power, abundance, wealth; plur. troops, forces.*

dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go out.*

ferē, *adv., nearly, for the most part.*

intrā, *prep. with acc., within.*

Marius, -ī, *m., Marius, a famous Roman general.*

nāscor, 3, nātus, *be born.*

ob-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go towards, meet.*

Parus, -ī, *f., Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea.* (11. 4.)

per-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *perish.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *return.*

re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry back.*

rūrsus, *adv. [re-vorsus, re-vertō], turned back, back, again.*

septiēs, *num. adv. [septem], seven times.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go under, enter, undergo.*

tectum, -ī, *n. [tegō, cover], covering, shelter, roof.*

Teutonēs, -um, *m., the Teutons, a German tribe.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross.*

¹ See 260.

² Compare I. 4.

³ Ablative.

⁴ Compare I. 1; also 47.

⁵ Compare I. 2.

⁶ Victor.

3.

332.

COLLOQUIUM.

TITYRUS ET MELIBŒUS.

T. Aliquis jānuam pulsāt. Ī, puer, aperī jānuam.

door knock open

[*MelibŒus tristī vultū passibus tardīs introit.*]

steps slow enter

Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste vultus tristis?

how do you do

M. Eheu! mī Tityre, abeō ē meā patriā.

T. Cūr abīs? Quō abibis? Nōhī relinquere hæc arva dulcia.

leave fields

M. Quid tibi vīs? Meōs agrōs mīlitibus impiīs dōnāvit

what would you have me do

wicked has given

Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interiit. Ipse perī.

am undone

T. Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benignus, neque vult tē perīre. Tū agrōs recipiēs.

M. Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōciam.

T. Et redībīs in agrōs tuōs; redībit pāx aurea. Valē, mī MelibŒe, es bonō animō.

keep up your courage

M. Et tū valē, bonē Tityre.

CHAPTER LI. 1.

PREPOSITIONS.

333. Thus far several prepositions have been used in the exercises, some followed by the accusative and some by the ablative. These are the only cases in Latin that follow prepositions.

PREPOSITIONS FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE.

ā (ab, abs), away from, by.

absque, without.

cōram, in presence of.

cum, with.

dē, from, concerning.

ē (ex), out of, from.

prae, before, in comparison with.

prō, before, for.

sine, without.

tenus, as far as, up to.

1. **In**, meaning *into, to, towards, for*, that is after verbs denoting *motion*, takes the accusative.

2. **In**, meaning *in, on, at*, that is after verbs denoting *rest*, takes the ablative. See 334.

3. **Sub**, *under, up to*, after verbs of *motion*, takes the accusative; after verbs of *rest*, the ablative.

4. Remember that all prepositions except the ten mentioned, and **in** and **sub**, are followed by the accusative only.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

334. *Examine the following:—*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. In oppidō , <i>in the town.</i> | 8. Athēnīs , <i>at (in) Athens.</i> |
| 2. In nāvī , <i>on shipboard.</i> | 9. Corinthī , <i>at (in) Corinth.</i> |
| 3. Ad montem , <i>to the mountain.</i> | 10. Thūriīs , <i>at (in) Thurii.</i> |
| 4. Ex agrīs , <i>from the fields.</i> | 11. Carthāginī , <i>at (in) Carthage.</i> |
| 5. In Ītaliā , <i>in Italy.</i> | 12. Rōmae , <i>at (in) Rome.</i> |
| 6. In Ītaliā , <i>to Italy.</i> | 13. Rōman , <i>to Rome.</i> |
| 7. Ex Ītaliā , <i>from Italy.</i> | 14. Rōmā , <i>from Rome.</i> |

Observe the ways of denoting the place *in, on, at, to, from* which. In English we always¹ use a preposition with the noun of *place*, as the examples show. So in Latin (see examples 1-7), except with names of towns.² For these a rule may be inferred from the examples 8-14.

335. RULE OF SYNTAX. — With names of towns —

1. The place *in* or *at* which is expressed by the locative. (See 14, 2; 40; 175.)

2. The place *to* which, by the accusative without a preposition.³

3. The place *from* which, by the ablative without a preposition.⁴

¹ Except in the case of the word *home*, after a verb of *motion*.

² Names of small islands are often treated like names of towns.

³ This accusative may be called

the **Accusative of Limit**, because it denotes the limit, or end, of motion.

⁴ This ablative is the *ablative of separation*. (128, 129, 130.)

336. *Domus*, *home*, *house*, and *rūs*, *the country*, have the construction of names of towns:

domī, *at home*.

domum, *(to) home*.

domō, *from home*.

rūrī, *in the country*.

rūs, *to (into) the country*.

rūre, *from the country*.

2.

337.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cōsulēs in sēdem suam prōcēssēre.¹ 2. Porsena rēx īnfestō cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit. 3. Rōmānī ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant. 4. Nova Rōmae dīgnitās creāta est, quae dictātūra appellāta est. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulit. 6. Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum orātōrēs dē pāce. 7. Is dē forō domum sē recipiēbat. 8. Erat quīdam Athēnīs quī sē sapientem profitēbatur. 9. Rēgulus in Āfricam trājēcit. 10. Deinde Rōmam missus est, sed mox Carthāginem rediit. 11. Rōmā missī sunt Carthāginem lēgātī. 12. Rōmānī duās clādēs in Hispāniā accēpērunt. 13. Tunc Scīpiō ex Siciliā in Āfricam profectus est. 14. Hannibal ex angustiīs ēvāsīt.

II. 1. The consul set out from Rome with a large army. 2. We have removed from the city into the country. 3. Then the general retreated² into Campania. 4. I have lived in Athens three years.³ 5. Tarquin remained at Cumæ a long time. 6. Scipio defeated Hannibal at Zama. 7. Regulus returned from Africa to Rome. 8. Afterwards he was sent back from Rome to Carthage. 9. Cæsar carried on war in Gaul eight years.³ 10. Cicero was born at Arpinum. 11. The consul proceeded to Athens with his army. 12. From Athens he sailed⁴ to Italy. 13. Do you remain (*imperative*) at home; I will return to the army. 14. Shall you come home soon?

¹ From *prōcēdō*, perfect tense.

² See I. 7, and 239.

³ See 313.

⁴ See 272. II. 6.

338.

VOCABULARY.

angustiae, -ārum, F., plur. [**angustus, narrow**], *narrow pass.*

Cf. Eng. *narrows*.

appellō, I, address, call, name.

Arpinum, -ī, N., Arpinum, a town in Italy.

Athēnae, -ārum, F. plur., Athens.

Carthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a city in Africa.

Coriolānus, -ī, M., a surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.

Cūmae, -ārum, F. plur., Cumae, a town in Campania.

dē-migrō, I, emigrate, remove.

dictātūra, -ae, F. [dictātor], office of dictator, dictatorship.

dignitās, -ātis, F. [dignus, worthy], worth, dignity, office.

ē-vādō, 3, ēvāsī, ēvāsūm, go forth, escape.

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile, troublesome, dangerous.

ōrātor, -ōris, M. [ōrō, speak, plead], orator, ambassador.

Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena, an Etruscan king.

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], acknowledge, confess, declare.

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, send back.

sēdēs, -is, F. [sedeō, sit], seat, abode.

Tarquinus, -ī, M., Tarquin, a Roman king.

trā-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], throw across, pass over, cross.

tum, adv., then, at that time.

Zama, -ae, F., Zama, a town in Africa.

3.

339.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ, B.C. 216.

Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā profectī sunt duo cōsulēs, Aemilius Paullus et Terentius Varrō. Paullō¹ eunctātiō Fabī² magis placēbat; Varrō autem, ferōx³ et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōsilia. Ambō cōsulēs ad vīcum, quī Cannae appellābātur, castra commūnīverunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō collēgā⁴ aciem īstrūxit et sīgnum pūgnae dedit. Hannibal autem ita cōstituerat aciem, ut Rōmānīs⁵ et⁶ sōlis radiī et ventus ab oriente

¹ For the case, see 343.

² Fabius Maximus, whose policy had been one of prudence, or rather, of extreme caution.

³ Impetuous.

⁴ His colleague unwilling = against the wishes of his colleague. See 412.

⁵ To the Romans, dative with adversī. ⁶ Both.

pulverem adflāns¹ adversī essent.² Vīctus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nusquam graviōre vulnere afflīcta est rēs pūblica.

[Continued on p. 177.]

—o-o-o—

CHAPTER LII.

ADDITIONAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

340. *Examine the following:—*

1. Alter cōnsulum, *one of the consuls.*
2. Ūnus mīlitum, *one of the soldiers.*
3. Quis vestrum? *who of you?*
4. Nihil novī, *nothing (of) new.*
5. Satis pecūniae, *enough (of) money.*
6. Ūnus ex mīlitibus, *one of the soldiers.*
7. Minimus ex illīs, *the youngest of them.*

The first five of the examples illustrate what is called the **Partitive Genitive**, the word in the genitive denoting a *whole*, and the word which it limits a *part* of that whole; 6 and 7 illustrate another way of expressing the partitive idea.

341. *Examine the following:—*

1. Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō, *Catiline was (a man) of bad disposition.*
2. Iccius summā nōbilitāte fuit, *Iccius was (a man) of the highest rank.*
3. Puer sēdecim annōrum, *a boy of sixteen years.*
4. Vestis māgnī pretī, *a garment of great value.*
5. Vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage.*

The above are examples of the **Descriptive Ablative** and the **Descriptive Genitive**. Observe that in each instance the ablative or genitive is limited by an adjective, and that the adjective and noun together denote a *quality* or *characteristic* of that which is described.

¹ Present participle of *adflō*.

² *Were an annoyance.*

342. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Rēgī serviō**, *I serve the king.*
2. **Cīvitātī prōdest**, *he benefits the state.*
3. **Caesarī placuit**, *it pleased Cæsar.*
4. **Frātrī persuādet**, *he persuades his brother.*
5. **Crēde mihi**, *believe me.*
6. **Lēgibus cīvitātis pārēbat**, (220. I. 2).
7. **Interdum amicīs nocet**, (272. I. 8).

Observe that the verbs, which in English have a direct object, are followed in Latin by the dative (the case of the indirect object). Such verbs should be carefully noted as they occur in the exercises. They may be summed up in the following—

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs signifying to *please or displease, benefit or injure, command or obey, serve, resist, believe, threaten, persuade, and the like, take the dative.*

344. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit**, *it was of great service to our men.*
2. **Est mihi cūrae**, *it is (for) a care to me.*
3. **Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī miserant**, *they had sent cavalry to aid Cæsar (for aid to Cæsar).*
4. **Quīnque cohōrtēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit**, *he leaves five cohorts to defend the camp (for defence to the camp).*

Observe in each of the above sentences two datives, one translated (literally) with *for*, the other with *to*. In 1 and 2, **ūsuī** and **cūrae** are like the predicate nominative, which is often used where we might expect this dative; in 3 and 4, **auxiliō** and **praesidiō** denote a purpose. This dative *for which* is sometimes called the **Dative of Service**. The two together are sometimes called the **Double Dative**.

Observe instances of the foregoing constructions as they occur in the exercises and reading lessons.

CHAPTER LIII.

DERIVATION.

345. Some derivations have been indicated in the vocabularies by separating the parts of compound words, and, beginning with **221**, by putting words in brackets. The bracketed words, however, are not to be understood as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, as is customarily the case in lexicons and special vocabularies, but that they are *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem*. The habit of observing such relationships is the important thing. The following list is selected from previous vocabularies for further study of the subject:—

1. **amō**, *love*; **amīcus**, *loving, friendly*; **amīcitiā**, *friendship*; **inimīcus** (for **in-amīcus**), *unfriendly, hostile*.
2. **ager**, *field, land, soil*; **agri-cola** (**colō**, *cultivate*), *one who cultivates the soil, farmer*; **agri-cultūra**, *cultivation of the soil, agriculture*. **Colō** also means *dwelt*, hence **incola**, *inhabitant*. Meaning of **incolō**?
3. **cīvis**, *citizen*; **cīvilis**, *pertaining to a citizen*; **cīvitās**, *the condition of a citizen, or a body of citizens, state*. Like **cīvilis**, form and define adjectives from the stems of **puer** and **hostis**.
4. **regō**, *rule*; **rēx** (**rēgs**), *ruler, king*; **rēgīna**, *ruler, queen*; **rēgnum**, *kingdom*; **rēgnō**, *be king, reign*; **rēgula**, *rule*.
5. **faciō**, *do*; **facinus**, *thing done, deed*; **facilis** (*that may be done*), *easy*; **difficilis** (for **dis-facilis**), *not to be done, difficult*.
6. **nōscō**, *know*; **nōmen** (*that by which a thing is known*), *name*; **nōminō**, *v., name*; **nōbilis** (*that can be known*), *well known, noble*, cf. **facilis**.
7. **fuga**, *flight*; **fugiō**, *flee*. **līber**, *adj., free*; **līberō**, *v., free*.
metus, *n., fear*; **metuō**, *v., fear*. **laus**, *n., praise*; **laudō**, *v., praise*.
timor, *n., fear*; **timeō**, *v., fear*. **discō**, *learn*; **discipulus**, *learner*.
dō, *give*; **dōnum**, *gift*. **moveō**, *move*; **mōtus**, *motion*.
fluō, *flow*; **fluvius**, **flūmen**, *stream, river*.
dominus, *lord, master*; **domina**, *mistress*; **dominor**, *be master*.
8. **aurum**, *gold*; **aureus**, *of gold, golden*.
lignum, *wood*; **līgneus**, *of wood, wooden*.

- ferrum**, *iron*; **ferreus**, *of iron, iron*.
argentum, *silver*. Form an adjective from the stem of **argentum**, and define it.
9. **alō**, *nourish*; **alimentum** (*that which nourishes*), *food, provisions*.
moneō, *remind*; **monumentum** (*that which reminds*), *monument*.
ōruō, *adorn*; meaning of **ōrnāmentum**?
10. **pulcher**, *beautiful*; **pulchritūdō**, *beauty*.
fortis, *brave*; **fortitūdō**, *bravery*.
turpis, *base*; **turpitūdō**, *baseness*.
altus, *high*. Form a noun from the stem of **altus**, and define it.
11. **īgnāvus** (*not busy*), *idle*; **īgnāvia**, *idleness*.
memor, *mindful*; **memoria** (*mindfulness*), *memory*.
piger, *lazy*; **pigritia**, *laziness*.
prūdēns, *wise, prudent*; **prūdentia**, *wisdom, prudence*.
sapiēns, *wise*; **sapientia**, *wisdom*.
amīcus, *friend*; **amīcitia**, *friendship*.
Form a noun from the stem of **inimīcus**, and define it.
12. **equus**, *horse*; **eques**, *horseman*.
pēs (stem **ped**), *foot*; **pedēs**, *foot-soldier*.
13. **arō**, *v.*, *plough*; **arātrum**, *n.* (*thing to plough with*), *plough*.
(rōdō), *gnaw*; **rōstrum** (*that which gnaws*), *beak, snout*, hence *beak of a ship*.
14. **vir**, *man*; **virtūs**, *manliness, virtue*.
servus, *slave*; **servitūs**, *slavery*.
cōnsul, *consul*; **cōsulātus**, *office of a consul, consulship*.
magister, *master*; **magistrātus**, *office of a magister, magistracy, also magistrate*.
15. **perīculum**, *danger*; **perīculōsus**, *full of danger, dangerous*.
frōns, *leaf*; **frondōsus**, *covered with leaves, leafy*.
studium, *zeal*; meaning of **studiōsus**?
16. **audeō**, *dare*; **audāx**, *daring*.
rapiō, *seize*; **rapāx**, *grasping*.
teneō, *hold*; meaning of **tenāx**?
17. **scrībō**, *write*; **scrīptor**, *writer*.
vincō (**vīctum**), *conquer*; **vīctor**, *conqueror*.
dēfendō, *defend*; **dēfēnsor**, *defender*.
From stem of **amō**, *love*, form a word meaning *lover*; from stem of **audiō**, *hear*, in the same way, a word meaning *hearer*.

18. **ūllus**, any; **nūllus**, not any.
sciō, know; **nesciō**, know not.
19. **homo**, man; **hūmānus** (belonging to a man), human.
mors, death; **mortālis** (belonging to death), mortal.
alius, another; **aliēnus** (belonging to another), another's.
20. Observe also the force of the various prefixes, **ā**, **ad**, **dē**, **dis**, **in**, **prae**, **prō**, **re**, **sub**, etc., as in **ā-mittō**, **ac-cēdō**, **dē-scendō**, **dī-mittō**, **in-ferō**, **prae-sum**, **prō-cēdō**, **re-ferō**, **sub-eō**, etc.

—o—o—o—

CHAPTER LIV. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES: PRACTICE ON FORMS.

346. Learn the subjunctive of **sum** (73) and its compounds (292, 293).

The chief use of the subjunctive is in subjoined, that is, dependent, clauses.

347. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Audiō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit**, *I hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
2. **Audīvī ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit**, *I have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
3. **Audiam ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit**, *I shall hear where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
4. **Audiverō ubi sit, fuerit, futūrus sit**, *I shall have heard where he is, has been or was, is going to be.*
5. **Audiēbam ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset**, *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
6. **Audīvī ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset**, *I heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*
7. **Audiveram ubi esset, fuisset, futūrus esset**, *I had heard where he was, had been, was going to be.*

Notice what tenses are used in the principal clauses of each of the preceding groups of examples. Those in the first group—the present, perfect definite,¹ future, and future perfect—are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. Those in the second group—the imperfect, perfect indefinite,² and the pluperfect—are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

Observe also that primary tenses of the subjunctive are used in the first four, secondary in the last three.

348. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Primary tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and secondary follow secondary.

Observe that the subjunctive in the foregoing examples is translated like the indicative.

349. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Nēmō** adest quīn sit fortis, *no one is present who is not brave.*
2. **Quis** adest quīn sit fortis? *who is present who is not brave?*
3. **Nēmō** dubitat quīn sit fortis, *no one doubts that he is brave, or his being brave.*
4. **Nōn** dubium est quīn sit fortis, *there is no doubt that he is brave, or of his being brave.*
5. **Nōn** dubitō quīn sit fortis, *I do not doubt that he is brave, or his being brave.*

Observe (1) that the subjunctive follows **quīn**; (2) that **quīn** is used after negative expressions and questions that expect a negative answer; (3) that the subjunctive clause with **quīn** (compounded of **quī**, *who*, and **nē**, *not*) may be variously rendered.

2.

350. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Quis** dubitat quīn sint fortēs? 2. **Nēmō** dubitat quīn vīta sit brevis. 3. **Nōn** dubitō quīn adfuerint. 4. **Nōn** dubium erat quīn essent fortēs. 5. **Quis** dubitābat quīn

¹ That is, the perfect translated with *have* or *has*.

² That is, the perfect translated without *have* or *has*.

fuissent fortēs? 6. Nēmō dubitāverat quīn adfuisset; adfuissent. 7. Nōn est dubium quīn possit; possint; potuerit; potuerint. 8. Quis dubitābat quīn posset? possent? potuisset? potuissent? 9. Nōn est dubium quīn praesīs; praesītis; praefueris; praefueritis. 10. Quis dubitāverat quīn āfuisset? āfuissent?

II. 1. I do not doubt that he is present; has been present; is absent; has been absent. 2. Who doubted that he could? they could? we could? you could? 3. They do not doubt that he is at the head of (*praesum*); has been at the head of. 4. Who has doubted his surviving? their surviving? 5. Who doubted their injuring? having injured? 6. There is no doubt that he can; we can; you can; they can. 7. There was no doubt that he could; I could; they could.

3.

351. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō** (86) and **moneō** (112).

1. Observe that in the active voice the imperfect subjunctive can be formed readily from the present infinitive, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive. Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative.

352. *Examine the following:—*

Sē armant ut pūgnent, *they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, to fight, so as to fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting.*

Observe that the various equivalents of **ut pūgnent** have a common notion or idea, that of *purpose*.

353. **RULE OF SYNTAX.**— **Ut** with the subjunctive may be used to denote a purpose, and may be variously translated.

354. Review the indicative and imperative of **eō**, *go* (327).

355.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. It ut mōnstret et moneat. 2. Ībat ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 3. Īit ut mōnstret et moneat. 4. Īit ut mōnstrāret et monēret. 5. Ībunt ut mōnstrent et moneant. 6. Īerunt ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 7. Īerant ut mōnstrārent et monērent. 8. Nōn dubitāvī quīn mōnstrāvisset et monuisset. 9. Quis dubitāverat quīn mōnstrāvissent et monuissent? 10. Nēmō dubitāvit quīn mōnstrāvissēmus et monuissēmus. 11. Nōn est dubium quīn mōnstrēmus et moneāmus.

II. 1. He goes to see and praise. 2. They go for the purpose of seeing and praising. 3. We will go in order to see and praise. 4. Who will not go that he may see and praise? 5. You will go to see and praise. 6. They have gone to see and praise. 7. He has gone for the purpose of seeing and praising. 8. He went in order to see and praise. 9. Go (*plur.*) to see and praise. 10. He was going that he might see and praise. 11. Who doubts his having seen and praised? 12. No one doubted that they had seen and praised.

4.

356.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperat ut¹ —
cōnētur, cōnentur, cōner, cōnēmur.
2. Eī (eīs, mihi, nōbīs) imperābat ut —
cōnārētur, cōnārentur, cōnārer, cōnārēmur.
3. Quis dubitat quīn —
cōnātus sit, cōnātī sint, cōnātus sim, cōnātī sīmus?
4. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
cōnātus esset, cōnātī essent, cōnātus essem, cōnātī
essēmus.

¹ Translate thus: *He orders him to try (that he try); them to try (that they try).*

5. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monet ut —
tueātur, tueantur, tuear, tueāmur.
6. Eum (eōs, mē, nōs) monēbat ut —
tuērētur, tuērentur, tuērer, tuērēmur.
7. Quis dubitat quīn —
tuitus sit, tuitī sint, tuitus sim, tuitī sīmus?
8. Nēmō dubitābat quīn —
tuitus esset, tuitī essent, tuitus essem, tuitī essēmus.

II.¹ 1. They will order him² (them, me, us) to imitate.
2. They have ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate.
3. Who doubts his³ (their, my, our) having imitated?
4. They ordered him (them, me, us) to imitate. 5. Nobody doubted his (their, my, our) having imitated. 6. They advise him (them, me, us) to promise. 7. They advised him (them, me, us) to promise. 8. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had promised.

5.

357. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *regō* (180), *audiō* (223), *capiō* (235).

358. The conjunction *nē*, in order that not, that not, in order not to, so as not to, lest, is used to denote a negative purpose, just as *ut* denotes a positive purpose. See 352, 353.

359. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Eum (eōs) monet ut —
regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
2. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —
regat, regātur, audiat, audiātur,
regant, regantur, audiant, audiantur.
3. Eum (eōs) monēbat ut —
regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.

¹ Imitate the arrangement in I. ² Dative.

³ That is, *that he, they, I, we, have imitated.*

4. Eum (eōs) monuit ut —
 regeret, regerētur, audīret, audīrētur,
 regerent, regerentur, audīrent, audīrentur.
5. Tē (vōs) monet nē —
 capiās, capiātis, capiāris, capiāminī.
6. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
 capiam, capiāmus, capiar, capiāmur.
7. Mē (nōs) monēbat nē —
 caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
8. Mē (nōs) monuit nē —
 caperem, caperēmus, caperer, caperēmur.
- II. 1. They advise him (them) —
 to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
2. They warn him (them) —
 not to receive, not to be received.
3. They will advise him (them) —
 to lead, to be led, to find, to be found.
4. They were warning him (them) —
 not to lead, find, receive,
 not to be led, be found, be received.
5. Who doubted that he (they) —
 had led, had found, had received,
 had been led, been found, been received?

6.

360. Learn the subjunctive of eō (327), and ferō (321).

361.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Mē hortātur ut eam; feram. 2. Eōs hortāmur ut eant; ferantur. 3. Vōs hortantur ut eātis; ferātis. 4. Eum hortātī sunt ut īret; ferret. 5. Mē hortātī sunt nē eam; feram. 6. Tē hortābantur nē īrēs; ferrēs. 7. Eōs hortātī erant ut īrent; ferrent. 8. Nōn dubium erat quīn īissent; tulissent. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn īerit; tulerit. 10. Nēmō dubitābat quīn īret; ferrētur.

II. 1. He commands that he (they, I, we) go; bear; be borne. 2. He was commanding that he (they, I, we) should go; bear; be borne. 3. There is no doubt of his (their, my, our) having gone; borne; been borne. 4. There was no doubt that he (they, I, we) had gone; borne; been borne.

7.

362.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Imperātor exercitum in collem subdūxit, ut fortūnam bellī experirētur. 2. Pater Horātī populum ōrābat nē sē orbem faceret. 3. Illud facit ut hostēs circumveniantur. 4. Cōsul cūrāvit ut plēbs agrōs coleret. 5. Nōn dubium erat quīn Rōmānī auxiliū ferrent. 6. Manlius ēdīcit nē quis¹ extrā ōrdīnem pūgnet. 7. Omnēs occīdentur ut vīrēs hostiū frangantur, aut omnēs dīmīttentur ut beneficiō obligentur. 8. Nōn est dubium quīn terror animōs omnium cīvium occupāverit. 9. Incidit² ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ad eundem portum venīret. 10. Scīpiō uxōrem ōrāvit nē corpus suum Rōmam referrētur.

II. 1. The ambassadors beg the senate to render aid to their³ kingdōm. 2. The ambassador begged the senate to render aid to his⁴ king. 3. Nobody doubts that Hannibal is brave. 4. Nobody doubted that Hannibal had fought bravely. 5. They did this that they might surround the enemy. 6. This they do in order to surround the enemy. 7. Scipio begs his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 8. Scipio begged his wife not to carry his body back to Rome. 9. It turned out that the soldier received a wound on the head. 10. We will draw up the soldiers on a hill to try the fortune of war.

¹ Nē quis, lest any one = that no one.

² After verbs meaning to happen, to turn out, and the like, ut means that, but not in order that.

³ Suus, because their means their own, and not of them.

⁴ Suus.

363.

VOCABULARY.

circum-veniō, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum**,
surround.

collis, -**is**, *m.*, *hill*. Cf. **mōns**.

cōnor, 1, *attempt*.

cūrō, 1 [**cūra**], *care for, take care*.

dī-mittō, 3, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, *send
away, send off*.

ē-dicō, 3, -**dixī**, -**dictum**, *speak
out, declare, proclaim*.

ē-veniō, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum**, *come
forth, turn out, happen*. Cf. **accidō**.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, out-
side of*. Cf. **intrā**.

frangō, 3, **frēgī**, **fractum**, *break*.

Hasdrubal, -**alis**, *m.*, *Hasdrubal*,
brother of Hannibal.

hortor, 1, *urge, encourage*.

in-cidō, 3, -**cidī**, -**cāsum** [**cadō**],
fall into, happen, befall.

Manlius, -**ī**, *m.*, *Manlius*, a Roman
general.

mōnstrō, 1, *show, point out*.

ob-ligō, 1, *bind, put under obliga-
tion, oblige*.

oc-cidō, 3, -**cidī**, -**cīsum** [**ob**,
caedō, *cut*], *cut down, kill*.

occupō, 1 [**ob**, **capīō**], *take pos-
session of, seize*.

orbis, -**a**, -**um**, *adj.*, *bereaved*,
childless.

orō, 1 [**os**, *mouth*], *pray, beg*.

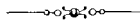
plēbs, -**bis**, *f.*, *the common people*.

senātus, -**ūs**, *m.* [**senex**], *council
of elders, senate*. (345. 14.)

sub-ducō, 3, -**dūxī**, -**ductum**,
draw from under, draw up.

uxor, -**ōris**, *f.*, *wife*. Cf. **conjuux**.

vīs, **vīs**, *f.*, *strength, power*. (262.)



CHAPTER LV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: RELATIVE OF PURPOSE.

[It is suggested that the turning of English into Latin be now deferred till after the Reading Lessons, pp. 211-222, have been finished.]

364. In all the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson in which **ut** and **nē** are used with the subjunctive, except **362. I. 9**, the dependent clause expresses a purpose. And, on the other hand, in the English sentences all the dependent clauses expressing purpose ("to render aid," "not to carry," etc.) had to be turned into Latin by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive. But the Latin often expresses a purpose by means of a relative pronoun followed by the subjunctive. See the first six sentences below.

365.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ancus lēgātum mittit ut rēs repetat. 2. Ancus lēgātum mittit quī rēs repetat. 3. Lēgātī vēnērunt ut pācem

peterent. 4. Lēgātī vēnērunt quī pācem peterent. 5. Pater filiō equum dedit ut equitāret. 6. Pater filiō equum dabat quī eum veheret. 7. Ad singulās urbēs scrībēmus nē mūrōs dīruant. 8. Nōn dubium est quīn Catō ad urbēs scrīpserit. 9. Quis dubitāvit quīn Catō imperāvisset ut urbēs mūrōs dīruerent? 10. Rōmulus urbem fēcit quae asyllum esset; Rōmulus urbem facit quae sit asyllum.

II. 1. A horse was given to the boy by his father, for¹ him to ride. 2. A father sent a messenger to Rome to speak² to his son. 3. A father sends a messenger to Rome to speak² to his son. 4. Romulus makes proclamation that no one³ shall leap⁴ over his wall. 5. Romulus proclaimed that no one should leap over his wall. 6. We will warn them not to leap⁵ over our walls. 7. Romulus sent messengers to invite² neighboring people to his games. 8. The father will give his son a horse for him to ride. 9. Who doubts that a kind father gives his son books? 10. Nobody doubted that the father had given his son many things.⁶

366.

VOCABULARY.

al-loquor, 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address.*

Ancus, -ī, m., *Ancus, a Roman king.*

asyllum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, asylum.*

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato, a famous Roman censor.*

dī-ruō, 3, -ruī, -rutum, *tear asunder, destroy.*

equitō, 1 [eques], *act the eques, ride.*

fīnītīmus, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], *bordering on, neighboring.*

imperō, 1, *order, command, with dative. Cf. jubeō with acc.*

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

nūntīus, -ī, m., *bearer of news, messenger.*

re-petō, 3, -ivī, -iī, -ītum, *seek again, demand back; rēs repetere, demand restitution.*

trān-siliō, 4, -iī, and -uī, — [saliō, leap], *leap over or across.*

¹ That he might ride.

² Translate in two ways.

³ See 362. I. 6, and note.

⁴ Present subjunctive.

⁵ See 362. I. 10.

⁶ Many things, multa.

CHAPTER LVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Ut* and *Nē*.

367. The subjunctive with *ut* to denote *purpose* has been illustrated (352). But the subjunctive with *ut* has other uses.

368. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Tantus est mīlitum ardor ut ad bellum dūcantur**, *so great is the ardor of the soldiers that they are led to war.*
2. **Accidit ut nōn domī essem**, *it happened that I was not at home.*
3. **Fabricius adeō inops dēcēssit ut nihil relīquerit**,¹ *Fabricius died so poor as to leave nothing.*

In these examples the dependent clause denotes a *result*. Compare the translation of *ut* and the subjunctive in *purpose* clauses and in *result* clauses. *That not* in *result* clauses = *ut nōn*. Cf. 358.

369. Still another use of the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is illustrated in the following sentences:—

1. **Timeō ut veniat**, *I fear that he is not coming, or will not come.*
2. **Timeō ut vēnerit**, *I fear that he has not come.*
3. **Timēbam ut vēnisset**, *I feared that he had not come.*
4. **Timeō nē veniat**, *I fear that he is coming, or will come.*
5. **Timeō nē vēnerit**, *I fear that he has come.*
6. **Timēbam nē vēnisset**, *I feared that he had come.*

An inspection of the foregoing examples shows that *ut* and *nē* seem sometimes to exchange meanings.

After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* is translated *that not*, and *nē*, *that*.

Observe that in 1 and 4 the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

370.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Pompējus ita ēgit ut ā Sūllā dīligerētur. — 2. Is, ut Sūllae² subvenīret, mīlitēs collēgit. 3. Postea in³ Siciliam profectus est, ut eam prōvinciam ā Carbōne reciperet.

¹ An exception to 348.

² See 343.

³ See 333. 1.

4. *Catilinae exercitus adeo acriter dimicavit, ut nemō superesset.* 5. *Accidit ut esset plēna lūna.* 6. *Atticus sic Graecē loquēbatur, ut Athēnīs nātus vidērētur.* 7. *Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut omnibus cīvibus esset cārissimus.* 8. *Nōn dubitō quīn nostrī milītēs hostēs superāverint.* 9. *Nōn est dubium quīn semper fidem servāveritis.* 10. *Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs.* 11. *Metuō nē malum cōnsilium capiās.* 12. *Metuō ut sustinueris labōrēs.* 13. *Quis metuit nē malum cōnsilium capiam?*

Point out the *purpose* clauses in the above.

- II. 1. The boy so acts that he is loved by all. 2. They so acted that they were loved by all. 3. He will so act as to be¹ loved by all. 4. He has so acted as to be loved by all. 5. They will not doubt our having come.² 6. They had not doubted our having come.³ 7. I fear that you are not well. 8. I feared that you were not well. 9. I fear that you are sick. 10. I was afraid that you had been sick. 11. The enemy are fighting so spiritedly that no one will survive.⁴ 12. They have fought so sharply that not one has survived. 13. We will set out for⁵ Sicily in order to receive⁶ that province.

371.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cidō, 3, -**idi**, — [ad, cadō],
fall upon, fall out, happen. Cf.
eveniō and **incidō**.

ad-eō, adv. (*to this*), *thus far, so,*
so very.

Atticus, -**i**, m., *Atticus*, a friend of
Cicero.

Carbō, -**ōnis**, m., *Carbo*, a Roman.

Catilīna, -**ae**, m., *Catiline*, a famous Roman conspirator.

col-ligō, 3, -**lēgī**, -**lēctum** [com,
legō], *collect.* Also **conligō**.

di-micō, 1, *fight, contend.*

Graecē, adv. [**Graecus**], *in Greek.*

loquor, 3, **locūtus**, *speak, talk.*

sub-veniō, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum**,
come to the aid of; aid, assist,
with dative. Cf. **succurrō**.

sustineō, 2, -**tinuī**, -**tentum** [sub,
teneō], *hold up, bear, endure.*

¹ *As to be, ut, etc.*

² *That we have come.*

³ *That we had come.*

⁴ Pres. subj.

⁵ See I. 3, and note.

⁶ Not infinitive.

CHAPTER LVII. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: *Cum*.

372. The subjunctive occurs very frequently in dependent clauses beginning with **cum**, meaning (1) *when, while, as*, of time; (2) *since, because, as*, of cause or reason; (3) *although*, of concession:

1. **Cum** Servius in domō Tarquinī esset, mirābile accidit, *while Servius was in the house of Tarquin, a wonderful thing happened.*
2. **Cum** Tarquinius occīsus esset, ējus uxor populum allocūta est, *when Tarquin had been killed, his wife addressed the people.*
3. **Tullia, cum** domum redīret, super corpus patris carpentum ēgit, *Tullia, as she was returning home, drove her wagon over the body of her father.*

An inspection of the above examples shows that—

- (1) The tenses of the subjunctive are the imperf. and pluperfect.
- (2) The **cum** clause marks the time of the act of the principal clause, the verb of which is in the perfect.
- (3) The sentences may be called *narrative sentences*.

373. RULE OF SYNTAX. — *Cum* temporal, that is, *cum* in narrative clauses, is followed by the imperf. and pluperfect subjunctive to mark the time of the action in the principal clause.

374. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Cum** huīc lēgī senātus repūgnāret, Caesar rem ad populum dētulit, *since the senate opposed this law, Caesar referred the matter to the people.*
2. **Cum** dē imprōvisō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt, *since he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent ambassadors.*
3. **Cum** vīta metūs plēna sit, amīcitiās parāte, *since life is full of fear, form friendships.*
4. **Cum** mē interrogāveris, respondēbō, *as you have asked me, I will answer.*

5. **Nihil mē adjūvit cum posset**, he gave me no aid (aided me in nothing), although it was in his power.

Notice that—

- (1) All the four tenses of the subjunctive are used.
 (2) The **cum** clause states the cause or reason of the act of the principal clause; or denotes a concession, indicated in English by *though*, *admitting that*, etc.

375. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Cum causal or concessive is followed by the subjunctive in all its tenses.

1. **Cum** followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal, and may be translated *since* or *as*; followed by the imperfect or pluperfect it is very often temporal.

2. **Cum** temporal and the subjunctive can often be translated in some other way better than by *when* or *as* with the indicative. Thus, in 372. 2, we might translate, *After the killing of Tarquin*, etc.; and in 3, *Tullia, returning home*, or *Tullia, on her way home*.

376. EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Cum jūssī essent invicem dīcere**, ūnus orsus est.
 2. **Pyrrhus, cum tot Rōmānōs mortuōs vidēret**, manūs ad caelum sustulit. 3. **Cum explōrātōrēs cēpisset**, cōs per castrā circumdūxit. 4. **Quae cum ita sint**,¹ perge. 5. **Cum sit in nōbīs cōsiliū**, cūr dubitāmus? 6. **Cum dē imprōvisō vēnerit Caesār**, ad eum lēgātōs mittēmus. 7. **Cum amīcī adsint**, gaudēmus. 8. **Cum**² nox appropīnquāret, abiērunt. 9. **Cum nox appropīnquāvisset**, abiērunt. 10. **Caesar, cum frūstrā mīsisset**, sōlus nāviculā cōscendit nē āgnōscerētur.

II. 1. When one had begun,³ the rest became (*were*) silent.
 2. **Pyrrhus, having seen**⁴ the bravery of the Romans, spoke these words. 3. Since he has seen the bravery of the Romans, he raises his hands to heaven. 4. Since night is

¹ Since these things are so = such being the case.

² **Cum** may be translated as temporal or causal: *on the approach*

of night; or, since night was approaching.

³ See 373.

⁴ *Pyrrhus, when he had seen.*

approaching, we will go off. 5. When our friends had arrived, we went to Boston. 6. On the arrival of our friends we went to Boston. 7. While Cæsar was embarking in a boat, no one recognized him. 8. As¹ Cæsar was alone, he was not recognized. 9. As¹ I was telling him a story, he suddenly laughed. 10. As¹ they had prudence, we did not hesitate.

377.

VOCABULARY.

ā-gnōscō, 3, *gnōvī*, *gnitum*, [*ad*,

(*g*)*nōscō*, *know*], *recognize*.

ap-propinquō, 1 [*ad*], *approach*.

Bostonia, -*ae*, *f.*, *Boston*.

cēteri, -*ae*, -*a*, *adj.*, *the rest*.

circum-dūcō, 3, -*xī*, -*ductum*,
lead around.

cōn-scendō, 3, -*dī*, -*scēsum*
[*scandō*, *climb*], *ascend, embark,*
go on board.

dubitō, 1 [*dubius*], *doubt, hesitate*.

dubius, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, *doubtful*.

gaudeō,² 2, *gāvisus sum*, *be*
glad, rejoice.

in-prō-visō, *adv.* [*videō*], *unex-*
pectedly

in-vicem, *adv.*, *by turns, in turn*.

jubeō, 2, *jūssī*, *jūssum*, *bid,*
order. Cf. *imperō*.

mortuus, -*a*, -*um* [*P. of morior*],
dead.

nāvicula, -*ae*, *f.* [*nāvis*], *little*
vessel, boat.

ordior, 4, *orsus*, *begin, undertake*.

pergō, 3, *perrēxī*, *perrēctum*
[*per, regō*], *go on, continue*.

taceō, 2, *tacui*, *tacitum*, *be silent,*
say nothing about.

tollō, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātum*, *raise,*
lift up.

tot, *adj.*, *indecl.*, *so many*. Cf. *quot*.

2.

378.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ.—*Continued*

Aemilius Paullus tēlis obrutus cecidit. Quem³ cum mediā
in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre cōspexisset quī-

¹ The *as* of *reason*, or of *time*?

² Four common verbs, *audeō*,
dare, *gaudeō*, *rejoice*, *soleō*, *be*
accustomed, *fidō*, *trust*, have the
passive form in the perfect, and
hence are called *semi-deponents*.

³ Translate first mentally, tak-
ing the words as they stand, ren-

dering *cum*, *when*; then recast
this preliminary translation, be-
ginning with *cum quīdam tribū-*
nus, and rendering *quem*, *him*.

Follow this method, when a
Latin sentence appears difficult;
but keep a sharp eye on the ter-
minations of the words.

Compare each of the foregoing examples in the left hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called **Indirect Questions**. Observe the mood, and how it is translated.

380. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Indirect questions take the subjunctive.

1. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis**, *who?* **cūr**, *why?* **num**, *whether?* **ubi**, *where?* **quō**, *whither?* **unde**, *whence?* **quot**, *how many?*

381. EXERCISES.

[Read again the remarks and rule, p. 165.]

I. 1. Scit quid agās. 2. Scit quid ēgeris. 3. Sciēbat quid agerēs. 4. Sciēbat quid ēgissēs. 5. Audīvī quid agat. 6. Audīvī quid ēgerit. 7. Audīvī quid ageret. 8. Audīvī quid ēgisset. 9. Audīveram quid ageret. 10. Audīveram quid ēgisset.

II. 1. Volō scīre unde vēneris. 2. Dic¹ mihi num meam sorōrem vīderis. 3. Nesciō unde veniant tot mīlitēs. 4. Quaeram num omnia fēliciter ēvēnerint. 5. Speculābimur quot hominēs in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 6. Nāsica hominem interrogāvit num manibus ambulāre solitus esset. 7. Quaerēbat quae² cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 8. Quīdam homo interrogātus est quae nāvēs essent tūtissimae. 9. Dic mihi quid in manū habeās. 10. Caesar omnem equitātum mittit, quī videat³ quās in partēs⁴ hostēs iter faciant.

III. 1. He sees who is walking; has walked. 2. They see who are walking; have walked. 3. We shall see who walk; have walked. 4. We knew why he was laughing; had laughed. 5. You knew why I was laughing; had laughed.

¹ See p. 150, note.

² Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

³ See 279. 3.

⁴ Into what parts = in what direction.

6. They wondered why he was praised; had been praised.
 7. They will wonder why I am praised; have been praised.
 8. Do you not wonder why we are praised; have been praised?
 9. I wonder whether he has been admonished; is being admonished.
 10. They wondered whether we were admonished; had been admonished.

382.

VOCABULARY.

interrogō, 1, *ask, inquire.*

Nāsica, -ae, m., *Nasica*, surname of one of the Scipios.

num,¹ interrog. adv., *whether*, introducing indirect questions.

rogō, 1, *ask, question.*

sciō, 4, **sciō**, **sciō**, **sciō**, *know.*

soleō,² 2, **solitus**, *be accustomed.*

speculor, 1, *spy out, watch.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj., safe.*

interrogō, *ask a question, inquire*, and nearly limited to that sense.

rogō, *ask a question*, but much more commonly *ask a favor, make a request.*

quaerō, *ask a question*, but much used in the sense of *seeking to gain or to know, searching into.*



CHAPTER LIX. 1.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WISHES AND CONDITIONS.

383. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Utinam pater veniat!** *would that father would come! I wish father would come! O that father would come!*
2. **Sī pater veniat, laetus sim,** *if father should come, I should be glad.*
3. **Utinam pater adesset!** *would that father were here!*
4. **Sī pater adesset, laetus essem,** *if father were here, I should be glad.*
5. **Utinam pater adfuisset!** *would that father had been here!*
6. **Sī pater adfuisset, laetus fuisset,** *if father had been here, I should have been glad.*

¹ Introducing direct questions, it indicates that the answer *no* is expected, but does not usually admit of translation. ² See p. 177, n. 2.

(1) In 1 and 2 what time do the words *would come*, *should come*, *should be*, point to? Plainly not to the past, nor to the instant present, but vaguely to the future; and this vague future is expressed in Latin by the present subjunctive. The wish and the condition referring to the future *may be* fulfilled; the father *may* come.

(2) In 3 and 4 the wish and condition refer to the present; and this present is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what is the fact*; the father *is*, in fact, *not present*.

(3) In 5 and 6 the tense of the subjunctive offers no difficulty. The wish and condition are plainly *contrary to what was the fact*; the father *was*, in fact, *not present*.

384. RULE OF SYNTAX.—In wishes and conditions the present subjunctive is used of what *may come true*, the imperfect subjunctive of what *is not true*, the pluperfect subjunctive of what *was not true*. The same mood is regularly employed in the conclusion of such conditional sentences.

The indicative is not used in wishes. The use of the indicative in conditional sentences is easily understood.

385. Examine the following:—

1. **SĪ** pater adest, bene est, *if father is present, it is well.*
2. **SĪ** pater aderat, bene erat, *if father was present, it was well.*
3. **SĪ** pater aderit, bene erit, *if father shall be present,¹ it will be well.*

Observe that in examples 1 and 2 a condition is stated without implying anything. In example 3, as the time is future, that which is supposed *may be* fulfilled. This form, then, of stating a supposition is almost exactly equivalent to that of the present subjunctive in **383**; it is only a livelier way of putting it.

¹ In English we commonly use a present form in such conditions that refer to the future. Thus we say, *If he is (to-morrow, next week,*

etc.) present, it will be well. Do not be deceived, when translating into Latin, by this apparent present. See if the conclusion contains a future.

386.

EXERCISES.¹

I. 1. Sī victōriam, certam videam, nunquam pūgnem.
 2. Sī mē virum bonum iudicārēs,² nōn mē corrumpere vellēs.²
 3. Dictātor,³ sī adfuisset, rem nōn melius gessisset.
 4. Varrō, sī Carthāginiēnsium dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās dedisset.⁴ 5. Sī patrem tuum crās videam, quid dīcat? 6. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Cæsar jūssisset.
 7. Sī rēctē faciās, laudēris. 8. Sī maneat Mārcus, gaudeāmus; sīn autem eat, tamen eum laudēmus. 9. Sī leō accēderet,⁵ omnēs fugerent. 10. Utinam frāter meus vīveret clāssesque iterum dūceret! 11. Utinam māter nōbīs fābulam nārret! 12. Utinam tēcum⁶ in agrīs ambulāvisssem!

II.⁷ 1. Would that I were walking in the fields with you to-day! 2. I wish you had been walking⁸ with me⁶ yesterday. 3. O take⁹ a walk with us in the fields to-morrow! 4. If you should see victory certain, my friend, should you not fight? 5. I should not now be setting out if Cæsar did not order it. 6. If you were acting rightly, you would be praised. 7. If you had acted rightly, you would have been praised. 8. I wish⁹ you would act rightly, so as to¹⁰ be praised. 9. If we should see a lion, we should flee.

¹ In translating these sentences, render the present subjunctive in such a way as to indicate vaguely future time; thus, **videam** . . . **pūgnem**, *should see* . . . *should fight*.

² Compare 383. 4, and read again 383 (2).

³ Notice the position of this word, which is the subject of **gessisset**. It may be translated as it stands, first.

⁴ *Given punishments of = paid the penalty for.*

⁵ If a lion *were coming*, not *were*

to come, which would be expressed by the present subjunctive.

⁶ See 265. 3.

⁷ In turning these sentences into Latin, do not be misled as to the real time of the verbs; *were walking*, in the first sentence, denotes present time. Read again the examples, 383, and the remarks. See also the varied translation of the first example.

⁸ Compare I. 12.

⁹ Compare 383. 1.

¹⁰ **Ut**. See 352.

10. I wish I had seen a huge lion. 11. If my brother¹ were living, he would now be commanding the fleet. 12. Would that your brother were alive!

387.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum [ad],
go or come near, approach.

cor-rumpō, 3, -rūpi, -ruptum
[com], break in pieces, destroy;
corrupt, bribe.

dictātor, -ōris, M. [dictō, dicō],
chief magistrate, dictator.

immānis, -e, adj., huge, immense.

jūdicō, 1 [jūdex], judge, deem.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], rightly.

sīn, conj. [sī, nē], but if, if how-
ever, if.

temeritās, -ātis, F. [temerē],
chance; rashness.

uti-nam, adv., would that, O that,
I wish that.

2.

388.

COLLOQUIUM.

JŌHANNĒS ET JACŌBUS.

Jo. Dīcē mihī, Jacōbe, unde veniās, quid ēgeris.
have been doing

Ja. Rūre veniō, ubi fēriārum partem ēgī. Et tū?
vacation spent

Jo. Ego iter cum parentibus fēcī, neque sciō quandō
domum revertar.
return when

Ja. Utinam ego quoque iter faciam! Sī parentēs ades-
sent, iter mēcum facerent.

Jo. Ego itineris diūturnitāte sum dēfessus, et gaudērem sī
in scholā essem.
length

Ja. Venī mēcum in scholam et unā ēdiscāmus.
together let us learn

Jo. Tēcum libenter in scholam ībō, sed cōgnōscere velim
quī sit praeceptor.
know should like

Ja. Praeceptor est vir doctissimus. Vim Latīnī scit,
atque semper est benīgnus, mōrōsus nunquam.
ever so much pleasant

Jo. Quid tē docet?

¹ Imitate the order in I. 3 and 4; the subject might, however, be placed after sī.

Ja. Docet nōs modum subjunctivum. Herī, exemplī causā,
for example
 nōbīs dē subjunctivō in interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs explicāvit.
questions

Jo. Multa dē interrogātiōnibus indirēctīs audīvī, neque unquam intellegere potuī. Fēcitne praeceptor ut tū ista intellegerēs?

Ja. Sānē, mī amīce, et ego, ut opīnor, faciam ut tū quoque
yes indeed
 eadem intellegās. Sī dīcam, *Ubi est frāter tuus?* interrogā-
question
 tum sit dīrēctum; sīn autem, *Nesciō ubi sit frāter,* interrogā-
 tum sit indirēctum. Intellegisne?

Jo. Satis intellegō. Sed in hunc diem hāctenus.
so-so for enough



CHAPTER LX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE.

389. Learn the future imperative, active and passive, of the regular and irregular verbs, and review the present imperative.

390. In the last lesson occurred the first illustrations of the subjunctive not in dependent clauses, that is, in wishes and in the principal clauses of conditional sentences. The subjunctive is similarly used in commands and appeals, and when so used is called the **Hortatory Subjunctive**.

391. *Examine the following paradigms:—*

COMMANDS AND APPEALS.

POSITIVE.

moneam, *let me advise.*

monē, or moneās, *advise.*

{ moneat, { *let him advise, or*
 { monuerit, { *he shall advise.*

moneāmus, *let us advise.*

monēte, *advise.*

{ moneant, { *let them advise,*
 { monuerint, { *or they shall*
 { *advise.*

NEGATIVE.

nē moneam, *let me not advise.*

nē monueris, *do not advise.*

nē moneat, { *let him not, or he*
 nē monuerit, { *shall not, advise.*

nē moneāmus, *let us not advise.*

nē monueritis, *do not advise.*

nē moneant, { *let them not, or*
 nē monuerint, { *they shall not,*
 { *advise.*

(1) Observe that positive commands and appeals are expressed by the subjunctive only, except in the second person; and negative commands and appeals, by the subjunctive with *nē*.¹

(2) Observe also that the present and perfect subjunctive, in the third person, are used without essential difference of meaning; and that in *negative commands and appeals in the second person the perfect*² only³ is given.

(3) The future imperative is mostly confined to laws and maxims: *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō, thou shalt not bury a dead man within the city. Percontātōrem fugitō, nam garrulus idem est, avoid a questioner, for he is a babbler too.*

(4) The preceding paradigms, with the meanings, should be thoroughly committed to memory.

392.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cotidiē scribe ad mē, nī fili, quid fēceris. 2. Puer ad patrem scribit quid fēcerit. 3. Mittāmus nūntium ad Caesarem quī⁴ eum moneat. 4. Nē mēcum in litore hodiē ambulāveris. 5. Nē puerī incautī cultrōs habeant. 6. Imperātor cōnsilium cōficiat. 7. Nōlite, militēs, hostium exercitum timēre. 8. Nē, militēs, hostium exercitum timueritis. 9. Omnia sua⁵ sēcum⁶ incolae portāverint. 10. Mili aurēs praebēte, discipulī, et diligenter audite quae dicam. 11. Nē id quod est falsum dixeris. 12. Leō dixit: Restat pars quarta, at nē quisquam⁷ audeat eam tangere.

II. 1. They shall not send⁸ a messenger. 2. Let no one touch⁹ the fourth part. 3. Touch not¹⁰ the fourth part of the

¹ Prohibitions are more commonly expressed by *nōli* (*nōlite*) with the infinitive. See 318. I. 5 and 6.

² This form of the subjunctive in this use is here called the *perfect*, in deference to custom: it is really the *subjunctive of the future perfect*.

³ The imperative so used is not common, and not to be imitated.

⁴ Compare 365. I. 2 and 4.

⁵ *Omnia sua, their all.*

⁶ See 265. 3.

⁷ *Let no one.* See 279. 6.

⁸ *Nē* with perfect subjunctive.

⁹ See I. 12.

¹⁰ Express in two ways.

booty. 4. Let the pupils listen attentively to the words of the master. 5. Do not listen,¹ boys, to the counsels of the bad. 6. Write daily to your parents what² you are doing. 7. Carry your books home³ with you and study diligently. 8. Do not forget¹ what⁴ has been said to you to-day. 9. Touch not¹ wine; let us not touch wine; they shall not touch wine. 10. Let us go out and carry our all with us.

393.

VOCABULARY.

at, conj., *but*. Cf. *autem*. (214.)
audeō,⁵ 2, ausus sum, *dare, be bold*.

cōn-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out*.

cotīdiē, adv. [quot, diēs], *daily*.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, *deceive*], *deceptive, false*.

in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [caveō], *incautious, heedless*.

re-stō, 1, restitī, —, *stay behind, remain*.

tangō, 3, tetigī, tactum, *touch*.

at, *but on the contrary, but for all that*.

sed, *but, without special emphasis*.

autem, *but, often to be rendered however; weaker than at or sed*.

394.

FOR TRANSLATION.

MĀRCUS PORCIUS CATŌ, PUER.

M. Porcius Catō jam puer⁶ invīctum animī rōbur ostendit. Cum in domō Drūsī avunculī suī educārētur, Latīnī dē civitāte impetrandā⁷ Rōmam vēnērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum princeps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latīnōs apud avunculū adjuvāret. Catō vultū cōstantī

¹ Express in two ways.

² Compare I. 10.

³ See 336.

⁴ Id quod.

⁵ See p. 177, note 2.

⁶ Jam puer, *already a boy = even in boyhood*.

⁷ Dē civitāte impetrandā, *respecting the citizenship to be obtained = to obtain citizenship*.

negāvit id sē factūrum.¹ Iterum deinde ac saepius interpel-
lātus² in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc Popēdius puerum in excel-
sam aedium partem levātum tenuit,³ et sē abjectūrum⁴ inde
minātus est, nisi precibus obtemperāret; neque hōc metū⁵ ā
sententiā eum potuit dīmōvēre. Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse⁶
fertur:⁷ “Grātulēmur⁸ nōbīs,⁹ Latīnī, hunc esse tam par-
vum; sī enim senātor esset,¹⁰ nē spērāre quidem¹¹ jūs¹² cīvi-
tātis licēret.¹⁰

—o:~o:~o—

CHAPTER LXI.

THE INFINITIVE.

395. Learn the infinitives of the regular and irregular verbs.
(86, 112, 180, 223, 235, etc.)

396. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Errāre est hūmānum**, to err is human.
2. **Possum vidēre**, I am able to see.
3. **Volō legere**, I wish to read.
4. **Eam sequi sē jubet**, he orders her to follow him(self).
5. **Sāturnus in Ītaliā vēnisse dīcitur**, Saturn is said to have come into Italy.

Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used in Latin precisely as in English. This use of the infinitive, as offering no difficulty, has been tacitly illustrated in some of the foregoing exercises.

¹ **Negāvit . . . factūrum**, denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.

² Perf. part. See **amātus**, p. 34.

³ **Puerum . . . levātum tenuit**, held the raised-up boy = raised up and held the boy.

⁴ **Sē abjectūrum**, that he would throw (him) down.

⁵ **Hōc metū**, by this fear = by fear of this.

⁶ **Exclāmāsse = exclāmāvisse**.

⁷ **Fertur = dīcitur**.

⁸ **Grātulēmur**, let us congratulate. See 391.

⁹ **Nōbīs**. See 343.

¹⁰ **Esset . . . licēret**. See 383.

¹¹ **Nē . . . quidem**, not even.

¹² **Jūs civitātis**. Cf. **civitate**, line 2.

397.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cūr mē vīs corrumpere? 2. Timēre incipiēbat. 3. Soror flēre incipiēbat. 4. Vincere scīs,¹ victōriā² ūti nescīs. 5. Tarquinius Cūmās sē contulisse dicitur. 6. Pontem jubet rescindī. 7. Dulce est prō patriā morī. 8. Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat. 9. Puerōs decet tacēre. 10. Tūne Mariūm audēbis occīdere? 11. Nōbīs est in animō³ per prōvinciam iter facere. 12. Caesar ab urbe proficiscī matūrat.

II. 1. Pyrrhus wanted to bribe Fabricius. 2. Fabricius could not⁴ be turned from (the path of) honor. 3. Why did you begin to weep? 4. Did Hannibal know how⁵ to conquer? 5. Tarquin was said to have besieged Rome. 6. Rome is said to have been besieged. 7. Seeing is believing.⁶ 8. The consul was ordered⁷ to tear down the bridge. 9. The bridge is said to have been torn down. 10. It is pleasant⁸ to live for (one's) friends. 11. We intend to tear down the bridge. 12. He is said to have departed from Italy.

398.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, turn away from, avert.

crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditum, trust, believe, w. dat. (343.)

decet, 2, decuit, —, impers. (p. 200), it is becoming, fitting, proper.

honestūs, -ātis, F. [honestus], honor, integrity, honesty.

in-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [cap-iō] (take in hand), begin.

matūrō, 1 [matūrus, ripe], hasten. morior,⁹ 3, mortuus, die.

pōns, pontis, M., bridge.

re-scindō, 3, -scidī, -scissum, tear away, tear down, break down.

soror, -ōris, F., sister.

¹ You know how.

² See 304.

³ It is in mind to us = we intend.

⁴ Could not = was not able.

⁵ See I. 4.

⁶ To see is to believe. Cf. I. 7.

⁷ Use jubeō.

⁸ Neuter. Cf. I. 7.

⁹ Morior has future participle moritūrus.

CHAPTER LXII. 1.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

399. *Examine the following:—*

DIRECT.

1. **Homo est**, *he is a man.*
2. **Īgnis calet**, *fire is hot.*
3. **Amīcus adest**, *(his) friend is present.*
4. **Mundus ā Deō regitur**, *the world is ruled by God.*

INDIRECT.

1. **Dīcit sē hominem esse**, *he says that he is a man.*
2. **Sentīmus īgnem calēre**, *we perceive that fire is hot.*
3. **Putat amīcum adesse**, *he thinks that his friend is present.*
4. **Scīmus mundum ā Deō regī**, *we know that the world is ruled by God.*

Notice the difference between the direct and indirect forms of statement.

In the second group, compare the English with the Latin. Observe (1) that after the leading verb there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to the conjunction *that*; (2) that, while the English retains the nominative and indicative of the direct form, the Latin has instead the accusative and infinitive.

The second group illustrates the *indirect discourse*, so called because what some one says, thinks, or knows, is stated in the dependent clause *indirectly*.

400. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The accusative and infinitive are regularly used after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

402. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

dīcit	} tē scribere,	{	he says that you are writing.	
dīcet				he will say that you are writing.
dīxit				he said that you were writing.
dīcit	} epistolam scribi,	{	he says that the letter is being written.	
dīcet				he will say that the letter is being written.
dīxit				he said that the letter was being written.

FUTURE.

dīcit	} tē scripturum esse,	{	he says that you will write.	
dīcet				he will say that you will write.
dīxit				he said that you would write.
dīcit	} epistolam scriptum hī ¹ ,	{	he says that the letter will be written.	
dīcet				he will say that the letter will be written.
dīxit				he said that the letter would be written.

PERFECT.

dīcit	} tē scripsisse,	{	he says that you wrote (have written).	
dīcet				he will say that you wrote (have written).
dīxit				he said that you wrote (had written).
dīcit	} epistolam scriptam esse,	{	he says that the letter was (has been) written.	
dīcet				he will say that the letter was (has been) written.
dīxit				he said that the letter was (had been) written.

A study of the above table will show that the present infinitive denotes the *same* time as that indicated by the tense of the leading verb; that the future infinitive denotes time *after* that indicated by the leading verb; and that the perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that indicated by the leading verb.

403. RULE OF SYNTAX. — The tenses of the infinitive refer to present, future, or past time, *relatively* to the time of the leading verb.

¹ More commonly, fore ut epistula with subj. Also see p. 192, u. 1.

2.

404.

EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate each of the following sentences twice; first, literally, just as they stand, then into good English: thus, *History relates two sons to have been to Cornelia* = *history relates that Cornelia had two sons*. The eighth thus: *The ambassador said himself a public messenger to be of the Roman people* = *the ambassador said that he was*, etc.]

I. 1. *Historia nārrat duōs filiōs fuisse Cornēliae.* 2. *Cornēlia dīxit filiōs suōs esse ōrnāmenta sua.* 3. *Scīmus mātrēs filiōs amāre.* 4. *Trāditum¹ est Cacsarem ā Brūtō et Cassiō occīsum esse.* 5. *Certum est cāsū bonum fierī nēmīnem.²* 6. *Sciō haec vēra esse.* 7. *Mārcellus Hannibalem vincī posse docuit.* 8. *Lēgātus dīxit sē pūblicum nūntium esse populī Rōmānī.* 9. *Thalēs aquam dīxit esse initium rērum.* 10. *Trāditum est Homērum fuisse caecum.* 11. *Lēgātus dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī.*

[Before translating into Latin, cast each sentence mentally into the Latin form; thus the first sentence will be, *It is said two sons to have been to Cornelia*, or *Cornelia two sons to have had*; and the seventh, *We know you the truth to be about to tell*. This practice is of capital importance.]

II. 1. *It is said that Cornelia had two sons.* 2. *Have we not heard that Cornelia had jewels?* 3. *I think that you will have jewels.* 4. *We know that Cornelia loved her boys.* 5. *Do not³ all mothers think that their sons are their jewels?* 6. *I think that the moon will be full to-morrow.* 7. *We know that you will tell the truth.* 8. *History relates that Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus.* 9. *It is related that Homer wrote poems.* 10. *I know that this has been done.* 11. *He said that the enemy held the mountain.*

¹ In the compound tenses of the passive voice the perfect participle occasionally loses its idea of time and becomes virtually an

adjective. Here *trāditum est* = *it is (a thing) related*.

² Subject of *fieri*.

³ *Nōne*.

3.

405.

EXERCISES.

[Read the first paragraph, page 191.]

I. 1. Jūrāte vōs rem pūblicam nōn dēsertūrōs esse. 2. Vōx quondam audīta est Rōmam ā Gallis captum¹ irī. 3. Certum est Hannibalem ā Scīpiōne vīctum esse. 4. Ferunt² eō diē lūnam fuisse plēnam. 5. Cum Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnisset, servus dīxit Ennium domī nōn esse. 6. Nāsīca sēnsit illum³ intus esse. 7. Posteā cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius, exclāmāvit ipse Nāsīca sē³ domī nōn esse. 8. Catō dīcere solēbat acerbōs inimīcōs saepe vērum dīcere. 9. Abī, nūntiā tē vīdisse Gājum Mariū in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem (*sitting*). 10. Mātrōna quaedam dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre.⁴

[See second paragraph, p. 191. The first sentence expressed in the Latin idiom will be, *Ennius says himself at home not to be*; the third, *He thinks himself at home to be about to be*; the fourth, *Cato thought his friends the truth not always to speak* (compare I. 8).]

II. 1. Ennius says that he is not at home. 2. He said that he had not been at home. 3. He thinks that he shall be at home to-morrow. 4. Cato thought that his friends did not always tell him⁵ the truth. 5. It is evident that the world was not made by chance. 6. We have sworn that we will not desert our leader. 7. The soldiers swore that they had not deserted the republic. 8. It was evident that the enemy was being defeated.⁶ 9. Do you not know that the enemy are near? 10. It is certain that they are advancing towards the town.

¹ **Captum**, being a supine (433), does not change its form to agree with **Rōmam**.

² **Ferunt** = **dīcunt**.

³ Observe the difference between **illum** in 6 and **sē** in 7.

⁴ *To have thirty years = to be thirty years old.*

⁵ *Him* = *himself*; not accusative.

⁶ Notice that the time of the dependent verb is present, with reference to that of the leading verb.

406.

VOCABULARY.

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer],
harsh, bitter.

arbitror, 1, think, suppose, believe.

cōn-stat, 1, -stitit, —, impers.

(415), it is evident, clear.

dē-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, desert, abandon.

Ennius, -ī, m., Ennius, a Roman poet.

ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

historia, -ae, f., history.

in-iuīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amicus],
unfriendly, hostile; noun, an enemy. (172.)

intus, adv. [in], inside, within.

jūrō, 1 [jūs], swear, take an oath.

Mārcellus, -ī, m., Marcellus, a Roman general.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], wife, lady, matron.

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce, report.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], ornament, jewel. (345. 9.)

populus, -ī, m., people.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus] (pertaining to the people), public. (345. 19.)

quondam, adv., once, formerly.

sentīō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive.

tantum, adv. [tantus], only.

Thalēs, -īs, m., Thales, a Greek philosopher.

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns], give over, deliver; relate, recount.

vērūm, -ī, n. [vērū], the truth.

4.

407.

FOR TRANSLATION.

NĀSĪCA ET ENNIUS.

Nāsīca,¹ cum ad poētam Ennium vēnisset,² eīque³ ab ōstiō quaerenti⁴ Ennium ancilla dīxisset eum domī⁵ nōn esse, sēnsit illam⁶ domīnī jūssū dīxisse, et illum⁷ intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus, cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset Ennius et eum ā⁸ jānuā quaereret, exclāmat Nāsīca sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, “Quid? ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem,” inquit,⁹ “tuam?”

¹ Subject of sēnsit.

² Ad . . . vēnisset, had come to, that is, to call on.

³ To him, dat. of is. See 270. 2.

⁴ Pres. part. of quaerō, in the dat. with eī, to him asking for.

⁵ See 336.

⁶ Refers to ancilla, and is the subject acc. of dīxisse.

⁷ That is, Ennius.

⁸ Ā jānuā, at the door.

⁹ Observe the position of inquit.

Hic¹ Nāsīca : "Homo es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaerem, ancillae² tuae crēdidī tē³ domī nōn esse; tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī?"⁴

CHAPTER LXIII. 1.

PARTICIPLES.

408. Learn the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.

1. For declension of a present active participle, see 165. The ablative singular generally ends in *e*, but in *i* when the participle is used as an adjective.

2. The other participles, ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, are declined like *bonus* (71).

409. *Examine the following:—*

- | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|--|--------------|-----------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|--|--------|--------------|--|----------|---------|
| 1. Fortissimē dīmīcāns | <table border="0"> <tr> <td>{</td> <td>cadit,</td> <td>he falls</td> <td rowspan="3">} fighting most
bravely.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>cadet,</td> <td>he will fall</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>cecidit,</td> <td>he fell</td> </tr> </table> | { | cadit, | he falls | } fighting most
bravely. | | cadet, | he will fall | | cecidit, | he fell |
| { | cadit, | he falls | } fighting most
bravely. | | | | | | | | |
| | cadet, | he will fall | | | | | | | | | |
| | cecidit, | he fell | | | | | | | | | |
2. Hostēs adortus prōflīgāvit, he attacked and routed (having attacked, he routed) the enemy.
 3. Eī advenientī aquila pilleum sustulit, an eagle took off his cap as he was approaching (to him approaching).
 4. Leōnidās superātus cēdere nōluit, Leonidas, (though) overpowered, would not yield.
 5. Rōmā expulsus Athēnās ībit, (if) expelled from Rome, he will go to Athens.
 6. Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit, he delivered the letter (which had been) intrusted to him.
 7. Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliā rediit, he returned into Italy (because he was) alarmed at this event.
 8. Nōs moritūrī salūtāmus, we, (who are) about to die, salute you.
 9. Ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (maidens seized).

¹ An adverb, *hereupon*.

³ Subject acc. of *esse*. See 401

² Dat. after *crēdidī*. See 343.

⁴ Emphasizes *mihī*. (270. 4.)

Study the above examples with reference first to the tenses of the participles, and observe that the time of the participles is present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the leading verb.

Notice how the participle is translated in each example; only in the first is it best translated literally. What the Latin expresses by a participle we very often express by a clause beginning *as, though, if, because, etc.*, by a relative clause, or by a verb coördinate with one following.

2.

410.

EXERCISES.

[It will be best to translate every sentence literally, then into good English.]

I. 1. Remus irridēns mūrum trānsiliit. 2. Abī hinc, oblīta¹ frātrum, oblīta¹ patriae. 3. Lēgātō rēs repetentī² superbē respōnsum est³ ā Latīnīs. 4. Faliscī statim beneficiō victī portās Rōmānīs aperuērunt. 5. Fīlius Manlī Latīnum ex equō excussum trānsfixit.⁴ 6. Rōmānī necessitatē victī lēgātōs mittunt. 7. Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī jūssit. 8. Hannibal causam bellī quaerēns Saguntum ēvertit. 9. Eā rē commōtus in Ītaliā rediit armīs injūriam acceptam vindicātūrus.⁵ 10. Missōs⁶ ā senātū lēgātōs honorificē excēpit.

[Cast each of the following sentences into the Latin idiom before attempting to translate. Thus, *Romulus killed Remus laughing at* (acc. in agreement with *Remus*); *Horatius stabbed his sister forgetful (oblītam)*; *to the ambassadors demanding, etc.*]

II. 1. Romulus killed Remus because he laughed at his wall. 2. Horatius stabbed his sister with his sword because

¹ Feminine of the perf. part. **oblītus**, from **obliviscor**. Translate, *Thou who hast forgotten* (lit., *having forgotten*).

² *To the ambassador demanding = to the ambassador who demanded, or when the ambassador demanded.*

³ **Respōnsum est**, it was replied = answer was made.

⁴ **Excussum trānsfixit**, struck off and stabbed. See 409. 2.

⁵ *About to avenge, i.e., in order to avenge.*

⁶ Compare 409. 6.

she was forgetful of her country. 3. The Latins answered the ambassadors¹ haughtily, when they demanded restitution. 4. The Gauls entered the open houses. 5. To the Romans, as they came out of the pass, the light was sadder than death² itself. 6. The old men went forth to meet³ Manlius¹ as he was returning to Rome. 7.⁴ They bound the prisoner and brought him back to the city. 8. The letter which had been written by the boy was delivered. 9. The Romans never despaired, though they were often defeated.⁵ 10. Cæsar received the senate sitting,⁶ when they came⁷ to him.

411.

VOCABULARY.

com-movēō, 2, -**mōvī**, -**mōtum**,
shake, disturb, excite, alarm.

dē-ferō, -**ferre**, -**tulī**, -**lātum**,
(bring down), deliver.

dē-spērō, 1, *be hopeless, despair.*

ē-vertō, 3, -**tī**, -**sum**, *overturn,*
overthrow, destroy.

ex-cutiō, 3, -**cussī**, -**cussum**
[**quatiō**], *shake out, strike off,*
drive away, cast out.

Faliscī, -**ōrum**, *m., the Faliscans,*
a people of Etruria.

hinc, *adv. [hīc], from this place,*
hence.

ir-rīdeō, 2, -**rīsī**, -**rīsum** [**in**],
laugh at, ridicule, jest, mock.

Latīnus, -**a**, -**um** [**Latium**],
Latin; noun, a Latin.

necessitās, -**ātis**, *f. [necesse],*
necessity, constraint.

ob-viam, *adv., in the way; with*
verb of motion, meet; w. dat.

pateō, 2, -**uī**, —, *lie open, be*
open; part. patēns, open.

porta, -**ae**, *f., gate, door. Cf. jānuā.*

re-dūcō, 3, -**xī**, -**ductum**, *lead*
back, bring back.

senior, -**ōris**, *m. & f. (comp. of*
senex, old), elder, old person.

statim, *adv. (stō), (standing there),*
on the spot, immediately, at once.

superbē, *adv. [superbus],*
proudly, haughtily.

trāns-figō, 3, -**fixī**, -**fixum**,
pierce through, pierce, stab.

vindicō, 1, *claim, avenge, punish.*

¹ Dative.

² See 211, 212.

³ To meet, obviam.

⁴ Compare I. 7.

⁵ Not the last word: the Romans often defeated, etc.

⁶ In agreement with Cæsar.

⁷ Had come. See 373.

CHAPTER LXIV.

PARTICIPLES: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

412. *Examine the following:—*

<p>ſōle oriente, fugiunt tenebrae,</p>	<p>{ the sun rising, when the sun rises, at the rising of the sun, }</p>	<p>the shadows flee away.</p>
<p>Datō ſignō, virginēs raptae sunt,</p>	<p>{ the signal having been given, when the signal was given, at the given signal, }</p>	<p>the maidens were seized.</p>
<p>Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est,</p>	<p>{ he reigning, in his reign, while he was reigning, }</p>	<p>a war arose.</p>
<p>Cōſul, bellō cōnfectō, Rōmam rediit,</p>	<p>{ the war having been finished, when the war was finished, having finished the war, }</p>	<p>the consul re- turned to Rome.</p>
<p>Tē duce, hostēs vin- cēmus,</p>	<p>{ you (being) leader, if you are our leader, with you for a leader, }</p>	<p>we shall conquer the enemy.</p>
<p>Messāllā et Pīſōne cōſulibus,</p>	<p>{ M. and P. (being) consuls. when M. and P. were consuls. in the consulship of M. and P.</p>	
<p>Serēnō caelō,</p>	<p>{ the sky (being) clear. when the sky is clear. in a clear sky.</p>	

1. The foregoing examples illustrate the very common construction called the **Ablative Absolute**.

2. In the first four examples there is a noun (or pronoun) in the ablative, and a participle agreeing with it. In the last three there is no participle expressed, but instead, another noun or an adjective.

3. Carefully compare the Latin with the English translation, and observe that each ablative absolute may be rendered by a clause beginning with *when*, *while*, or *if* (in other instances *because*, *although*, etc.), the Latin noun in the ablative becoming the subject of the clause in English, and that this noun refers to a *different person or thing* from the subject of the leading verb.

4. We may also sometimes translate the participle in the ablative absolute by a verb coördinate with a following verb. Thus the fourth might be translated, *The consul finished the war and returned.*

5. If I wish to express in the Latin, *While he was reigning, he carried on war, he* being the subject of both the principal and subordinate clauses, I say, **Is rēgnāns bellum gessit**; but if I wish to express, *While he was reigning, war arose, he* being subject of the subordinate clause, and *war* of the principal, I use the ablative absolute, thus, **Eō rēgnante, bellum exortum est.**

6. In the fourth example notice the change of idiom. We might say, *The consul, having finished the war, returned to Rome*; but the Latin has no perfect active participle corresponding to *having finished*; therefore, in Latin the perfect passive participle must be used in the ablative with the noun **bellum**. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a **cum** clause. See 372.

7. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English participle with *having* may be directly expressed in Latin, if there is a deponent verb of the right meaning; thus, *Cæsar having encouraged his men, Cæsar militēs hortatus.*

8. Most instances of the so-called ablative absolute may be resolved as the ablative of time, means, cause, etc.

413.

EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as possible.]

I. 1. Strictō gladiō, trānsfixit puellam. 2. Expulsis rēgibus, duo cōsules creati sunt. 3. Quō factō,¹ mūtata est proeli fortuna. 4. Occupatā Sicilia, quid postea acturus es? 5. Hannibal, visō frātris occisi capite, dixit: "Agnōscō fortunam Carthāginis." 6. Hīs parātis rēbus, Cæsar militēs nāvēs cōscendere jubet. 7. Hōc factō, tūtus eris. 8. Alpibus superātis, Hannibal in Italiā vēnit. 9. Cæsar, mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit. 10. Delētis Teutonibus, C. Marius in Cimbrōs sē convertit.

¹ *When this had been done.* What is it literally?

[Before trying to translate the following sentences, consider well in each case what the probable Latin form of expression, or idiom, would be for the subordinate clause, adverbial phrase, etc.; thus, *When he had stabbed the girl = the girl (having been) stabbed; When Numa was king = Numa (being) king; By hurling their javelins = by the javelins hurled.*]

II. 1. When he had stabbed the girl, he put by his sword. 2. On the expulsion of King Tarquin, Brutus and Collatinus were made consuls. 3. When Numa was king, the temple of Janus was built. 4. Cæsar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompey. 5. On the death of Cato, there was no longer¹ a republic. 6. Having learned these facts (things), he hastened against the enemy. 7. The soldiers, by hurling their javelins, broke the enemy's line. 8. Having held a levy, the consul sets out immediately for (*ad*) the army. 9. O my country, thou hast overcome my anger by employing a mother's entreaties. 10. If we do² this, we shall all be safe.

414.

VOCABULARY.

ad-moveō, 2, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**,
(*movē up, towards*), *apply, employ.*

cōgnōscō, 3, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitum**
[**com**, (**g**)**nōscō**], *learn, recognize, know.*

Collātīnus, **-ī**, **m.**, *Collatinus*,
surname of L. Tarquinius.

con-iciō, 3, **-jēcī**, **-jectum** [**ja-**
ciō] (*throw together*), *throw, hurl.*

con-tendō, 3, **-dī**, **-tum** (*draw*
tight), *exert one's self, strive, hasten; contend.*

con-vertō, 3, **-tī**, **-sum**, *turn*
round, turn, change; sē conver-
tere, *turn one's self, turn.*

dēlēctus, **-ūs**, **m.** [**dēligō**, *choose*
out], *selection, levy.*

dē-pōnō, 3, **-posuī**, **-positum**,
put down, put by, lay down.

ex-pellō, 3, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, *drive*
out or away, expel.

Jānus, **-ī**, **m.**, *Janus*, the two-faced
god.

per-fringō, 3, **-frēgī**, **-fractum**
[**frangō**, *break*], *break through,*
break.

Rhodus, **-ī**, **f.**, *Rhodes*, an island
in the Ægean.

sē-cēdō, 3, **-cēssī**, **-cēssum**, *go*
apart, withdraw, retire.

statuō, 3, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *put, place;*
think, believe, determine.

stringō, 3, **-nxī**, **strictum** (*draw*
tight), *graze; draw, unsheathe.*

¹ No longer = **nūlla jam**.

² If we do this = *this done*.

CHAPTER LXV. 1.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

415. *Examine the following:—*

1. **Pluit**, *it rains.*
2. **Tonat**, *it thunders.*
3. **Mē pudet stultitiae meae**, *I am ashamed (it shames me) of my folly.*
4. **Eum paenitet sceleris**, *he repents (it repents him) of his crime.*
5. **Pūgnābātur**, *fighting was going on (it was being fought).*
6. **Caesari¹ pārendum² est**, *Cæsar must be obeyed (it must be obeyed to Cæsar).*
7. **Tibi licet exīre**, *you may go out (it is permitted to you to go out).*
8. **Hōc nōs facere oportet**, *we ought to do this (it behooves us to do this).*
9. **Caesari placuit ut lēgātōs mitteret**, *Cæsar determined (it pleased Cæsar) to send ambassadors.*

(1) Observe in each of the foregoing examples that the leading verb has no personal subject either expressed or implied. In 7, the subject of **licet** is the infinitive **exīre**; in 8, the phrase **hōc nōs facere** is the subject of **oportet**; in 9, the clause **ut lēgātōs mitteret** is the subject of **placuit**. In each of the first six the subject is contained in the verb itself.

(2) Some verbs, like **pluit**, **tonat**, **pudet**, **paenitet**, **licet**, the use of which is mostly confined to the third person singular, are called **Impersonal Verbs**; many others, as in the examples **pūgnābātur**, **oportet**, **placuit**, are sometimes used impersonally.

(3) Examples 7 and 8 show one way of rendering *may* and *must* into Latin.

(4) In 3 and 4 notice the use of the accusative and genitive after the verbs.

416. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The impersonal verbs *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet* take the accusa-

¹ See 417. 2.

² See 425. (4).

tive of the person and the genitive of the object or cause of the feeling.

Some examples of verbs used impersonally have already been given. See 362. I. 9; 370. I. 5; 410. I. 3.

417. *Examine the following:—*

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
1. Frātrī persuādet, <i>he persuades his brother.</i>	Frātrī persuādētur, <i>his brother is persuaded.</i>
2. Lēgibus pārēbant, <i>they obeyed the laws.</i>	Lēgibus pārēbātur, <i>the laws were obeyed.</i>
3. Crēdit mihi, <i>he believes me.</i>	Mihi crēditur, <i>I am believed.</i>
4. Amīcīs nocent, <i>they injure their friends.</i>	Amīcīs nocētur, <i>their friends are injured.</i>

Observe that the verbs are intransitive. Compare the active and passive in the examples one by one. Observe that in each case the passive is expressed by putting the verb in the third person singular, leaving the indirect object of the active unchanged.

418. RULE OF SYNTAX. — Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in the passive, the person or thing affected (the subject in English) being expressed by the dative.

419. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Omnēs decet rēctē agere. 2. Diū et ācritēr pūgnā-tum est. 3. Sequitur ut falsum sit. 4. Eōrum nōs miseret.¹ 5. Taedet mē vitāe. 6. Statuendum² vōbīs ante noctem est. 7. Licet mihi ex urbe ēgredī. 8. Nōs oportuit³ hōc facere. 9. Trāditum est Scīpiōnem doctum fuisse. 10. Eādēm nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 11. Obsistitur illīs. 12. Cui⁴ parcī potuit? 13. Persuādētur cōsulī.

¹ Compare 415. 3 and 4.

³ *It behooved us to do = we ought*

² *The duty of deciding is to you = you must decide. Compare 425. 7.*

⁴ *to have done.*

⁴ See 343.

[Observe that the following sentences are modelled closely on the foregoing, and on the illustrative examples. Cast each one into the Latin form before thinking of the Latin words; thus the fifth sentence will be changed to *It disgusts me of the folly*, etc.]

II. 1. It becomes us all to live well. 2. The battle will be fought bravely. 3. It followed that¹ the enemy were defeated. 4.² He was ashamed of his cowardice. 5. I am disgusted with the folly of the men. 6. What must we do? 7. What ought we to have done?³ 8.⁴ May I take the book? 9. It was reported to Cæsar that the enemy were approaching. 10. It resulted⁵ from these circumstances⁶ that¹ all were silent. 11. The winds are opposed with difficulty. 12. Can the soldier be spared? 13. Are not the laws of the republic obeyed?

420.

VOCABULARY.

deceat, 2, deceit , impers., <i>it is seemly, becoming, fitting.</i>	necessary, <i>it behooves, (one) must or ought.</i>
ē-gredior , 3, gressus [gradior], <i>go out, go forth, march out.</i> Cf. exeō .	parcō , 3, pepercī (parsī), parsum , <i>spare, w. dat.</i>
fortiter , adv. [fortis], <i>bravely, courageously.</i>	piget , 2, -uit , or -itum est , impers., <i>it disgusts, (one) is disgusted.</i>
licet , 2, -uit , or -itum est , impers., <i>it is permitted, it is lawful, (one) may.</i>	pu-det , 2, -uit , or -itum est , impers., <i>it shames, (one) is ashamed.</i>
miseret , 2, -itum est , impers. [miser], <i>it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities.</i>	pūgnō , 1 [pūgna], <i>fight.</i>
ob-sistō , 3, -stitī , -stitum , <i>oppose, withstand, resist, w. dat.</i>	stultitia , -ae, f. [stultus , <i>foolish</i>], <i>folly.</i> (345. 11.)
oportet , 2, -uit , impers., <i>it is</i>	taedet , 2, -uit , or taesum est , impers., <i>it disgusts, wearies, (one) is disgusted.</i>
	vix , adv., <i>hardly, with difficulty.</i>

¹ A result clause, **ut**, etc.

² Compare 415. 3.

³ Compare I. 8.

⁴ Compare 415. 7.

⁵ **Fiēbat**.

⁶ **Rēs**.

2.

421.

FOR TRANSLATION.

THE DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW.

Lugete, o Veneres Cupidinesque,
 Et quantumst¹ hominum² venustiorum.
 Passer mortuus est meae puellae,
 Passer, deliciae meae puellae,
 Quem plus illa oculis³ suis amabat:
 Nam mellitus erat suamque⁴ norat⁵
 Ipsa⁶ tam bene quam puella matrem
 Nec sese a gremio illius⁷ movebat,
 Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc
 Ad solam dominam usque pipiabat.
 Qui⁸ nunc it per iter tenebricosum
 Illuc unde negant redire quemquam.⁹
 At vobis male sit,¹⁰ malae tenebrae
 Orci, quae omnia bella¹¹ devoratis:
 Tam bellum mihi¹² passerem abstulistis.
 O factum male!¹³ io miselle passer!
 Tua nunc opera¹⁴ meae puellae¹⁵
 Flendo turgiduli rubent¹⁶ ocelli. — *Catullus.*

¹ For *quantum est*. Translate, *all ye lovely ones, whoever ye are*. What is it literally?

² Depends on *quantum*. See 340.

³ Ablative after the comparative *plūs*. See 212.

⁴ Supply *dominam*.

⁵ For *nōverat*, but with the meaning of the imperfect.

⁶ With *puella*.

⁷ That is, *puellae*.

⁸ Refers to *passer*.

⁹ Subject acc. of *redire*. See 401 and 279. 6.

¹⁰ *Ill betide you!*

¹¹ From *bellus*.

¹² Translate *my*.

¹³ *Factum male*, *woful deed*. What is it literally?

¹⁴ *On your account*.

¹⁵ Genitive after *ocelli*.

¹⁶ *Turgiduli rubent*, *are all swollen and red*.

CHAPTER LXVI. 1.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. — GERUNDIVE.

[Review the participles of the regular and irregular verbs.]

422. The future active participle with the verb *sum* forms the FIRST, or ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: *amātūrus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., about to (going to, intending to) love.*

423. The gerundive with the verb *sum* forms the SECOND, or PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION: *amandus sum, eram, etc., I am, was, etc., to be loved; I deserve, ought, etc., to be loved.*

424.

PARADIGMS.

	ACTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus sum		amandus sum
IMPER.	amātūrus eram		amandus eram
FUT.	amātūrus erō		amandus erō
PERF.	amātūrus fuī		amandus fuī
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram		amandus fueram
F.P.	amātūrus fuerō		amandus fuerō
	etc.		etc.

425. *Examine the following: —*

- 1.** *Nōn dubitō quīn monitūrus sit, I do not doubt that he will advise.*
- 2.** *Nōn dubitō quīn futūrum sit ut id fiat, I do not doubt that (it will happen that it be done) it will be done.*
- 3.** *Sciēbam quid āctūrus essēs, I knew what you were going to do.*
- 4.** *Pontem faciendum cūrat, he (takes care a bridge to be built) has a bridge built.*
- 5.** *Dēlenda est Carthāgō, Carthage must be destroyed.*
- 6.** *Caesarī omnia erant agenda, everything had to be done by Caesar.*
- 7.** *Mihī scribendum est, (the duty of writing is to me) I must write.*

8. **Omnibus moriendum est**, (*the necessity of dying is to all*)
all must die.
9. **Vōbīs jūdicīō ūtendum est**, (*the duty of using judgment is to*
you) you ought to use judgment.

(1) The first three examples show how a future tense may be supplied for the subjunctive mood.

(2) Observe in the fourth example the use of the gerundive agreeing with a noun which is the object of *cūrō*, the whole expression denoting *to have a thing done*.

(3) The last five examples show some uses of the passive periphrastic conjugation. Notice that the idea of *necessity*, or *duty*, is prominent in these forms.

(4) In 7, 8, and 9 the verbs are used impersonally, that is, without any personal subject, the gerundive being in the nominative singular neuter. This impersonal use belongs to transitive verbs without an object expressed, and to intransitive verbs. For the case of *jūdicīō*, see 304.

(5) In the last four examples, *Caesarī*, *mihi*, *omnibus*, and *vōbīs*, denote in each case the person *to whom* there is a duty or necessity of doing something. This dative is most conveniently rendered with *by*, and is called the **Dative of Agent**.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX. — **The dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person by whom the act must be done.**¹

2.

427.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quis dubitat quān futūrī sītis doctī? 2. Quis dubitat quān lūdōs vīsūrī sīmus? 3. Nōn erat dubium quān lūdōs vīsūrus esset. 4. Nōlī dubitāre quān crās ventūrus sim. 5. Cōgnōvī quid āctūrus sit. 6. Audiam quid āctūrus sīs. 7. Cōgnōveram quid āctūrī essent. 8. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 9. Scribenda est mihi epistula. 10. Scribenda erat

¹ How is the agent with a verb in the passive otherwise and commonly expressed?

tibi epistula. 11. Oppidum militibus oppugnandum erit. 12. Hic liber mihi legendus est.

II. 1. There is no doubt that you are going to be a hero. 2. I doubt not that you will see the games. 3. Do not doubt¹ that he will be present. 4. Do you know what he is going to do? 5.² We ought to cultivate virtue. 6.² I must give the signal. 7.² We ought to read the poets. 8. The commander must be obeyed.³ 9. The boy is not to be believed. 10. The town had to be fortified.



428.

3.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus utrum ipse superaturus esset. 2. Non erat dubium quin Falisci sese Romanis dedituri essent. 3. Nisi vinum defecisset, plura et graviora dicturi fuimus. 4. Magnam in spem veniebat fore⁴ ut pertinacia desisteret hostis. 5. Cum Scipio, graviter vulneratus, in hostium manus jamjam venturus esset, filius eum periculo liberavit. 6. Hoc censeo et Carthaginem esse delendam. 7. Aemilius liberos Graecis litteris erudiendos⁵ curaverat. 8. Caesar dandum erat tuba signum. 9. Mihi nitendum est iudicio meo.⁶ 10. Ita nobis vivendum est, ut ad mortem parati simus.

II. 1. I will ask of the general whether he is going to advance. 2. Who doubts that the Romans will surrender themselves to the Faliscans? 3.⁷ If words had not failed, I was going to write a longer letter. 4. I think the enemy will be defeated. 5. When Caesar was on the point of

¹ *Noli dubitare.* How else may this be expressed?

² Express in two ways — by using *oportet*, and then by the gerundive.

³ Lit. *it must be obeyed to the commander.* Cf. 415. 6.

⁴ *Fore = futurum esse, to be about to be,* may be omitted in translation.

⁵ Compare 425. 4, and (2).

⁶ See 425. 9.

⁷ Compare I. 3.

starting¹ for Rome, he received a letter from Pompey. 6. My opinion is² that the town ought to be besieged. 7. These things must not be despised by³ us. 8. A wise man will have his boys trained⁴ in Latin literature.⁵ 9. The citizens⁶ must obey the laws. 10. The soldiers must use their own judgment.

429.

VOCABULARY.

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, a Roman consul.

cēseō, 2, -uī, -um, *estimate; think, deem, be of opinion.*

Croesus, -ī, m., *Croesus*, king of Lydia.

dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, (*put away from one's self*) *surrender, deliver up.*

dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**], (*make away from*) *revolt; fail, be wanting.*

dē-sistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum, (*stand off or apart*) *leave off, cease, desist.*

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of **doceō**], *learned.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, seriously.*

ita, adv., *thus, so.*

jamjam, adv., *already; jamjam ventūrus*, *on the point of coming.*

jūdicium, -ī, n. [**jūdicō**], *judgment, opinion.*

op-pūgnō, 1 [**ob**], *attack, assault, besiege.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n. [**ōrō**], *oracle.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of **parō**], *ready, prepared.*

pertinācia, -ae, f. [**pertināx**, *persistent*], *perseverance, obstinacy.* (345. 11.)

signum, -ī, n., *mark, sign, signal.*

ūtor, 3, **ūsus**, *use, employ*, w. abl.

utrum, adv., *whether.* Cf. **num**, 382.

jūdicō, **cēseō**, **exīstimō**, **arbitror**, **putō**, and **opīnor**, all mean *think*; but the first four imply more deliberation and reflection; primarily *think* as a judge, a magistrate, an appraiser, an arbiter; hence, in general, of official, authoritative opinion. **Putō** and **opīnor** imply rather private, personal judgment or opinion.

¹ *On the point of starting = already about to start.*

² *This I think.* Cf. I. 6.

³ See 425. (5).

⁴ Cf. I. 7, and 425. (2).

⁵ Compare 232. I. 4.

⁶ **Ā civibus**, to distinguish the agent from the indirect object.

CHAPTER LXVII.

GERUND. — GERUNDIVE. — SUPINE.

430. Learn the gerunds and supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

GERUND.

431. *Examine the following:—*

G. **Caesar loquendī finem facit**, *Caesar makes an end of speaking.*

Cupidus est tē audiendī, *he is desirous of hearing you.*

D. **Aqua ūtilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking.*

Ac. **Inter pūgnandum trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt**, *during the fight (amid the fighting) thirty ships were taken.*

Ab. **Mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

1. The above examples illustrate the use of the gerund in its several cases. It will be seen that the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *ing*. The nominative is supplied in Latin by the infinitive; *e.g.*, **vidēre est crēdere**, *seeing is believing*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. *Examine the following:—*

G. **Cōnsilia** { **urbem dēlendī**, } *plans for (of) destroying*
 { **urbis dēlendae**, } *the city.*

D. **Operam dat** { **agrōs colendō** (rare) } *he devotes himself to*
 { **agrīs colendīs**, } *tilling the fields.*

Ac. **Vēnērunt ad** { **pācem petendum** (rare) } *they came to sue*
 { **pācem petendam**, } *for peace.*

Ab. **Occupātus** { **litterās scrībendō** (rare) } *I was engaged in*
 sum in { **litterīs scrībendīs**, } *writing letters.*

1. What is to be particularly studied in the above examples is the difference between the gerund and the gerundive construction, as shown within the braces. Observe (1) that the **gerund** is put in the required case, and has its object in the accusative; (2) that the **noun** is put in the required case, and the gerundive agrees with it.

2. Except in the genitive, where the two constructions are about equally common, the gerundive construction is almost always preferred.

3. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad* denotes a purpose. This construction is much used. In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

SUPINE.

433. *Examine the following:—*

1. *Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum, ambassadors come to Rome to sue for peace.*
2. *Id perfacile est factū, that is very easy to do, or to be done.*

Observe in the first example that the supine *petītum* has the same meaning as *ut petant, quī petant, or ad petendam*; that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs of motion.

434. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

In the second example the supine in *ū* answers the question *in what respect?* *Perfacile factū, easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

The supine in *ū* is really an *ablative of specification.* See 260.

435.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Multī convēnere studiō¹ videndae novae urbis.*
 2. *Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est.* 3. *Ea² aquae causā³ hauriendae dēscenderat.* 4. *Brūtus ad explorandum cum equitibus antecēssit.* 5. *Militēs ad domum custodiendam ā rēge missī sunt.* 6. *Nēminī dubium est quīn Fabius rem Rōmānam cunctandō restituerit.* 7. *Is opportunus vīsus est locus commūniendō praesidiō.* 8. *Omnis spēs evādendī adempta est.* 9. *Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogātum.* 10. *Quod optimum est factū, faciam.*

¹ *From a desire; abl. of cause.*

² *She.* See 270. 2.

³ The ablative *causā, for the sake of,* follows its genitive.

II. 1. You will have time to lead (of leading) out the army from that place. 2. He undertook the war for the sake¹ of destroying the republic. 3. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 4. While drinking² we conversed about many things. 5. Many leaders had assembled to see³ Scipio. 6. Night put⁴ an end to the fighting. 7. This seems (to be) a suitable place for building a house. 8. The enemy had entertained⁵ the hope of getting possession of the camp.⁶ 9. A multitude of men came together to witness³ the games. 10. It is difficult to say what he will do.⁷

436.

VOCABULARY.

ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēptum
[emō], *take away, remove.*

alō, 3, -uī, -tum, *nourish, strengthen, support.*

ante-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, *go before.*

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support; pl. auxiliaries.*

col-loquor, 3, -locūtus [com], *speak together, converse.*

com-mūniō, 4, (fortify strongly) *secure, intrench.*

con-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [com], *come together, assemble.*

cunctor, 1, *linger, hesitate.*

edō, *edere* or *ēsse*, cēdi, ēsum or ēssum, *eat.*

ex-plōrō, 1, *search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.*

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius, a Roman general.*

hauriō, 4, **hausī**, **haustum**, *draw (water), drain, drink up.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune.*

re-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [statuō], *(replace) give back, return, restore.*

sus-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub, capiō], *undertake.*

¹ **Causā.** See p. 209, note 3.

² **Inter bibendum.**

³ Express in three ways.

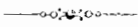
⁴ *Put an end to = make an end of.*

⁵ *Entertain the hope = come into the hope.*

⁶ What case with **potior**?

⁷ Why must the subjunctive be used? What tense of the subjunctive to express future time? What form expresses the immediate future?

READING LESSONS.



LETTERS: CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA.

✓ 437.

B.C. 49.

Sī valēs, bene est, valeō.¹ Dā operam² ut convalēscās. Quod opus³ erit, ut⁴ rēs tempusque postulat, prōvideās⁵ atque administrēs; et ad mē dē omnibus rēbus quam⁶ saepissimē litterās mittās. Valē.

438.

B.C. 49.

S. V. B. E. E.⁷ V. Valētūdinem tuam velim⁸ cūrēs⁹ diligentissimē.¹⁰ Nam mihi et¹¹ scriptum et nūntiātum est tē¹² in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod¹³ celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris litterīs certiōrem,¹⁴ fēcistī mihi grātum. Item posthāc, sī quid¹⁵ opus erit,¹⁶ sī quid acciderit novī,¹⁷ faciēs¹⁸ ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē.

¹ The Romans often began their letters with these five words, or rather with the abbreviations S. V. B. E. V.

² Give labor = try.

³ An indeclinable noun, *need*; **opus est**, is necessary.

⁴ What indicates that **ut** does not mean *in order that*?

⁵ The hortatory subjunctive. See 390.

⁶ **Quam** strengthens the superlative; **quam saepissimē**, as often as possible.

⁷ For *ego*.

⁸ *I could wish*; **volō**, I wish.

⁹ Equivalent to **ut cūrēs**.

¹⁰ Notice the emphatic position of the adverb, after the verb.

¹¹ **Et . . . et**, both . . . and.

¹² Subj. of **incidisse**. See 401.

¹³ *In that*.

¹⁴ **Fēcistī . . . certiōrem**, made more certain = *informed*.

¹⁵ *Anything*; **quid** is regularly used instead of **aliquid** after **sī, nisi, nē**, and **num**.

¹⁶ See note 3, above.

¹⁷ *Of new*; partitive genitive.

¹⁸ A future equivalent to the imperative. **Faciēs ut sciam**, *inform me*. What is it literally?

439.

B.C. 46.

Sī valēs, bene est.¹ Cōstituerāmus, ut² ad tē antea scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem³ Caesarī mittere; sed mūtāvimus cōsiliū, quia dē illius⁴ adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēteris rēbus, etsi nihil erat novī,⁵ tamen quid velīmus⁶ et quid hōc tempore putēmus⁶ opus⁷ esse ex Siccā⁸ poteris cōgnōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā⁹ dīligenter. Valē.

440.

B.C. 46.

¹⁰S. V. B. E. V. Nōs neque dē Caesaris adventū neque dē lītterīs quās Philotīmus habēre dīcitur, quidquam¹¹ adhūc certū¹² habēmus. Sī quid erit certū, faciam tē statim certiōrem.¹³ Valētūdinem tuam fac¹⁴ ut cūrēs. Valē.

¹ Compare this form of beginning a letter with those of the two preceding.

² Compare the use of **ut** in 437, line 2.

³ That is, his son Cicero.

⁴ That is, Caesar's.

⁵ Genitive neuter of **novus** depending on **nihil**. Compare the same word in 438, and the note.

⁶ Translate the words **quid velīmus**, etc., just as they stand.

⁷ Compare **opus erit** in 437 and 438, and the note.

⁸ A friend of Cicero.

⁹ Compare with this the beginning and the ending of 438.

¹⁰ Observe how nearly this letter

can be translated in the order of the Latin words.

¹¹ *Anything at all*. To express *anything at all*, after a negative word, as here after **neque**, the Romans used **quidquam**, not **aliquid**. See 279. 6.

¹² Genitive neuter of **certus**, depending on **quidquam**. Compare **novī** in 438 after **quid**, and in 439 after **nihil**.

¹³ Compare **fēcistī certiōrem** in 438, and the note.

¹⁴ See p. 150, note. **Fac ut cūrēs**, *be sure to take care*. What is the literal meaning? Compare with this the endings of the two preceding letters.

FABLES.

441. DE VITIIS HOMINUM.

Jūppiter nōbīs¹ duās pērās imposuit: alteram,² quae nostris vitis replēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit; alteram² autem, quā³ aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus nostrum⁴ suspendit. Quārē nōn vidēmus quae⁵ ipsī peccāmus; sī autem aliī peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

442. MULIER ET GALLĪNA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallinam, quae eī⁶ cotīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit illam⁷ aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallinam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod⁸ in aliīs gallinīs reperīrī solet.⁹ Itaque dum mājōribus dīvitīs inhiat,¹⁰ etiam minōrēs¹¹ perdidit.

443. VULPĒS ET ŪVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta¹² ad illam subsiliit omnium vīrium snārum contentiōne,¹³ sī eam forte attingere posset.

¹ With *imposuit*; *has placed on us.*

² *Alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.*

³ *Quā = in quā pērā.*

⁴ Compare *ante pectus nostrum* with *post tergum nōbīs.*

⁵ *What we sin = what sins we commit.* On *ipsī*, see 270. 4.

⁶ *For her.*

⁷ *Illam = illam gallinam,* subject of *cēlāre.*

⁸ *Nisi quod = praeter id quod.*

⁹ *Is wont = is usually.*

¹⁰ *Gapes for = is greedy for.* Notice here a peculiarity of the Latin: the present is used after *dum*, though the perfect *perdidit* follows. The English idiom requires us to translate such a present by the imperfect, *was greedy for.*

¹¹ Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

¹² Perfect participle of *cōnspicor*, agreeing with *vulpēs.* Translate by the present participle.

¹³ *With the exertion.*

Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns, “At nunc etiam,” inquit, “acerbae¹ sunt, nec eās¹ in viā repertās² tollerem.”³

444. RŪSTICUS ET CANIS FIDĒLIS.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Fīliolum, quī in cūnīs jacēbat, reliquit canī⁴ fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum.⁵ Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet,⁶ cūnās simul ēvertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret,⁷ irā accenditur.⁸ Temerē igitur custōdem fīliolī interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās restituit,⁹ super anguem occisum reperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris¹⁰ sēra¹¹ fuit.

445. PUER MENDĀX.

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,¹² atque per jocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque¹³ lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē clūsōs ā puerō vidērunt. Deinde¹⁴ cum ipse¹⁵ lupus aggredērētur, et puer rē vērā¹⁶ implōrāret au-

¹ The plural, as if *ūvae* had been used.

² *Eās repertās*, them found = if I had found them.

³ *Would I pick them up.*

⁴ The so called dative of the agent with *custōdiendum*. Translate, *left for his . . . dog to guard.*

⁵ *Literally, to be guarded.*

⁶ See p. 213, note 10.

⁷ For the subjunctive, see 373.

⁸ Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

⁹ Translate as if it were *restituerat*; after *ubi*, *ut*, and *postquam*, meaning *when*, the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

¹⁰ Translate, *for the deed.*

¹¹ *Too late.*

¹² The imperfect, denoting customary action; render, *used to tend.*

¹³ *But . . . not.*

¹⁴ See p. 106, note 1.

¹⁵ *Really.* See 270. G.

¹⁶ *Rē vērā*, in earnest.

xilium, nēmō gregī subvēnit,¹ et ovēs lupī praeda² sunt factae. Mendācī hominī³ nōn crēdīmus, etiam cum vēra dīcit.

446.

SENEX ET MORS.

Senex quīdam līgna in silvā cecīderat,⁴ et, fascē in unērōs sublātō,⁵ domum redīre coepit. Cum fatīgātus esset⁶ et onere et itinere, dēposuit līgna, et, senectūtis⁷ et inopiae⁷ miserīās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit mortem, ut sē omnibus malīs⁸ liberāret. Mox adest⁹ mors et interrogat quid vellet. Tum senex perterritus: "Prō! hunc līgnōrum fascem, quaesō, unērīs¹⁰ meis impōnās."¹¹

447.

VULPĒS ET LEŌ.

Vulpēs nunquam leōnem vīderat. Cum huīc forte occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur¹² formīdine.¹³ Eundem cōspicāta est iterum. Tum extimuit illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut antea. Cum tertiō¹⁴ leōnī obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,¹⁵ ut auderet¹² accēdere propius et colloquī cum eō.

¹ Cf. *succurrō*. See 343. How does the meaning *help* come from the primitive meaning?

² Predicate nominative.

³ Why dative? See 343.

⁴ From *caedō*, not *cadō*.

⁵ From *tollō*, not *sufferō*.

⁶ For the subjunctive, see 373.

⁷ Notice the order: the genitives coming first are made emphatic.

⁸ Abl. of separation. See 130.

⁹ See p. 214, note 8.

¹⁰ *Umeris . . . impōnās*, cf. *nōbis . . . imposuit* in 441.

¹¹ *Quaesō impōnās = quaesō ut impōnās*.

¹² Is this clause a *purpose* or *result* clause? See illustrative examples, 352 and 368.

Are the clauses beginning with *cum* *temporal* or *causal*? Read again the illustrative examples, 372 and 374.

¹³ *Of fright*.

¹⁴ *The third time*.

¹⁵ *To such a degree was not frightened = was so far from being frightened*.

CÆSAR'S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN.

448. [In the latter part of the summer of B.C. 55, Cæsar brought his ships together into the country of the Morini, who occupied the seacoast from the modern Boulogne northward, and set sail for Britain.]

Caesar ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod¹ inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs² undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam³ superiōre aestāte⁴ effēcerat clāssē jubet convenīre.

Nactus⁵ idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē⁶ vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ūlteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequī jūssit. Ipse hōrā⁷ circiter diēi quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Hunc⁸ ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs⁹ exspectāvit. Tum ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum,¹⁰ datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter

¹ *Because.*

² Subject acc., together with *clāssē*, of *convenīre*.

³ Goes with *clāssē*. Translate aloud the whole sentence, first following strictly the order of the Latin words, and rendering *quam*, *what*. Probably the meaning will then be clear, and your translation can be recast into good English.

This method of discovering the meaning of a Latin sentence, as distinguished from that of trying to determine first the subject and predicate, and then the modifiers of each, will often be found very helpful.

⁴ Ablative of time when. See **136**.

⁵ From *nanciscor*. Cf. *nacti*, p. 220, line 1.

⁶ See p. 154, note 1. In translating to *jūssit*, observe the suggestion in note 3.

⁷ Translate as if the order were *circiter quartā hōrā diēi*, but observe that *circiter* is here an adverb, and *hōrā* has the construction of *aestāte*, line 4, and *vigiliā*, line 6.

⁸ Goes with *locum*.

⁹ In *ancorīs*, *at anchor*.

¹⁰ Goes with *ventum* and *aestum*.

mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō litore¹ nāvēs cōstituit. At barbarī, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi² prohibēbant.

[It seemed for a time as if Cæsar would not be able to effect a landing at all. The Britons, *barbari*, as Cæsar calls them, some standing on the edge of the shore, or advancing into the water, others driving in their horses with their two-wheeled chariots a little way, to get nearer to the ships, fought the Romans manfully. But they had to deal with an enemy as brave and determined as themselves, and the Romans were fighting under the eye of Cæsar. At last one daring soldier showed them how to conquer.]

Is³ quī decimac legiōnis aquilam ferēbat contestātus deōs ut ea rēs⁴ legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret, “Dēsilitē,” inquit,⁵ “militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum⁶ rēi pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum⁷ vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī⁸ inter sē, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiliērunt.⁹ Pūgnātum est ab utrisque¹⁰ acriter. Nostrī tamen in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

[As a result of this fight, and of some subsequent defeats, the Britons submitted to Cæsar, who soon after returned to Gaul.

¹ We should expect in *litore*.

² From *disembarking*. Cf. *prōgressus, ēgrediendum, prōgredi*, above. It is by vigilant observation in reading, and comparison of different forms from the same root, rather than from incessant resort to vocabularies and dictionaries, that the task of getting a working knowledge of Latin words is to be accomplished. “Recollect that brains and common sense, not thumbs, should get most exercise.”

³ Subject of *inquit*. Observe the suggestion of p. 216, note 3.

⁴ Do not translate *thing*.

⁵ Always placed after one or more of the words quoted.

⁶ *Meum . . . officium*, *my to the public and to the general duty*. Mark the order, and see how it gives emphasis to *meum*.

⁷ *When*, not *with*. See 373.

⁸ *Cohortātī inter sē*, *encouraging each other*.

⁹ Cf. *dēsilitē*, above.

¹⁰ From *uterque*.

The following summer, B.C. 54, Cæsar prepared for a second invasion of Britain. With about 20,000 foot-soldiers and 2,000 horsemen, he set sail from Portus Itius, which is probably the modern Wissant, and landed in the neighborhood of Deal. There are many reasons for supposing that these were the places of the embarkation and landing of the preceding year.]

Caesar ad portum Itium, quō ex portū commodissimum¹ in Britanniam trājectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter² milium passuum trīgintā ā continentī, cum legiōnibus pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit sexāgintā nāvēs,³ quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rējectās⁴ cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invēnit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius⁵ Galliae convēnit numerō⁶ milium quattuor, principēsque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē⁷ fidem perspexerat,⁸ relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō⁹ sēcūm dūcere dēcreverat;¹⁰ quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus, quod cōrus ventus nāvigatiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit,¹¹ tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem¹² militēs equitēsque cōnscondere¹³ in nāvēs jubet.

¹ **Commodissimum . . . trājectum.** Compare the order in line 2, p. 216, and 7, p. 217. In trying this first sentence, change mentally the order **quō ex** to **ex quō**; then observe the suggestion of note 3, p. 216.

² Cf. **circiter milia passuum**, p. 216, line 13.

³ Subject acc. of **potuisse** and **revertisse**. Try this sentence by the method already recommended.

⁴ From **rēiciō**.

⁵ For irregularity of declension, see 200.

⁶ *In number = to the number.* 260.

⁷ *In sē, towards himself.*

⁸ Cf. **cōspexit**, p. 216, line 9.

⁹ **Obsidum locō**, *in the place of hostages = as hostages.*

¹⁰ From **dēcernō**.

¹¹ From **cōnsuēscō**.

¹² **Idōneam nactus tempestātem.** Cf. p. 216, line 5.

¹³ **Cōnscondere in nāvēs.** Cf. **nāvēs cōnscondere**, p. 216, l. 7.

Labiēnō¹ in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque² in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro³ tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legiōnibus⁴ et pari numero equitum quem⁵ in continentem relinquebat solis occasu nave⁶ solvit; et leni Africo pro vectus, orta luce⁷ sub sinistra⁸ Britanniam relictam conspexit.

Accessum⁹ est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano ferē¹⁰ tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum¹¹ magna manus eo convenissent, multitudinem navium perterritae, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.¹²

Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo cauto, ubi ex captivis cognovit quo in loco¹³ hostium copiae consedisent,¹⁴ de¹⁵ tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit. Noctum progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus¹⁶ est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostris prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se¹⁷ in silvas

¹ Labiēnō . . . relicto. See 412.

² Quaeque = et quae. The que connects provideret and cognosceret: and might find out what was going on in Gaul.

³ Pro tempore et pro re, as the time and circumstances required.

⁴ Quinque legiōnibus. See top of page 218.

⁵ Pari . . . quem, with a number equal (to that) which.

⁶ Naves solvit: cf. p. 216, line 6.

⁷ Orta luce, light having arisen = at daybreak; orta, from orior.

⁸ Supply manū; under the left hand = on the left.

⁹ Accessum est ad, it was one to = they reached. See 415 (2).

¹⁰ See p. 154, note 1.

¹¹ Concessive. See 375.

¹² From abdo.

¹³ Quo in loco, in what place. Compare for order quo ex portu, p. 218, line 1.

¹⁴ From consido.

¹⁵ During. Cf. p. 216, lines 5 and 6.

¹⁶ Compare for meaning conspexit, line 7.

¹⁷ Se abdidērunt: cf. line 13.

abdidērunt, locum nacti¹ ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī² prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi³ prohibēbant. At milītēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adjectō,⁴ locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius⁵ Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et⁶ quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqū volēbat.

Postrīdiē ejus diēi māne tripartītō milītēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs quī fūgerant⁷ persequerentur.

[While Caesar was in pursuit of the enemy, messengers came to tell him that a violent wind had dashed his ships upon the shore and broken up many of them, so that he was obliged to return. Ten days were spent in hauling the ships up on land and strongly intrenching them; then, leaving men to guard and repair them, he resumed his advance.

Caesar crossed the Thames where the river was fordable, at what point is uncertain, meeting all the time with a determined resistance from the Britons, but at last forcing them to submission. The brave Cassivellaunus, chief of the Britons, did his best to defend his country, and showed himself a worthy antagonist even of Caesar; nor would he yield to the Roman till his principal dependents had dispersed with their troops and deserted him. The autumnal equinox was now at hand, and Caesar thought it unsafe to remain longer in Britain.]

Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcīt ad mare, nāvēs⁸ invenit reffectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnūm numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant⁹ nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īstituit, ac,

¹ Cf. p. 216, line 5, and note.

² *Here and there.*

³ **Ingrēdi prohibēbant:** cf. **ingrēdi prohibēbant,** p. 217, line 3, and note.

⁴ From **adiciō.**

⁵ *Too far.*

⁶ *Both.*

⁷ Distinguish between **fugiō** and **fugō.**

⁸ We should expect **nāvēsque.**

⁹ From **dēperō.**

summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā initā¹ cum solvisset² vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

THE CUSTOMS AND HABITS OF THE BRITONS.

449. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs³ in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum⁴ dīcunt; maritima pars ab iīs quī praedae ac bellī inferendī⁵ causā⁶ ex Belgīs trānsierant. Hominum est īfīnīta multītūdō crēberrimaque aedificia, ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia; pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere,⁷ aut nummō aereō, aut taleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ējus exīgua est cōpia. Māteria cūjusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās⁸ nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.⁹

Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī¹⁰ Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuetūdīne. Interiōrēs plērique¹¹ frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne¹² vivunt, pellibusque sunt

¹ From *incō*; with *vigiliā*.

² Cf. p. 216, line 6, and p. 219, line 6.

³ *Quōs nātōs*, whom (to have been) born in the island itself, by memory (to have been) handed down, they say. That is, who, they say, according to tradition (*memoriā prōditum*), were born in the island itself.

⁴ Supply *esse*, as also with *nātōs*.

⁵ How otherwise might this be?

⁶ *Praedae . . . causā*. See p. 209, note 1.

⁷ From *aes*.

⁸ Supply *esse*.

⁹ *For the sake of their mind and pleasure = for pastime*. Cf. for the order *praedae . . . causā*, note 6.

¹⁰ Understand *ii*, those, as the antecedent of *quī*. See p. 130, note 3.

¹¹ *Interiōrēs plērique*, the people of the interior for the most part.

¹² From *carō*.

vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc¹ horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū;² capillōque³ sunt prōmissō atque omī parte⁴ corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

¹ *On this account.*

² *In appearance. See 260.*

³ **Capillō . . . prōmissō:** descriptive ablative (341). *They are with long hair = they let their hair grow long.*

⁴ **Parte . . . rāsā:** another descriptive ablative. *They are with every part of the body shaven = they shave the whole body.* **Rāsā,** from **rādō.**

VOCABULARIES.



LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem*. It is on this ground that such instances will be found as *metus* referred to *metuō*, and *metuō* to *metus*. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem *metu*.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupil should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā or ab

ā or ab, prep. w. abl., *away from, by*.
ab-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *remove, conceal*. Cf. cōlō.
ab-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take off*.
ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go from, go off, go away*. (327.)
ab-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw off, throw down*.
abieſ, -etis, f., *fir-tree*. (11. 4.)
ab-sum, -esse, ſuī, *be away, absent, distant*; with ā or ab and abl.
āc, conj., *see atque*.
ac-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum [ad], *go or come near, approach*. ACCEDE.
 Cf. appropinquō.
ac-cendō, 3, -dī, -cēnsūm [ad, and supposed candō], *kindle, inflame*.
accidō, 3, -cidi, — [ad, cadō], *fall upon, fall out, happen*. ACCIDENT.
 Cf. incidō and eveniō.
accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad, capiō], *(take to), receive, accept; suffer*.

ad-imō

accūsō, 1 [ad, causa], *accuse*.
ācer, āeris, āere, adj., *sharp, keen; active*. (150.) ACERB. Cf. acūtus.
acerbus, -a, -um, adj. [ācer], *bitter, sour, harsh*.
aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge; order of battle*.
ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly*.
acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [acuō, sharpen], *sharp*. Cf. ācer.
ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near*.
ad-eō, adv., *to this, thus far; so, so very*.
ad-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go to, approach, visit*. (327.)
ad-ferō, adferre, attulī, allātum (adl), *bear to, bring*. (321.)
ad-hūc, adv., *hitherto, up to this time*.
ad-flō, 1, *blow upon*.
ad-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *(throw to or against), add, join to*.
ad-imō, 3, -ēmī, -ēemptum [emō], *(take to one's self from another), take away, remove*.

- ad-īpīscor**, 3, adeptus [apīscor], *get, obtain*. Cf. potior.
- ad-jūngō**, 3, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *add, join*. ADJUNCT.
- ad-juvō**, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, *aid, help*.
- ad-mīnistrō**, 1, *manage, do, perform, administer*.
- ad-mīror**, 1, *wonder at, admire*.
- ad-modum**, adv., *very*.
- ad-moveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (*move up or towards*), *apply, employ*.
- ad-orior**, 4, -ortus (*rise up against*), *attack*. Cf. aggredior.
- ad-rēpō**, 3, -rēpsī, -rēptum, *creep towards, steal slowly up*.
- ad-spiciō** (asp), 3, -spexī, -spectum [ad, speciō], *look at; look*.
- adspectus**, -ūs, m. [adspiciō], *sight, appearance, aspect*.
- ad-sum**, -esse, -fui (affui), *be present, stand by, side with*, w. dat.
- adolēscēns**, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscō, grow], *youth, young person*. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. juvenis.
- ad-veniō**, 4, -venī, -ventum, *come to, arrive*. Cf. perveniō.
- adventus**, -ūs, m. [adveniō], *approach, arrival*. ADVENT.
- ad-versus**, prep. w. acc., *against, towards*.
- ad-versus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of advertō], *opposite, opposed, adverse; res adversae, adversity*.
- aedificium**, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building*. EDIFICE.
- aedificō**, 1 [aedis, faciō], *build*.
- aedis** (ēs), -is, f., *building, temple; plur., house*.
- aeger**, aegra, aegrum, adj., *sick, weak, feeble*. (71.)
- Aemilius**, -ī, m., *Aemilius, a Roman consul*. (79.)
- aequālis**, -e, adj. [aequus], *equal; noui, equal in age, companion*.
- aequus**, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal; calm*.
- āēr**, āēris, m., *air*.
- aereus**, -a, -um [aes], *of copper, of bronze*.
- aes**, aeris, n., *copper, bronze; money*.
- aestās**, -ātis, f., *summer*.
- aestus**, -ūs, m., *tide*.
- aetās**, -ātis, f., *age, time of life*. (105.)
- af-fligō**, 3, -xī, -ctum [ad], *cast down, prostrate, ruin*.
- Āfrica**, -ae, f., *Africa*.
- Āfricānus**, -ī, m. [Africa], *Africanus, surname of Scipio*.
- Āfricus**, -ī, m., *south-west (wind)*.
- ager**, agrī, m., *field, territory*. Cf. campus. (65.)
- agger**, -eris, m. [ad, gerō], (*what is carried to*, i.e.) *materials for a mound; mound, rampart*.
- aggredior**, 3, -gressus [ad, gradior], *go to; attack*. AGGRESSIVE. Cf. adorior.
- agitō**, 1 [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, vex, chase*. AGITATE.
- āgnōscō**, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [ad, (g)nōscō, know], *recognize*. Cf. cōgnōscō.
- agō**, 3, ēgī, āctum, *drive, lead, act, do*.
- agricola**, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer*.
- agri cultūra**, -ae, f. [ager, colō], *agriculture*. Cf. agricola.
- āla**, -ae, f., *wing*.
- albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white*. Cf. candidus.
- Alexander**, -drī, m., *Alexander, king of Macedon*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [alius], *belonging to another; another's*. ALIEN.

- alimentum**, -ī, n. [alō], *nourishment, food, provisions.*
- aliquandō**, adv. [alius], *at some time, ever; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.
- aliquis**, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some.* (279.)
- alius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another.* (201.)
- al-loquor** [ad], 3, -locūtus [ad], *speak to, address.*
- alō**, 3, -uī, -itum and -tum, *nourish, support, strengthen; keep.*
- Alpēs**, -ium, f., *the Alps.*
- alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; asnum, adj., second.* (200.)
- altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*
- ambō**, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both.*
- ambulō**, 1, *walk, take a walk.*
- America**, -ae, f., *America.*
- amicitia**, -ae, f. [amicus], *friendship.*
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly; noun, friend.*
- ā-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send away, let go, lose.* Cf. perdō.
- amnis**, -is, m., *river.* (154, 172.)
- amō**, 1, *love, like, be fond of.* (319.)
- amplus**, -a, -um, adj., *large, splendid, renowned.* AMPLE.
- an**, conj., *or*, used in the second member of a double question.
- ancilla**, -ae, f., *maid-servant.*
- ancora**, -ae, f., *anchor.*
- Ancus**, -ī, *Ancus, fourth king of Rome.*
- Androclus**, -ī, m., *Androclus.*
- anguis**, -is, m., *snake, serpent.* (154.)
- angustiae**, -ārum, f. [angustus, *narrow*], *narrow pass.* Cf. Eng. "narrows."
- animal**, -ālis, n. [animā, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (149.)
- animus**, -ī, m., *mind, soul, spirit.* (273.)
- annus**, -ī, m., *year.* ANNUAL.
- ānser**, -eris, m., *goose.*
- ante**, prep. w. acc., *before.*
- anteā**, adv. [ante], *before.*
- ante-cēdō**, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go before.* Cf. antecō.
- ante-cō**, -īre, -īī, —, *go before, surpass.* Cf. antecēdō.
- antiquus**, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus.
- ānulus**, -ī, m., *ring, finger-ring.*
- aper**, aprī, m., *wild boar.*
- aperiō**, 4, -uī, -tum, *open.*
- apertus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of apcriō], *uncovered, open.*
- ap-pellō**, 1 [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.
- ap-petō**, 3, -īvī, or -īī, -itum [ad], *seek after, strive for.*
- ap-propinquō**, 1 [ad], *come near, approach.* Cf. accēdō.
- aptō**, 1, *fit, apply, adjust.* ADAPT.
- apud**, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*
- Āpūlia**, -ae, f., *Apulia, a division of Italy.*
- aqua**, -ae, f., *water.* AQUATIC.
- aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle.*
- āra**, -ae, f., *altar.*
- arātrum**, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.*
- arbitror**, 1, *think, suppose, believe.* (429.)
- arbor**, -oris, f., *tree.*
- arceō**, 2, -uī, -tum, *keep off.*
- arcus**, -ūs, m., *bow.* ARC.
- Ariovistus**, -ī, m., *Ariovistus, king of a German tribe.*
- arma**, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons, tools.*
- armō**, 1 [arma], *arm, equip.*
- arō**, 1, *plough.*

Arpīnum, -ī, n., *Arpinum*, a town in Italy.

ars, artis, f., *art*.

arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field*.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*. (163.)

Ascalaphus, -ī, m., *Ascalaphus*.

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh, severe*. ASPERITY.

asylum, -ī, n., *place of refuge, asylum*.

at, conj., *but*. (393.)

āter, -tra, -trum, adj., *black, sable*.

Athēnae, -ārum, f., *Athens*.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., [Athēnae], *of Athens, Athenian*.

at-que (before vowels and consonants, āc before consonants only) [ad, in addition], *and also, and especially, and*. Cf. et and -que.

atrōx, -ōcis, adj. [āter], *savage, fierce, harsh, cruel*. ATRŌCIOUS.

Atticus, -ī, m., *Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.

attingō, 3, -tigī, -tactum [ad, tangō], *touch, approach, arrive at, reach*.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō. increase], *maker, author*.

auctōritās, -ātis, f. [auctor], *counsel, advice, authority*.

audācter, adv. [audāx], *boldly*.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold*. (164). AUDACIOUS.

audeō, 2, ausus [audāx], *dare, be bold*. (p. 177, note 2.)

audiō, 4, *hear, listen*. (223.) AUDIENCE.

au-ferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away*. (321.) ABLATIVE.

augeō, 2, auxī, auctum, *increase, enlarge*.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden*.

auris, -is, f., *ear*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

aut, conj., *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*. Cf. vel.

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover*. (393.)

autumnus, -ī, m., *autumn*.

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support*; plur., *auxiliaries*.

avārus, -a, -um, adj., *greedy, rapacious*. AVARICIOUS.

āv-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, *turn away from, avert*.

avis, -is, f., *bird*. (154.)

avunculus, -ī, m. [diminutive of avus], *(maternal) uncle*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, barbarous, barbarian*.

bcātus, -a, -um, adj. [bcō, bless], *blessed, happy*. BEATITUDE.

Belgae, -ārum, m., *the Belyae, a Gallic tribe*.

bellō, 1 [bellum], *war, carry on war*. Cf. bellum gerō.

bellum, -ī, n. [bellō], *war*. (38.)

bellus, -a, -um, adj., *pretty, charming, lovely*.

bene, adv. [bonus], *well*.

beneficium, -ī n. [bene, faciō], *benefit, favor*.

benignē, adv. [benignus], *kindly*.

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus], *(of good birth), kind, good*. BENIGNANT.

bēstia, -ae, f., *beast*.

bibō, 3, bibī, pōtum, *drink*. IMBIBE.

bonum, -ī, n. [bonus], *good thing, blessing*; plur., *goods, possessions*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. melior, superl. optimus; *good*. (71, 208.)

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *ox, cow*. (262.)

Bostonia, -ae, f., *Boston*.

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, brief*.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., *the Britons*.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus, a Roman surname*.

C., abbreviation for *Gājus*.

cachinnō, l, *laugh aloud*. Cf. rīdēō.

cadō, 3, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*.

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.

caedō, 3, cecidī, caesum, *cut, cut to pieces; kill*.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven*.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [for caeruleus, from caelum], *dark-blue*.

Caesar, (J.), -aris, m., *Julius Caesar, a famous Roman*.

Cāius, -ī, m. See *Gājus*.

calathus, -ī, m., *basket*.

calcar, -āris, n. [calx, *heel*], *spur*. (149.)

callēns, -entis, adj. [P. of calleō, *be hard*], *hard, tough*.

calliditās, -ātis, f. [callidus, *cunning*], *shrewdness, cunning*.

calor, -ōris, m. [caleō, *be warm*], *heat, warmth*. CALORIC.

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania, a division of Italy*.

campus, -ī, m., *field*. CAMP. Cf. ager.

candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candeō, *shine*], *bright, fair, white*. CANDID. Cf. albus.

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog*. (153.) CANINE.

Cannae, -ārum, f., *Cannae, a village in Apulia*.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannae*.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Kent (in Britain)*.

cantō, l [canō], *sing*. CHANT.

cantus, -ūs, m. [canō], *singing, song*. (278.) CHANT.

capillus, -ī, m., *hair (of the head)*. CAPILLARY.

capiō, 3, cēpī, captum, *take, seize* (235); cōnsilium capiō, *adopt a plan*. CAPTURE.

captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner*.

caput, -ītis, n., *head*. (105.) CAPITAL.

Carbō, -ōnis, m., *Carbo, a Roman*.

carcer, -eris, m., *prison*. INCARCERATE.

careō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be without, want*.

carmen, -inīs, n., *song, poem*. (278.)

carō, carnis, f., *flesh*.

carpō, 3, -sī, -tum, *pluck*.

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon, cart*. CAR.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthāgō], *of Carthage, Carthaginian*.

Carthāgō, -inīs, f., *Carthage, a town in Africa*.

Carthāgō Nova, *a town in Spain*.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious*.

castra, -ōrum, n., *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; mischance, misfortune, chance*.

catellus, -ī, m. [diminutive of catulus], *little dog, puppy*.

Catīlina, -ae, m., *Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator*.

Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato, a celebrated Roman censor*.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; causā* (after a genitive), *for the sake*.

caveō, 2, cāvī, cantum, *beware, guard against*.

- cēdō**, 3, cēssī, cēssum, *go, depart, withdraw; grant.*
- celer**, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift.* (179.)
CELERITY.
- celeriter**, adv. [celer], *swiftly.*
- cēlō**, 1, *conceal.* Cf. abdō.
- cēnseo**, 2, -uī, -um, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* CENSURE. (429.)
- centum**, num. adj., indecl., *hundred.* CENT.
- Cerēs**, -eris, F., *Ceres, goddess of agriculture.* CEREAL.
- certē**, adv. [certus], *certainly, surely, of course.*
- certō**, 1, *contend, strive, vie with.*
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, determined, certain, sure; certiore[m] faciō, make (one) more certain, inform.*
- [cēterus], -a, -um, adj. (usually in plur.), *the other, the rest.*
- cibus**, -ī, M., *food.* Cf. pābulum.
- Cicerō**, -ōnis, M., *Cicero, a famous Roman orator.*
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, M., *the Cimbri, a German tribe.*
- cingō**, 3, cinxī, cinctum, *bind, encircle, surround.*
- circiter**, adv. [circus, circle], *round about; about.*
- circum-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead around.*
- circum-siliō**, 4, -iī, — [saliō], *jump or hop around.*
- circum-venīō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, *surround; circumvent.*
- cīvis**, -is, M. and F., *citizen.* (154.)
- cīvītās**, -ātis, F. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state; citizenship.* CITY.
- clādēs**, -is, F., *destruction, defeat, disaster.*
- clāmitō**, 1 [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.* Cf. exclāmō.
- clāmor**, -ōris, M. [clāmō], *shout, cry.* CLAMOR.
- clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *clear, renowned, famous; loud.*
- clāssis**, -is, F., *class of citizens; fleet.* (154.)
- cliēns**, -entis, M., *client.* (163.)
- coepī**, coepisse (defective verb, tenses from pres. stem wanting), *began.*
- coercō**, 2, -uī, -itum [co(m), arceō, inclose], *confine, check, restrain.*
- cōgnōscō**, 3, -nōvī, -nitum [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, recognize, know.* Cf. āgnōscō.
- cōgō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctum [com, agō], *drive together, compel.*
- co-hortor**, 1 [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage.*
- Collātinus**, -ī, M., *Collatinus, surname of Lucius Tarquinius.*
- collōga (conl)**, -ae, M. [legō], (*one who is chosen with another*), *colleague.*
- colligō (conl)**, 3, -lēgī, -lectum [com, legō], *collect.*
- collis**, -is, M., *hill.* (154.) Cf. mōns.
- colloquium**, -ī, N. [colloquor], *conversation, colloquy.*
- col-loquor**, 3, -locūtus [com], *speak together, converse.*
- colō**, 3, coluī, cultum, *cultivate, till.* Cf. incolā, agricolā.
- colōnia**, -ae, F. [colōnus, husbandman, colō], *colony.*
- color**, -ōris, M., *color.*
- columba**, -ae, F., *dove.*
- com** (col, con, cor, co), primitive form of **cum**, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive.
- comes**, -itis, M. and F. [comitor (com, cō)], *comrade, companion.*

comitor, 1 [comes], *accompany, attend.*
commeātus, -ūs, m. [commeō, *go to and fro*], *passage, trip, expedition.*
com-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -mīssum, (*join together*), *commit*; proelium committere, *join battle, engage, begin fighting.*
com-modus, -a, -um, adj. (*that has proper measure*), *convenient, suitable.*
com-moror, 1, *stay, linger, delay, remain.*
com-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate.* COMMOTIO.
com-mūniō, 4, (*fortify strongly*), *secure, intrench.*
com-periō, 4, -perī, -pertum, *ascertain, learn, find out.*
com-pleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill out, fill up.* Cf. impleō.
com-primō, 3, -pressī, -pressum [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*
con-cutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussum [com, quatiō], *shake violently.*
cōn-ferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum (coni), [com], *bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, betake one's self.* CONFER.
cōn-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -factum [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out.*
cōn-fiteor, 2, -fessus [com, fateor], *confess.*
cōn-figō, 3, -xī, -etum [com], *con-tend, fight.* CONFLICT.
con-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [com, jaciō], (*throw together*), *throw, hurl.*
con-junx, -jugis, m. and f. [com, jungō, *join*], *spouse, wife; husband.*

cōnor, 1, *attempt, try.*
cōn-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsum, [com, scandō, *climb*], *ascend, embark; go on board.*
cōn-sequor, 3, -cūtus [com], *follow close upon; follow.*
cōn-sidō, 3, -sēdī, -sēssum [com], (*sit together*), *encamp.*
cōnsilium, -ī, n. [cōnsulō, cōnsul], *advice, counsel, prudence; plan, design.*
cōn-similis, -e, adj., *very similar, quite like.*
cōn-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe, see, behold.*
cōn-spicor, 1, [cōnspiciō], *see at a glance, descry, catch sight of.*
cōnstāns, -antis, adj., [P. of cōnstō], *firm, steady.*
cōn-stat, 1, -stitit, impers., *it is evident, clear.*
cōn-stituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum [com, statuō], (*place or put together*), *station, place; determine.*
cōn-suēscō, 3, -suēvī, -suētum [com], *become accustomed; in perf., be accustomed.*
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuētus], *habit, custom.*
cōnsul, -ulis, m. [cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul.* (134.)
cōnsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul], *pertaining to a consul, consular; noun, ex-consul.*
cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], *office of consul, consulship.*
cōn-sūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum [com], *take up completely, consume.*
con-temnō, 3, -psi, -ptum [com], *despise.* CONTEMN.
contemplor, 1, *look at, observe.* CONTEMPLATE.

- con-tendō**, 3, -dī, -tum [com], (draw tight), exert one's self, strive; hasten. **CONTEND.**
- contentiō**, -ōnis, f. [contendō], struggle, exertion, effort; **contention.**
- contentus**, -a, -um, adj. [P. of contineō], **contented**; w. abl.
- con-testor**, 1 [com, testis, witness], call to witness, invoke.
- con-tinēns**, -entis, f. [P. of contineō, sc. terra], **continent.**
- con-tineō**, 2, -nī, -tentum [com, teneō], hold together, hold, **contain.**
- contrā**, prep. w. acc., **against.**
- con-valēscō**, 3, -valui —, [com, valeō], get well, grow strong. **CONVALESCENT.** Cf. valeō.
- con-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum [com], come together, assemble.
- con-vertō**, 3, -tī, -sum [com], turn around, turn, change. **CONVERT.**
- cōpia**, -ae, f. [com, ops], abundance, wealth; plur., troops, forces.
- cor**, cordis, n., heart.
- cōram**, prep. w. abl., **in presence of.**
- Corinthus**, -ī, f., **Corinth.** (11, 4.)
- Coriolānus**, -ī, m., **Coriolanus**, surname of C. Marcius, a Roman consul.
- Cornēlia**, -ae, f. **Cornelia**, mother of the Gracchi.
- Coruēlius**, -ī, m., **Cornelius**, a Roman family name.
- cornū**, -ūs, n., horn.
- corpus**, -oris, n., **body.** (140.) **CORPSE.**
- corrigō**, 3, -rēxī, -rēctum [com, regō], make straight, reform, **correct.**
- corripō**, 3, -uī, -reptum [com, rapiō], seize, take hold of.
- cor-rumpō**, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum, [com], break in pieces, destroy; corrupt, bribe.
- cortex**, -icis, m. and f., bark, shell, rind.
- cōrus**, -ī, m., north-west (wind).
- cotidiē**, adv. [quot, diēs], **daily.**
- crās**, adv., **to-morrow.**
- Crassus**, -ī, m., **Crassus**, a rich Roman, contemporary of Caesar.
- creātor**, -ōris, m. [creō], **creator.**
- crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., **frequent, numerous.**
- crēdō**, 3, -dīdī, -ditum, trust, believe; w. dat. **CREDIT.**
- creō**, 1, make, create; choose, elect.
- Croesus**, -ī, m., **Croesus**, king of Lydia.
- crūdēlis**, -e, adj., **cruel, hard-hearted.**
- crūdēliter**, adv. [crūdēlis], **cruelly.**
- cruentus**, -a, -um, adj. [cruo], stained with blood, bloody.
- cruo**, -ōris, m., blood, gore. Cf. sanguis.
- crūs**, crūris, n., leg.
- culpa**, -ae, f. [culpō], blame, fault. **CULPABLE.** Cf. vitium.
- culpō**, 1 [culpa], blame, find fault with.
- culter**, -trī, m., knife. **COULTER.**
- cum**, conj., when; since, as; though, although. (372 ff.)
- cum**, prep. w. abl., with.
- Cumae**, -arum, f., **Cumae**, a town in Campania.
- cūnae**, -arum, f., **cradle.**
- cunctātiō**, -ōnis, f. [cunctor], **delaying, delay.**
- cunctor**, 1, linger, hesitate.
- cupiditās**, -ātis, f. [cupidus, cupiō], desire, eagerness. **CUPIDITY.**
- Cupīdō**, -inis, m. [cupidus], **Cupid**, god of love.
- cupiō**, 3, -ivī, or -īī, -itum, desire, be eager for. Cf. dēsiderō.

cūr, adv. [quā, rē], *why, wherefore*.
 cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety*.
 cūrō, 1 [cūra], *care for, take care*.
 currō, 3, cucurri, cursum, *run*.
 currus, -ūs, m. [currō], *chariot, car*.
 cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], *a running, course*.
 curvus, -a, -um, adj., *curved, bent; bending*.
 custodiō, 4 [custōs], *guard, protect, defend*.
 custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custodiō], *guardian, keeper*. CUSTODIAN.
 cymba, -ae, f. *boat*. Cf. nāvīcula.
 Cŷrus, -ī, m., *Cyrus, king of Persia*.

Daedalus, -ī, m., *Daedalus, builder of the Labyrinth*.

damnō, 1, *condemn*.

Dārēus, -ī, m., *Darius, king of Persia*.

Dātis, -is, m., *Datis, a Persian general*.

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of; (of time), in, during, about*.

dea, -ae, f., *goddess*. (p. 8, note 1).

dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *owe, ought*.
 DEBIT, DEBT.

decem, num. adj., indecl., *ten*.

December, -bris, m. [decem], *December*. Often as adj.

decem-plex, -icis, adj. [plicō], *tenfold*.

dē-cernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētum (*separate from*), *decide, determine; decree*.

dē-cerpō, 3, -sī, -tum [carpō], *pluck off*.

decet, 2, decuit, impers., *it is becoming, fitting, proper*.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], *tenth*.

dē-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum (*put from one's self*), *surrender, deliver up*.

dē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, draw down, launch*. DE-DUCT.

dē-fatigō, 1, *tire out, exhaust*.

dē-fendō, 3, -dī, -fēnsūm [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect*.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], *defender, protector*.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (*bring from*), *deliver; report*.

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired out, weary*.

dē-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], (*make away from*), *revolt; fail, be wanting*.

dē-formis, -e, adj. [forma], *misshapen, ugly; base, disgraceful*.

dē-inde, adv. (*from thence*), *then, afterwards*.

dēlectō, 1, *delight*.

dēlectus, -ūs, m. [dēligō], *selection; levy*.

dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy*. DE-LETE.

dēliciae, -ārum, f., *delight, darling*.

dē-migrō, 1, *migrate from; emigrate, remove*.

Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, m., *Demosthenes, a famous Athenian orator*.

dēnique, adv., *finally, at last*.

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*. DENTIST.

dē-percō, 4, -iī, —, *go to ruin, perish, be lost*.

dē-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, *put down, put by, lay down*. DE-POSIT.

dē-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsūm [scandō, climb], *come down, descend*.

dē-serō, 3, -uī, -tum, *desert, abandon*.

dēsīderō, 1, *desire, long for, miss* (319). Cf. optō, volō, and cupiō.

dē-siliō, 4, -siliū [saliō, *leap*], *leap down*. Cf. subsiliō and trānsiliō.

dē-sistō, 3, -stiti, -stitum [*stand off or apart*], *leave off; cease; desist*.

dē-spērō, 1 [spēs], *be hopeless, despair*.

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be wanting, lack; w. dat.* Cf. dēficiō.

dē-trahō, 3, -traxi, -tractum, *draw off, take away*.

deus, -i, m., *god*. (262.)

dēvorō, 1, *swallow up, devour*.

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana, goddess of the chase*.

dicō, 3, dixi, dictum, *say, tell*.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], *chief magistrate, dictator*.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *office of dictator, dictatorship*.

dictitō [frequentative of dicō], *keep saying*.

diēs, -ei, m. and f., *day*. (253.)

dif-ferō, differre, distulī, dilātum [dis], *scatter, separate, put off; differ*. (321.)

difficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, *far from easy*], *hard, difficult*. (207.)

digitus, -i, m., *finger*. DIGIT.

dignitās, -itatis, f. [dignus], *worth, dignity; office*.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy*.

diligēns, -entis, adj. [P. of diligō], *diligent, careful*.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns], *diligently*.

diligētia, -ae, f. [diligēns], *diligence, carefulness*.

dī-ligō, 3, -lēxi, -lēctum [legō], *esteem, love*. (319.)

dīmīcō, 1, *fight, contend*. Cf. pugnō.

dī-midius, -a, -um, adj. [medius], *half*.

dī-mittō, 3, -misi, -missum, *send away, let go*.

dī-moveō, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum (*move asunder*), *separate, drive away*.

dī-ruō, 3, dirui, dirutum, *tear asunder, destroy*. Cf. rescindō.

dis, dī (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions*. Cf. differō, discēdō, dissimilis, dimitto, diruō.

Dis, Ditis, m., *Dis, another name of Pluto*.

dis-cēdō, 3, -cēssi, -cēssum, *depart, withdraw, go off*.

discipulus, -i, m. [discō], *learner, scholar, pupil*. DISCIPLE.

discō, 3, didici, —, *learn*.

dis-similis, -e, adj., (*far from like*), *unlike, dissimilar*. (207.)

dīū, adv., *for a long time, long*.

dīves, -itis, adj. (comp. ditior, superl. divitissimus), *rich*. (167. 3.)

dīvitiae, -arum, f. [dives], *riches, wealth*.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give; put*.

doceō, 2, -uī, -tum, *teach, show*.

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of doceō], *learned*. DOCTOR.

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief*. DOLOROUS.

dolus, -i, m., *trick, deceit*.

domicilium, -i, n. [domus], *home, abode*.

domina, -ae, f. [dominus], *mistress*.

dominor, 1 [dominus], *be a lord and master, rule*. DOMINEER.

dominus, -i, m. [domina], *lord, master*. (66.)

domus, -ūs, f., *house, home; domi, at home*. (262, 336.)

dōnō, 1 [dōnum], *give, present*. DONATE.

dōnum, -i, n. [dō], *gift, present*.

dormiō, 4, *sleep*. DORMITORY.
Drūsus, -ī, M., *Drusus*, a Roman.
dubitō, 1 [dubius], *hesitate, doubt*.

INDUBITABLE.

dubium, -ī, N. [dubius], *doubt*.
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful*. DUBIOUS.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred*.

dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum [dux], *lead*.

Duilius (C.), -ī, M., *Caius Duilius*, a Roman general.

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant*.
 DULCET. Cf. suāvis.

dum, adv., *while, as long as; until*.

duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*.
 (311. 4.)

duo-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *twelve*.

duo-dē-trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *twenty-eight*.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard*. ENDURE. Cf. difficilis.

dux, ducis, M. and F. [dūcō], *leader, general*. DUKE. Cf. imperātor.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! see there!*

ē-dīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, *speak out, declare, proclaim*. EDICT.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēdī, ēsum or ēsum, *eat*.

ēducō, 1, *bring up, train, educate*.

ē-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out, bring away*.

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex], *bear out, bring forth*. (321.)
 ELATE.

efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [ex, faciō], *bring to pass, effect, complete; make, construct*.

egēns, -entis, adj. [P. of egeō], *in want, needy, destitute*.

ego, pers. pron., I. (264.)

ē-gredior, 3, ēgressus [gradior, step], *go out, go forth; disembark, land*. Cf. exeō.

ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], *remarkably, excellently*.

ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj. [greg], *remarkable, excellent*. EGRESSIOUS.

ēlegāns, -antis, adj., *choice, elegant*.

elephantus, -ī, M., *elephant*.

ē-lūdō, 3, -sī, -sum, *deceive, mock; elude*.

ē-mergō, 3, -sī, -sum, *arise, come forth; emerge*.

emō, 3, emī, emptum, *buy, purchase*.

enim, conj. (never the first word), *for*. Cf. nam.

Ennius, -ī, M., *Ennius*, father of Roman poetry.

ē-nūntiō, 1, *say out, divulge, declare, report*. ENUNCIATE.

ē, see ex.

eō, adv. [is], *to that place, thither, there*.

eō, ire, ii, itum, *go*. (327.)

eōdem, adv. [īdem], *to the same place*.

Ēpirus, -ī, F., *Epirus*, a division of Greece.

epistula, -ae, F., *letter, epistle*.

eques, -itis, M. [equus], *horseman, knight*.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques], (*pertaining to a horseman*), *equestrian*.

equitātus, -ūs, M. [equitō, eques], (*body of equites*), *cavalry*.

equitō, 1 [eques], (*be a horseman*), *ride*.

equus, -ī, M., *horse*.

ergō, adv., *therefore, accordingly*. Cf. igitur and itaque.

ē-ripiō, 3, -uī, -reptum [rapiō], *snatch out, seize and bear off*.

errō, 1, *wander; err, mistake*.

ē-rudiō, 4, [rudis, rough], train, teach, instruct.

essedum, -ī, n., two-wheeled war-chariot.

et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and. Cf. atque, ac, and -que.

etiam, adv. and conj. [et, jam, and now], also, even.

et-sī, conj., though, although.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., Europe.

ē-vādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsūm, go forth, escape. EVADE.

ē-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come forth, turn out, happen. EVENT. Cf. accidō and incidō.

ē-vertō, 3, -tī, -sum, overturn, overthrow, destroy.

ē-volō, 1, fly away.

ex or ē, prep. w. abl., out of, from.

exāminō, 1 [exāmen, test], weigh out, weigh.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of excellō], elevated, lofty, high.

ex-cipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], take out, except; receive, welcome.

ex-clāmō, 1, cry out, exclaim. Cf. clāmitō.

ex-cūsō, 1 [causa], excuse.

ex-cutiō, 3, -cussi, -cussum [quatiō], shake out, strike off, drive away, cast out.

ex-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go out, come out. EXIT. Cf. ēgredior.

ex-ercēō, 2 [arceō], keep busy, employ; train. EXERCISE.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercēō], (the thing trained), army.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small, slight.

expeditiō, -ōnis, f. [expediō], excursion, expedition.

ex-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out or away, expel.

ex-perior, 4, -pertus, make trial of, test. EXPERT.

ex-plicō, 1, -āvī, -ātum, and -uī, -itum, unfold, explain.

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō], a searcher out, explorer; spy, scout.

ex-plōrō, 1, search out, examine, explore; reconnoitre.

ex-pōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, put or set out, expose; draw up, marshal.

ex-pūgnō, 1, take by storm, assault. Cf. oppūgnō.

ex-sistō, 3, -stīti, -stitum (stand forth), exist, appear.

ex-spectō, 1, await, wait for, expect.

ex-spīrō, 1, breath out, breath one's last, expire.

ex-stinguō, 3, -inxī, -netum (quench completely), extinguish; kill, destroy.

ex-terreō, 2, -uī, -itum, frighten, affright.

ex-timēscō, 3, -timuī, — [timeō], fear greatly.

extrā, prep. w. acc., without, outside of. Cf. intrā.

ex-turbō, 1, thrust out, drive away.

faber, -brī, m., worker, carpenter. FABRIC.

Fabius, -ī, m., Fabius, a famous Roman general.

Fabricius, -ī, m., Fabricius, a famous Roman general.

fābula, -ae, f. [for, speak], story, tale, fable.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō], (that can be done), easy to do, easy. FACILITY.

facinus, -oris, n. [faciō], (the thing done), deed; crime. Cf. scelus.

faciō, 3, fēcī, factum, do, make.

fāgus, -ī, F., *beechn-tree*. (11. 4.)
Faliscī, -ōrum, M., the *Faliscans*,
a people of Etruria.
falsō, adv. [falsus], *falsely*.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [fallō, *deceive*],
deceptive, false.
fāma, -ae, F. [for, *speak*], *rumor*;
fame, renown.
fāmēs, -is, F., *hunger, famine*.
fās, N., indecl. [for, *speak*], *divine*
law; often translated as adj.,
right, lawful.
fascis, -is, M., *bundle*.
fatīgō, I, *tire out, weary*. FATIGUE.
fātum, -ī, N. [for, *speak*], (*that which*
is spoken), *fate, destiny*.
faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable*
to, favor, befriend; w. dat.
febris, -is, F. [ferveō, *be hot*], *fever*.
Februārius, -ī, M., *February*. Often
as adj.
fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], *luckily, for-*
tunately.
fēlix, -icis, adj., *lucky, fortunate*.
fera, -ae, F. [ferus], *wild animal,*
wild beast.
ferē, adv., *nearly, for the most part,*
almost, about. Cf. pacne.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring*;
ferunt, *they say*. (321.) Cf.
portō and vehō.
ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], *fierce,*
impetuous.
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], *of*
iron, iron.
ferrum, -ī, N., *iron*.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, savage,*
cruel.
fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], *trusty, faith-*
ful. Cf. fidus.
fidēliter, adv. [fidēlis], *faithfully*.
fidēs, -eī, F. [fidō, *trust*], *trust, faith*.
fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō, *trust*],
trusty, faithful.

filia, -ae, F., *daughter*. (p. 8, note 1).
Cf. nāta.
filiolus, -ī, M. [diminutive of filius],
little son.
filius, -ī, M., *son*. (79.) FILIAL.
finiō, 4 [fīnis], *end, finish*. FINITE.
fīnis, -is, M., *end, boundary*. (154.)
finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis],
bordering on, neighboring.
fīō, fierī, factus (supplies pass. to
faciō), *be made, become*. (327.)
fīrmō, I [firmus], *make strong*.
fīrmus, -a, -um, adj. [fīrmō], *stead-*
fast, strong. FIRM.
flagrō, I, *burn*.
flectō, 3, -xī, -xum, *bend, turn*.
fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum, *weep, cry*.
flō, I, *blow*.
flōs, flōris, M., *flower*. FLORAL.
flūmen, -inis, N. [fluō], (*that which*
flows), *river, stream*. (172.)
fluō, 3, flūxī, flūxum, *flow*.
fluvius, -ī, M. [fluō], (*the flowing*
thing), *river, stream*. (172.)
folium, -ī, N., *leaf*. FOLIAGE.
fōns, fontis, M., *spring, fount, foun-*
tain.
fore, for futurum esse.
formidō, -inis, F., *fear, terror*.
forte, adv. [fors, *chance*], *perchance,*
perhaps, possibly.
fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, cour-*
ageous.
fortiter, adv. [fortis], *bravely,*
courageously.
fortitūdō, -inis, F. [fortis], *strength,*
bravery, endurance, fortitude.
fortūna, -ae, F. [fors, *chance*], *for-*
tune.
forum, -ī, N., *market-place; forum*.
frangō, 3, frēgī, fractum, *dash in*
pieces, break. FRACTION.
frāter, -tris, M., *brother*. FRATER-
NAL.

- frētus**, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, trusting to*; w. abl.
- frigidus**, -a, -um, adj. [frigeō, *freeze*], *cold, frigid*.
- frondōsus**, -a, -um, adj. [frōns], *covered with leaves, leafy*.
- frōns**, frondis, f., *leaf, foliage; garland of leaves*.
- frōns**, -tis, f., *brow, forehead*. FRONT.
- frūctus**, -ūs, m. [fruor], *fruit*. Cf. frumentum.
- frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum], *pertaining to grain*; rēs frūmentāria, *grain-supply*.
- frumentum**, -ī, n. [fruor], *corn, grain*. Cf. fructus.
- fruor**, 3, fructus, *enjoy*; w. abl. (304.)
- frūstrā**, adv., *in vain*.
- (frūx), frūgis, f. (oftener plur.; gen. frūgum), [fruor], *fruit of the earth, fruits*. Cf. fructus.
- fuga**, -ae, f. [fugiō, *flee*], *flight*.
- fugiō**, 3, fūgī, — [fugō, *fuga*], *run away*. FUGITIVE.
- fugō**, 1 [fugiō, *fuga*], *put to flight, chase, drive*.
- fungor**, 3, fūctus, *perform, discharge*; w. abl. (304.) FUNCTION.
- Gājus**, gen. Gāi (also written Cāius), m., *Caius, u Roman first name*.
- Galba**, -ae, m., *Galba*.
- Gallia**, -ae, f., *Gaul*.
- Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj. [Gallus], *belonging to the Gauls, Gallic*.
- gallīna**, -ae, f. [gallus, *cock*], *hen*.
- Gallus**, -ī, m., *a Gaul*.
- gaudeō**, 2, gāvīsus [gaudium], *be glad, rejoice*. (p. 177, note 2.)
- gaudium**, -ī, n. [gaudeō], *joy, delight*.
- gener**, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.
- gēns**, gentis, f., *clan, family*. GENTEL.
- genū**, -ūs, n., *knee*. (245.)
- genus**, -eris, n., *birth, race; kind, nature*. GENDER.
- Germānus**, -a, -um, adj., *German*; noun, a *German*.
- gerō**, 3, gessī, gestum, *bear, carry; wage, manage, do*.
- gladiātor**, -ōris, m. [gladius], (*swordsman*), *gladiator*.
- gladius**, -ī, m., *sword*.
- glōria**, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown*.
- gracilis**, -e, adj., *slender*. (207.)
- gradus**, -ūs, m., *step*. (245.) GRADE.
- Graecē**, adv. [Graecus], *in Greek*.
- Graecia**, -ae, f., *Greece*.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian, Greek*; noun, a *Greek*.
- grāmen**, -inis, n., *grass*.
- grāmm**, -ī, n., *grain, seed*.
- grātulor**, 1 [grātus], *congratulate*; w. dat.
- grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing*. GRATEFUL.
- gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy, serious*. GRAVE.
- graviter**, adv. [gravis], *heavily, seriously*.
- gremium**, -ī, n., *lap, bosom*.
- grex**, gregis, m., *flock, herd*.
- gustō**, 1, *taste, eat*.
- habeō**, 2, *have, hold*.
- habitō**, 1 [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit; dwell, live*. (194.)
- Hannibal**, -alis, m., *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general*.
- Hasdrubal**, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, brother of Hannibal*.

hasta, -ae, F., *spear*.
hauriō, 4, haurī, haustum, *draw* (water), *draw*. EXHAUST.
Hector, -oris, M., *Hector*, chief of the Trojan warriors.
Henna, -ae, F., *Henna*, a city of Sicily.
herī, adv., *yesterday*.
hīc, haec, hūc, dem. pron., *this*, *this of mine*; abl., hōc, *on this account*; as pers. pron., *he, she, it*. (275.)
hiems (hiemps), hiemis, F., *winter*; *storm*.
hinc, adv. [hīc], *from this place*, *hence*.
Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain*.
Hispānus, -ī, M., *a Spaniard*.
historia, -ae, F., *history*.
hodiē, adv. [hōc, diē], *to-day*.
Homērus, -ī, M., *Homer*, the earliest and greatest Greek poet.
homo, -inis, M. and F. (*human being*), *man*. (138.)
honestās, -ātis, F. [honestus], *honor*, *integrity*, *honesty*.
honōrificē, adv., *honorably*.
honor, -ōris, M., *honor*.
honōrō, 1 [honor], *honor*, *respect*.
hōra, -ae, F., *hour*.
Horātius, -ī, M., *Horatius*, *Horace*.
horridus, -a, -um, adj. [horreō, *shudder at*], *frightful*, *rough*, *wild*.
 HORRID.
hortor, 1, *urge*, *exhort*, *encourage*.
hortus, -ī, M., *garden*. (38.)
hospes, -itis, M. and F., *host*, *guest*, *guest-friend*. HOSPITAL.
hostis, -is, M. and F., *enemy*. (149, 172.) HOSTILE.
hūc, adv. [for old form hōc], *to this place*, *hither*.
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homo], *human*; *cultivated*, *refined*.

humilis, -e, adj. [humus, *ground*], (*pertaining to humus*), *low*, *lowly*, *humble*, *poor*. (207.)
ibi, adv. [is], *in that place*, *there*.
īcarus, -ī, *Icarus*, son of *Daedalus*.
īdem, eadem, idem, determ. pron. [is], *same*. (270.)
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit*, *suitable*, *proper*.
īdūs, -uum, F. plur., *the Ides* (of the month). The thirteenth, except in March, May, July, and October; in those months the fifteenth. (244. 1.)
igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore*, *then*. Cf. ergō and itaque.
ignāvia, -ae, F. [ignāvus], *laziness*, *idleness*, *cowardice*.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not*, gnāvus, *busy*], *lazy*, *idle*, *cowardly*.
ignis, -is, M., *fire*. (149.)
ignōrō, 1 [ignārus, *ignorant*], *not know*, *be ignorant of*.
ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron., *that* (*yonder*); as pers. pron., *he, she, it*. (275.)
illūc, adv. [ille], *to that place*, *thither*, *there*.
imāgō, -inis, F., *image*, *likeness*, *picture*. (134.)
imitor, 1, *imitate*.
immānis, -e, adj., *huge*, *immense*, *monstrous*. Cf. māgnus.
impediō, 4 [in, pēs], (*entangle the feet*), *impede*, *hinder*, *prevent*.
im-pellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum [in], *urge on*, *impel*, *prompt*.
imperātor, -ōris, M. [imperō], *commander*, *general*. EMPEROR.
imperium, -ī, N. [imperō], *command*, *authority*, *power*. EMPIRE.

- imperō**, 1 [imperium], *order, command*; w. dat.
- impetrō**, 1, *accomplish; gain, procure, obtain*. Cf. adipiscor.
- impetus**, -ūs, m. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, onset*. IMPETUOUS.
- im-pleō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [in], *fill up, fill full, fill*. Cf. compleō.
- im-plōrō**, 1 [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore*.
- im-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum [in], *put or place upon*.
- improbus**, -a, -um, adj. [in, *not, probus, good*], *bad, wicked*. Cf. malus.
- im-prō-visō**, adv. [videō], *unexpectedly*.
- im-pudēs**, -entis, adj. [in], *shameless, impudent*.
- in**, prep. w. acc. *into, to, against, for*; w. abl., *in, on*. (333, 1, 2.)
- in**, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. **un-**, **in-**, *not*.
- inānis**, -e, adj., *empty, useless*.
- in-cautus**, -a, -um, adj., *incautious, heedless*.
- in-certus**, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain*.
- in-cidō**, 3, -tidī, -cāsum [cadō], *fall into; happen, befall*. Cf. accidō and eveniō.
- in-cipiō**, 3, -cōpī, -ceptum [capiō], (*take in hand*), *begin*. Cf. ordior.
- in-cōgnitus**, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*.
- incola**, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant*.
- in-colō**, 3, -uī, — [incola], *dwell in, inhabit, live, dwell*. Cf. habitō and vīvō.
- incolumis**, -e, adj., *unharmed, safe*.
- inde**, adv. [is], *thence*.
- indiciū**, -ī, n., *discovery, disclosure*.
- in-cō**, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go in, enter; begin*. (327.)
- inferi**, -ōrum, m. (inferus, *below*), *inhabitants of the lower world, the dead*. INFERNAL.
- in-ferō**, inferre, intulī, illātum (ini) (*bear in or against*), *cause; bellum inferre, make war upon*; w. dat. (321.)
- infestus**, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, troublesome, dangerous*. INFEST.
- in-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *stain, color*.
- in-finitus**, -a, -um, adj. [fīnis], *boundless, unlimited, infinite, vast*.
- in-flectō**, 3, -xī, -xum, *bend; change, alter*. INFLECT.
- in-gredior**, 3, -gressus [gradior, *step*], *enter*.
- in-hiō**, 1, *gape at, long for*.
- in-imīcus**, -a, -um, adj. [amīcus], *unfriendly, hostile*; noun, *enemy*. (172.) INIMICAL.
- initium**, -ī, n. [ineō], *beginning*. INITIAL.
- injūria**, -ae, f. [in, jūs], *injustice, injury, wrong*.
- injūstē**, adv. [injūstus], *unjustly*.
- inopia**, -ae, f. [inops, *without resources*], *want, poverty*.
- inquā**, defective verb, *say; inquit* (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he*.
- in-stituō**, 3, -uī, -nītum [statuō, *place*], *fix, determine, undertake*. INSTITUTE.
- instrūctus**, -a, -um [P. of instruō], *furnished, equipped*.
- in-struō**, 3, -strūxī, -strūctum [struō, *build*], *build up, form, instruct, teach*.
- insula**, -ae, f., *island*. PENINSULA.
- in-sum**, -esse, -fuī, —, *be in, among*; w. dat. and in w. abl.

intel-legō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctum [inter], see into; understand. INTELLECT.

inter, prep. w. acc., between, among, amid.

inter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, perish.

inter-dum, adv., sometimes.

inter-ficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], kill, put to death. Cf. necō and occidō.

interior, -us, adj. [no positive], inner, interior.

inter-pellō, 1, interrupt; entreat, importune.

inter-rogō, 1, ask, inquire, question. (382.) INTERROGATION.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, be present at or among; w. dat. Cf. ad-sum.

intrā, prep. w. acc., within. Cf. extra.

in-tueor, 2, look towards, at, or upon. INTUITION.

intus, adv. [in], within, inside.

in-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find, meet with, discover. INVENT. Cf. reperiō.

in-vicem, adv., by turns, in turn, alternately.

in-victus, -a, -um, adj., unconquerable, invincible.

invitō, 1, invite.

invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling, reluctant.

in-vocō, 1, call upon, invoke.

iō, interj., ah! oh!

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., self, very. (270.)

ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath; ire.

ir-rideō, 2, -rīsī, -rīsum [in], laugh at, ridicule; jest, mock.

is, ea, id, determ. pron., that; as pers. pron., he, she, it. (270.)

iste, -a, -ud, demon. pron., that (of yours). (275.)

ita, adv., so, thus. Cf. sic.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy.

Italus, -a, -um, adj., Italian.

ita-que, conj., and so, therefore. Cf. ergō and igitur.

item, adv. [ita], likewise, also.

ITEM.

iter, itineris, n. [eō], way, road, march. (262.) ITINERANT.

iterum, adv., a second time, again. ITERATION.

Ithaca, -ae, f., Ithaca, an island in the Ionian Sea.

Itius, m., Itius, a port in Gaul.

jaccō, 2, -uī, — [jaciō], (be thrown), lie.

jaciō, 3, jēcī, jactum [jaccō], throw, cast, hurl, fling.

jam, adv., already, now, at last. Cf. nunc.

jamjam, adv., already; jamjam ventūrus, on the point of coming.

jānuā, -ae, f. [Jānus], door. Cf. porta.

Jānus, -ī, m. [jānuā], Janus, the two-faced god.

jējūnium, -ī, n. [jējūnus], fast, hunger.

jējūnus, -a, -um [jējūnium], fasting, hungry, without food.

jocus, -ī, m. (plur. jocī and joca), joke, jest; per jocum, in jest, for a joke.

Jōhanniculus, -ī, m., little John, Johnny, Jack.

jubeō, 2, jūssī, jūssum, bid, order, command. Cf. imperō.

jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.

jūdex, -icis, m. [jūdicō], judge. (105.)

jūdicium, -ī, n. [jūdicō], judgment, opinion.

- jūdicō, 1 [jūdex], *judge*. (429.)
 Jūlius, -ī, m., *Julius*, a Roman family name.
 Jūppiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter*, the supreme deity of the Romans. (262.)
 jūrō, 1 [jūs], *swear, take an oath*.
 jūs, jūris, n., *right, justice*. (140.)
 Cf. fās.
 jūssus, -ūs, m. [jubeō], *command, order*.
 jūstē, adv. [jūstus], *rightly, justly*.
 juvenis, -is, m. and f., *youth, young person*. Cf. adulēscentis.
 juventūs, -ūtis, f. [juvenis], *the season of youth, youth*.
 Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labiēnus*, a lieutenant of Cæsar's.
 labor, m., -ōris, *labor*.
 labōrō, 1 [labor], *work, toil*.
 labrum, -ī, n., *lip*.
 lac, lactis, n., *milk*. LACTEAL.
 Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., the *Lacedaemonians*.
 lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*. LACRYMOSE.
 laeus, -ūs, m., *lake, pond*.
 Laevīnus, -ī, m., *Laevīnus*, a Roman consul.
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone*. LAPIDARY.
 Latīnē, adv. [Latīnus], *in Latin*.
 Latīnus, -a, -um, adj. [Latium], *Latin*; noun, a *Latin*.
 lātrō, 1, *bark, bark at*.
 latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber*.
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*.
 LATITUDE.
 latus, -eris, n., *side*. LATERAL.
 laudō, 1 [laus], *praise, laud*.
 laus, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame*.
 lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, depūte], *ambassador, lieutenant*. LEGATE.
 legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], (*a gathering*), *legion*.
 legō, 3, lēgī, lēctum, *gather; select; read*.
 lēnis, -e, adj., *soft, smooth, gentle*.
 leō, -ōnis, m., *lion*. (134.)
 lepus, -oris, m., *hare*.
 levis, -e, adj. [levō], *light*. (150.)
 levō, 1 [levis], *lift up, raise, lighten*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*. LEGAL.
 libenter, adv. [libet, it pleases], *willingly, gladly; libenter videō, I am glad to see*.
 liber, -brī, m., *book*.
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*. LIBERAL. (71.)
 Liber, -erī, m., *Bacchus, god of wine*.
 liberē, adv. [liber], *freely, fearlessly*.
 liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber], *children*. (60.)
 liberō, 1 [liber], *set free, free, liberate; w. abl.*
 libertās, -ātis, f. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.
 licet, 2, licuit or licitum est, *impers., it is permitted, (one) may*.
 ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *of wood, wooden*.
 lignum, -ī, n., *wood; plur., sticks of wood*.
 ligō, -ōnis, m., *mattock, hoe*.
 lilium, -ī, n., *lily*.
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.
 littera, -ae, f., *letter (of the alphabet); plur., letter, epistle; literature*.
 litus, -oris, n., *shore, beach, bank*.
 locus, -ī, m. (plur., locī and loca), *place, position, spot*. LOCAL.
 longē, adv. [longus], *far off; widely, greatly, much, by much*.
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long*. LONGITUDE.
 loquor, 3, locūtus, *speak, talk*.

lūctus, -ūs, m. [lūgeō], *mourning, lamentation.*

lūcus, -ī, m. [lūceō, *shine*], (*open place in a wood*), *wood, grove.*

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum [lūdus], *play.*
INTERLUDE.

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

lūgeō, 2, lūxī, —, *mourn, lament.*

lūmen, -inis, n. [lūceō, lūx], *light.*
LUMINOUS.

lūna, -ae, f. [lūceō, lūx], *moon.*
LUNA.

lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*

luscīna, -ae, f., *nightingale.*

lūx, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light, daylight.*

M., abbreviation of *Marcus*, a Roman first name.

macte, adj. [voc. of mactus], *be honored, be blessed; hail! well done!* (p. 178, note 3.)

maculō, 1, *stain.*

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more.*

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* Cf. praeceptor.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], (*the office of a magister*), *magistracy, magistrate.*

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. mājor, superl. māximus), *great, large.*

mājor, -us, comp. of māgnus.
MAJOR.

male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (219.)

mālō, mälle, mālūī, — [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (316.)

malum, -ī, n., *bad thing, evil.*

mālum, -ī, n., *apple.*

malus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. pējor, sup. pessimus), *bad, evil; baleful.* (208.) Cf. improbus.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum, *stay, remain, await.*

mānēs, -ium, m., *departed spirits, souls.*

Manlius, -ī, m., *Manlius, a Roman.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; force, band.* (244, 1.) MANUAL.

Mārcellus, -ī, m., *Marcellus, a Roman general.*

mare, -is, n., *sea.* (149.) MARINE.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare], *belonging to the sea, bordering on the sea, maritime.*

Marius (C.), -ī, m., *Gājus Marius, a famous Roman general.*

Mārtius, -ī, m. [Mārs], *March.* Often as adj.

massa, -ae, f., *mass.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* MATERNAL.

māteria, -ae, f. [māter], (*mother-stuff*), *materials, timber.*

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*

mātūrō, 1 [mātūrus, ripe], *hasten.*

māximē, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (219.)

māximus, -a, -um, superl. of māgnus. (208.)

medicus, -ī, m. [medeor, cure], *physician.* MEDICINE.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius, terra], *midland, inland.* MEDITERRANEAN.

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle; often to be translated midst.*

Meldī, -ōrum, m., *the Meldi, a people of Gaul.*

melior, -us, comp. of bonus. (208.)

mellitus, -a, -um, adj. [mel, *honey*], *honey-sweet, darling*.

memor, -oris, adj., *mindful*. (150.)

MEMORABLE.

memoria, -ae, f. [memor], *memory*.

mendācium, -ī, n. [mendāx], *lying, falsehood*.

mendāx, -ācis, adj., [mentior], *lying, deceitful*.

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, purpose*. (273.) MENTAL.

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.

mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.

mentior, 4 [mendāx], *lie, deceive*.

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury, messenger of the gods*. (79.)

mereō, } 2, *be worthy of, deserve*,
mercor, } *merit*.

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [merīdiēs], *of or belonging to midday, noon; meridian*.

Metellus, -ī, m., *Metellus, a Roman general*.

metuō, 3, -um, -ūtum [metus], *fear*. Cf. timeō.

metus, -ūs, m. [metuō], *fear, dread*. Cf. timor.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. (voc. sing. mas. mī), *my, mine*.

migrō, 1, *migrate*.

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier*. (105.) MILITARY.

mille, num. adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur. milia, -ium, *thousand*. (311, 6.)

Miltiadēs, -is, m., *Miltiades, a Greek general*.

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva, goddess of wisdom*.

minimē, adv. [minimus], *least; no, by no means, far from it*.

minister, -tri, m. [minus], (*an inferior*), *servant*. (66.) MINISTER. Cf. magister.

minor, 1 [minac, *threats*], *threaten*.

minor, -us, comp. of parvus.

minus, adv. [minor], *less*.

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [mīror, *wonder at*], *to be wondered at; wonderful, extraordinary*.

misellus, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of miser], *poor little*.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unhappy, miserable*.

miseret, 2, -itum est, impers. [miser], *it makes miserable, it excites pity, (one) pities; nōs miseret, we pity*. (415.)

miseria, -ae, f. [miser], *wretchedness, misery*.

Mithridatēs, -is, m., *Mithridates, king of Pontus*.

mittō, 3, mīsi, mīssum, *send*. MISSION.

modestia, -ae, f. [modestus], *modesty*.

modius, -ī, m. [modus], *measure; peck*.

modo, adv. [modus], *only; modo . . . modo, now . . . now*.

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs, *pile*], *troublesome*. MOLEST.

mollīō, 4 [mollis], *soften*. MOLLIFY.

moneō, 2, -uī, -itum, *remind, advise, warn*. MONITOR. (112.)

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill*. Cf. collis.

mōnstrō, 1 [moneō], *show, point out*. DEMONSTRATE.

monumentum, -ī, n. [moneō], (*that which reminds*), *memorial, monument*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

Morini, -ōrum, m., *the Morini, a people of Gaul*.

moriōr, 3, mortuus [mors], (*fut. part. moritūrus*), *die*.

mōrōsus, -a, -um, adj. [mōs], *fretful, cross; morose.*

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], (*lia'le to death*), *mortal.*

mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of morior], *dead.*

mors, mortis, F. [morior], *death.*

mōs, mōris, M., *manner, habit, custom.* (140.) MORAL.

mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], *motion, movement; tumult, disturbance.*

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*

mox, adv., *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, F., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, F. [multus], *multitude.*

multum, adv. [multus], *much.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, superl. plūrimus, *much, many.*

mundus, -ī, M., *world, universe.* Cf. orbis terrārum.

mūniō, 4 [moenia, *fortifications*], *fortify, defend.*

mūnitīō, -ōnis, F. [mūniō], *fortification.* MUNITION.

mūrus, -ī, M., *wall.*

mūtō, 1, *change, alter.* MUTATION.

nam, conj., *for.* Cf. enim.

nanciscor, 3, nactus and nactus, *get, obtain; find, meet with.*

nārrō, 1, tell, relate, report, *narrate.*

nāscor, 3, nātus, *be born; be found.*

Nāsica, -ae, M., *Nāsica, surname of one of the Scipios.*

nāta, -ae, F. [P. of nāscor], *daughter.* Cf. filia.

nātūra, -ae, F. [nāscor], *nature.*

nauta, -ae, M. [for nāvita; nāvis], *sailor.*

nāvicula, -ae, F. [diminutive of nāvis], *little vessel, boat.* Cf. cymba.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F. [nāvigō], *a sailing; navigation.*

nāvigō, 1 [nāvis, agō], *sail, set sail.*

nāvis, -is, F., *ship.* (154.) NAVAL.

nē, conj., *that not, lest;* w. hortatory subjunctive, *not.*

ne, interrog. adv., enclitic. (p. 10, n. 2.) Cf. nōme and num.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necessarius], *necessary.*

necessitās, -ātis, F. [necessus], *necessity, constraint.*

neō, 1, *kill, slay.* Cf. interficiō and occidō.

nectō, 3, nexū and nexī, nexum, *bind, weave.*

negō, 1 [nē, āō, say], *say not, deny; refuse.*

nēmō, -inīs, M. and F. [nē, homo], *no one.* For gen. and abl. use nulliūs, nullō.

Neptūnus, -ī, M., *Neptune, god of the sea.*

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means, not at all.*

ne-que or nec, and not; neque ... neque, *neither ... nor.*

ne-sciō, 4, *know not, be ignorant of neuter*, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither (of two).* (200.) NEUTRAL.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.* Cf. āter.

nihil, N., indecl., *nothing.*

nīmium, adv., *too, too much.*

nī-si, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nix, nivis, F., *snow.* (167, 2.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, famous; noble.*

noceō, 2, -ū, -itum, *do harm to, hurt, injure;* w. dat. NOXIOUS. Cf. obsum.

noctū, adv. [nox], *by night, in the night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, —, [nē, volō],
be unwilling, will not, not wish.
(316.)

nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], (that by
which a thing is known), name.
NOMINAL. (134.)

nōmīnō, 1 [nōmen], name, call.

nōn, adv. [nē, ūnum], not.

nōn-ne, interrog. adv., expecting
an affirmative answer, not? Cf.
-ne and num.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (not none),
some.

nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj. [novem],
ninth.

nōscō, 3, nōvi, nōtum, learn, know.
P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. known.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,
our, ours. Nostri, our men.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new. NOV-
ELTY.

nox, noctis, f., night. (167. 2.)
NOCTURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, f., cloud. (149.)

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus],
not any, no, none. (200.) NUL-
LITY.

num, interrog. adv., expecting a
negative answer, whether. Cf.
nōnne and -ne.

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa* (Pompilius),
second king of Rome.

numerus, -ī, m., number.

nummus, -ī, m., piece of money,
coin.

nunc, adv., now. Cf. jam.

nunquam, adv. [nē, unquam],
never.

nūntiō, 1 [nūntius], announce,
report.

nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], bearer of
news, messenger.

nusquam, adv. [nē, usquam], no-
where.

nūtriō, 4, feed, nourish, support.
Cf. alō.

ō, interj., O, Oh!

ob-eō, -īre, -īī, -itum, go to, reach,
meet.

ob-ligō, 1 [ligō, bind], bind, oblige,
put under obligation.

oblīviscor, 3, oblītus, forget.

ob-ruō, 3, -uī, -utum, overwhelm,
cover, bury.

obses, -sidis, m. and f. [ob, sedēō],
(one who sits or remains as a
pledge), hostage.

ob-sideō, 2, -sēdī, -sēssum [sedeō],
(sit against), blockade, besiege.
Cf. oppugnō.

ob-sisto, 3, -stitī, -stitum, oppose,
withstand, obstruct; w. dat.

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, be against,
opposed to; injure; w. dat. Cf.
noceō.

ob-temperō, 1, comply with, yield
to; w. dat.

ob-viam, adv., in the way, towards;
with verb of motion, meet; w. dat.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [occidō], (a sink-
ing), setting.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cāsūm [ob, cadō],
fall down, fall.

occidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsūm [ob, caedō,
cut], cut down, kill. Cf. necō and
interficiō.

occupō, 1 [ob, capiō], take posses-
sion of, seize; occupy. Cf. potior.

oc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [ob],
run to meet; meet, fall in with.
Occur.

ōceanus, -ī, m., ocean.

ocellus, -ī, m. [diminutive of ocu-
lus], little eye.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō],
eighth.

octō, num. adj., indecl., eight.

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*. OCULAR.
of-ferō, offere, obtulī, oblātum [ob], (*bring before*), *present, offer*. (321.)
officium, -ī, n. [opus, faciō], *service, duty, office*.
ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (*at that time*); *formerly, once; at some time or other; hereafter*. Cf. aliquandō and quondam.
omnis, -e, adj., *whole, all, every*. Cf. tōtus.
onus, -eris, n., *load, burden*. ONEROUS.
opera, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care, attention; operam dare, try; operā, on account of*. OPERATE.
oportet, 2, -uit, impers. [opus], *it is necessary, it behooves; (one) must or ought*.
oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], *of a town; noun, townsman*.
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.
op-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum [ob], *fill up; cover*.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, convenient, suitable; opportune*.
op-pūgnō, 1 [ob], *attack, assault, besiege*. Cf. expūgnō and obsideō. [ops], opis, f., *aid, assistance; plur., power, strength, resources*.
optimē, adv. [optimus], *most excellently, best*. (219.)
optō, 1, *wish, desire, long for*. Cf. cupiō and dēsiderō.
opus, -eris, n., *work, labor* (140); as indecl. noun, *need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary*.
ōrāculum, -ī, n. [ōrō], *oracle*.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [ōrō], *prayer, plea; speech, oration*.
ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], *orator, ambassador*.
orbis, -is, m., *circle, orb; orbis ter-*

rārum, earth, world. (154.)
orbis, -a, -um, adj., *bereaved, childless*.
Orcus, -ī, m., *Orcus, the lower world; also Pluto, the god of the lower world*.
ordior, 4, orsus, *begin, undertake*. Cf. incipiō.
ōrdō, -īnis, m., *row, rank; order, arrangement*.
oriēns, -entis, m. [P. of orior], *rising; east*.
orior, 4, ortus (pres. ind. of conj. 3, orēris, oritur; imp. subj. orirer or orirer; fut. part. oritūrus), *rise, appear; begin*.
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*), *ornament, jewel*.
ōrnō, 1, *adorn, ornament*.
ōrō, 1 [ōs], *pray, beg*. Cf. petō and rogō.
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*. ORAL.
os-tendō, 3, -dī, -c̄nsum [ob(s)], (*stretch out before*), *show, display*.
ōstium, -ī, n. [ōs], *entrance, door*.
ovis, -is, f., *sheep*.
ōvum, -ī, n., *egg*. OVAL.
pābulum, -ī, n. [pāscō], *food, fodder*. Cf. cibus.
paene, adv., *nearly, almost*. Cf. ferē.
paenitentia, -ae, f. [paeniteō], *repentance, penitence*. PENITENTIARY.
palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.
pār, paris, adj., *equal*.
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of parō], *ready, prepared*.
parcō, 3, perpercī (parsī), parsum, *spare; w. dat.*
parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent*. (167. 1.)

pāreō, 2, -nī, —, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey*; w. dat. **pariō**, 3, peperī, paritum and paratum, *bring forth, lay*.
pariter, adv. [pār], *equally*.
parō, 1, *make ready, prepare, get*.
pars, partis, f., *part, piece, portion, share*.
partior, 4 [pars], *divide*; *part, share*.
Parus, -ī, f., *Paros, an island in the Aegean Sea*. (11. 4.)
parvus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. minor, superl. minimus), *small, little*.
pāscō, 3, pāvī, pāstum, *feed, tend*; *pasture*.
passer, -eris, m., *sparrow*.
passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (*a stretching out of the feet in walking*), *step, pace*.
pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāscō], *feeder, keeper; shepherd*. (134.) **PASTOR**.
pateō, 2, -uī, —, *lie open, be open*.
 P. patēns, *open*.
pater, -tris, m., *father*. (134.) **PATERNAL**.
patienter, adv. [patiēns], *patiently, with patience*.
patior, 3, passus, *bear, suffer, endure*. **PASSION**.
patria, -ae, f. [patrius, pater; sc. terra], *fatherland, native land, country*. **EXPATRIATE**.
paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little*. **PAUCITY**.
paulō, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little*.
paulus, -a, -um, adj., *little*.
Paullus, -ī, m., *surname of Æmilius*.
pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*. (167. 3.)
pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace*. **PACIFY**.
peccātum, -ī, n. [peccō], *mistake, fault, sin*.

peccō, 1, *make a mistake, commit a fault, sin*.
pectus, -oris, n., *breast*.
pecus, -oris, n., *cattle, herd*.
pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier*.
pējor, -us, comp. of malus. (208.)
pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide*. **PELT**.
pēnsum, -ī, n. [P. of pendō], (*what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning*), *task; lesson, exercise*.
per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, on account of*.
pēra, -ae, f., *bag, wallet*.
per-agrō, 1 [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse*.
per-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *destroy; lose*. Cf. amittō.
per-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead or bring through*.
per-eō, -īre, -iī, —, *perish, be ruined*. (327.)
per-fodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossū, *dig through, pierce, stab*.
per-fringō, 3, -frēgī, -fractum, [frangō], *break through, break*.
per-fugiō, 3, -fūgī, —, *flee (for refuge)*.
pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum [per, regō], *go on, continue*.
periculum, -ī, n. [perior, try], *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril*.
peritus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of perior, try], (*having tried*), *skilful*.
per-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missū, *allow, grant, suffer, permit*. Cf. sinō.
per-paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *very few*.
Persae, -ārum, m., *the Persians*.
per-sequor, 3, -cūtus, *follow persistently, follow up*.
per-spiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum, [speciō], *see through, see into; perceive, observe*. **PERSPECTIVE**.

- per-stō**, 1, -stiti, -stātum, *stand fast, persevere, persist.*
- per-terreō**, 2, -uī, -itum, *thoroughly frighten.*
- pertinācia**, -ae, F. [pertināx], *perseverance; obstinacy.* PERTINACITY.
- per-veniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (*come through to the end*), *arrive.* Cf. adveniō.
- pēs**, pedis, M., *foot.* (105.) PEDAL.
- petō**, 3, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *seek, demand, beg.* PETITION. Cf. orō and rogō.
- Philotimus**, -ī, M., *Philotimus.*
- piger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow, lazy, indolent.*
- piget**, 2, -uit or -itum est, impersonal, *it disgusts, (one) is disgusted.* (416.)
- pigritia**, -ae, F. [piger], *laziness, sloth, indolence.*
- pīlum**, -ī, N., *javelin.*
- pīpiō**, 1, *chirp.*
- placeō**, 2, -uī, -itum [placidus], *please; w. dat.*
- placidē**, adv. [placidus], *softly, gently, quietly.* PLACIDLY.
- placidus**, -a, -um, adj. [placeō], *gentle, quiet, calm.* PLACID.
- plānitēs**, -ēī, F. [plānus, *even, level*], (*a flatness*), *level ground, plain.*
- plānus**, -a, -um, adj. [plānitēs], *even, flat, level, plain.*
- Plataeēnsēs**, -ium, M., *the Plataeans, inhabitants of Plataea.*
- plēbs**, plēbis, F., *the common people, multitude.* PLEBEIAN.
- plēnus**, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, *fill*], *full.*
- plērusque**, -aque, -umque, adj. (generally plur.), *very many, most, the greater part.*
- plumbum**, -ī, N., *lead; plumbum album, tin.*
- plūs**, plūris, adj., comp. of multus. (208.)
- Plūtō**, -ōnis, *Pluto*, M., *god of the lower world.*
- pōculum**, -ī, N., *cup, bowl.*
- poēma**, -atis, N., *poem.*
- poena**, -ae, F. [pāniō], *quit-money, fine, punishment.* PENAL.
- Poenī**, -ōrum, M., *the Carthaginians.*
- Poeniceus**, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], *Carthaginian.* See Pūnicus.
- poēta**, -ae, M., *poet.*
- polliceor**, 2, *promise.* Cf. prōmittō.
- Polyphēmus**, -ī, M., *Polyphemus, a Cyclops.*
- Pompējus**, -ēī, M., *Pompey, a famous Roman general.*
- pōmum**, -ī, N., *fruit.*
- pondus**, -eris, N. [pendō, *weigh*], *weight.*
- pōnō**, 3, posuī, positum, *put, place, set.* POSITION.
- pōns**, -ntis, M., *bridge.*
- Popēdius**, -ī, M., *Popedius, a Latin.*
- populus**, -ī, M., *people.*
- Porcius**, -ī, M., *a Roman family name.*
- Porsena**, -ae, M., *Porsena, an Etruscan king.*
- porta**, -ae, F., *gate, door.* PORTAL. Cf. jānuā.
- portō**, 1, carry, bring. Cf. ferō and velō.
- porticus**, -ūs, F. [porta], *portico.*
- portus**, -ūs, M., *harbor, port.* (247.)
- possum**, posse, potuī, — [potis, *able, sum*], *be able, can.* (292.)
- post**, prep. w. acc., *after, behind; as adv., for posteā, afterwards after.*
- post-eā**, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post] (comp. posterior, superl. postrēmus or postumus), *following, next.*

post-hāc, adv., *after this time, hereafter, henceforth.*

postrīdiē, adv. [posterō diē], *on the day after, the following day.*

postulō, 1, ask, demand. Cf. quārō and rogō.

potēns, -entis, adj., [P. of possum], *able, powerful; potent.*

potior, 4 [potis, able], *become master of, get, get possession of; w. gen. or abl. Cf. adipiscor.*

praebeō, 2 [prae, habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish.*

praeceps, -ipitis, adj. [prae, caput], *head-foremost, headlong; rash, precipitate.*

praeceptor, -ōris, m. [praeceptum], *teacher, preceptor. Cf. magister.*

praeceptum, -ī, n. [praeceptor], *maxim, precept.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, prey.*
PREDATORY.

praedicō, 1 [prae, dicō, -āre, make known], *proclaim, boast.*

prae-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum, *go before; be at the head. (327. 2.)*

praemium, -ī, n., *reward, prize.*
PREMIUM.

praesidium, -ī, n. [prae, sedeō, sit before], *defence, help; troops, garrison.*

praestāns, -antis, adj. [P. of praestō], *pre-eminent, distinguished.*

prae-stō, 1, -stitī, -stitum (stātum), *stand before; surpass; fulfil, discharge, perform.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *be before, at the head of, command; w. dat.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -ī, -itum, *go by, pass by, omit. (327. 2.)* PRETERITE.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], *(pertaining to a praetor), praetorian; noun, ex-praetor.*

prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*

premō, 3, pressī, pressum, **press**; with **ōre**, *bite, eat.*

[**prex**], precis, f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. with comp. prior, no pos.], *first, foremost.* PRIME.

prīnceps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, capiō], *(taking the first place), first, chief; noun, chief, leader. (105.)* PRINCE.

prīus-quam, conj., *before that, before.*

prīvō, 1, *deprive; w. abl.*

prō, interj., *O!*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for; considering.*

prō-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. prō-gredior.

procul, adv., *far, far from.*

prō-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum, *give forth; hand down; give up, betray.*

prō-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead forth.*

proclium, -ī, n., *battle, combat.* Cf. pūgna.

proficiscor, 3, -fectus, *set out, march, go.* Cf. exeō and ēgredior.

pro-fiteor, 2, -fessus [fateor], *acknowledge, confess, declare.* PROFESS.

prō-fligō, 1, *overthrow, destroy, ruin.* PROFLIGATE.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., *deep, profound.*

prō-gredior, 3, -gressus [gradior.

- step*], go forward, advance. PROGRESS. Cf. *procēdō*.
- pro-hibeō**, 2 [habeō], (*hold in front of*), hold back, check, hinder, prevent, prohibit.
- prō-iciō**, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], throw forward, cast away, cast. PROJECT.
- prō-mittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missum [let or send forth], promise; let grow. Cf. *polliceor*.
- prope**, prep. w. acc., and adv. (comp. *propius*, superl. *proximē*), near, near to; nearly, almost.
- prō-pōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positum, put before, set forth; make known, declare. PROPOSE.
- prōpositum**, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], purpose, design, resolution. PROPOSITION.
- proprius**, -a, -um, adj., (*one's*) own. PROPER.
- prō-pūgnō**, 1 (*fight in front*), rush out to battle, make sorties.
- prō-sequor**, 3, -cūtus, follow, pursue. PROSECUTE.
- Prōserpina**, -ae, f., *Proserpina*, daughter of *Ceres*.
- prō-sternō**, 3, -strāvī, -stratum, overtake, destroy; prostrate.
- prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, be useful to, benefit; w. dat. (293.)
- prō-vehō**, 3, -vexī, -vectum, carry forward, convey; in pass., ride, sail.
- prō-vidēō**, 2, -vidī, -vīsum, (*see forward*), provide.
- prōvincia**, -ae, f., province.
- proximus**, -a, -um (superl. with comp. *propior*, no pos.), nearest, next. PROXIMITY.
- prūdēns**, -entis, adj. [for prōvidēns], wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent. (164.)
- prūdenter**, adv. [prūdēns], wisely, prudently.
- prūdēntia**, -ae, f. [prūdēns], foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), public.
- Pūblius**, -ī, m., *Publius*, a Roman first name.
- pudet**, 2, puduit or puditum est, impers., it shames, (one) is ashamed.
- puella**, -ae, f. [diminutive of puer], girl, maiden.
- puellāris**, -e, adj. [puella], girlish.
- puer**, -erī, m., boy, child. PUERILE.
- puerulus**, -ī, m. [diminutive of puer], little boy.
- pūgna**, -ae, f. [pūgnō], battle, contest. PUGNACIOUS. Cf. *proelium*.
- pūgnō**, 1 [pūgna], fight. Cf. *dīmīcō*.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful, fair, comely.
- pulchritūdō**, -inis, f. [pulcher], beauty.
- pulvis**, -eris, m., dust. PULVERIZE.
- Pūnicus**, -a, -um, adj. [Poenī], Carthaginian, Punic; mālum Pūnicum, pomegranate. See *Poeniceus*.
- pūniō**, 4 [poena], punish.
- putō**, 1, think, believe, reckon. (429.)
- Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenaean, Pyrenees.
- Pyrrhus**, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.
- quadrāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [quattuor], forty.
- quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor, centum], four hundred.
- quaerō**, 3, quaesivī or -ivī, quaesitum, seek, ask, inquire. (382.)
- quaesō**, 3, -ivī, or -ivī, — [old form of quaerō], beg, pray.

- quam**, adv.; interrog., *how, how much?* rel., *as much, as, than*; *quam saepissimē, as often as possible.*
- quantus**, -a, -um, adj. [quam], *how great, how much; as great as, as much as.*
- quā-rē**, adv. (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore.*
- quārtus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [quattuor], *fourth.* QUART.
- qua-si**, adv., *as if.*
- quater**, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times.*
- quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four.*
- quattuor-decim**, num. adj. [decem], *fourteen.*
- que**, conj. enclitic, *and.* Cf. et, atque, and *ac.*
- quercus**, -ūs, F., *oak.* (11. 4.)
- qui**, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron., *who, which, what, that.* (279.)
- quia**, conj., *because.* Cf. quod.
- quīdam**, quaedam, quid(quod)-dam, indef. pron., *certain, a certain one, a.* (279. 4.)
- quīdem**, adv. (*never the first word*), *indeed, certainly, in truth; nē . . . quidem, not even.*
- quīn**, conj. [quī, nē], *but that, that.*
- quīngentī**, -āe, -a, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque, centum], *five hundred.*
- quīnquāgintā**, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque], *fifty.*
- quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five.*
- quīntus**, -a, -um, num. adj. [quīnque], *fifth.*
- quīntus decimus**, num. adj., *fifteenth.*
- quis**, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* (279.)
- quisquam**, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any, any one (at all).* (279. 4.)
- quisque**, quaeque, quid(quod)que, indef. pron., *each one, each, every* (279. 4.)
- quō**, adv., *where, whither.*
- quod**, conj., *because.* Cf. quia.
- quondam**, adv., *once, formerly.* Cf. aliquandō and *ōlim.*
- quoniam**, adv. [cum (quom), jam], *since, because.* Cf. cum.
- quoque**, conj. and adv. (following the emphatic word), *also, too.*
- quot**, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl., *how many; as many as.*
- radius**, -ī, M., *beam, ray.*
- rādō**, 3, rāsī, rāsūm, *shave.* RAZOR.
- rāna**, -ac, F., *frog.*
- rapāx**, -ācis, adj. [rapīō], *snatching, greedy, ravenous.* RAPACIOUS.
- rapīō**, 3, -uī, -tum [rapāx], *seize, snatch, drag away.* RAPTURE.
- rārus**, -a, -um, adj., *far apart, dispersed, single.* RARE.
- ratiō**, -ōnis, F., *plan, method; reason.*
- re-cipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptum [capiō], *take back, get again, receive.* Sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat.*
- recitō**, 1, *read aloud, recite.*
- re-crcō**, 1 [creō, make], *refresh, recreate.*
- rēctē**, adv. [rēctus], *rightly.*
- red-eō**, -īre, -īī, -itum [re(d)], *go back, return.* (327. 2.)
- reditus**, -ūs, M. [redeō], *return.*
- re-dūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back.* REDUCE.
- re-ferō**, -ferre, rettulī, -lātum, *carry back, bring back.* (321.) REFER. Cf. reportō.
- re-ficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], *make again; repair, restore, rebuild.*
- rēgīna**, -āe, F. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen.*
- regiō**, -ōnis, F., *region.*

rēgnō, 1 [rēgnum, rēx], *be king, rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēx], *kingdom.*

regō, 3, rēxī, rēctum [rēx], *rule.*

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus, a Roman consul.*

re-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [jaciō], *throw back, drive back.* REJECT.

re-liquō, 3, -liquī, -lictum [re-liquus], *leave behind, leave.* RELINQUISH.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [reliquō], *remaining, the rest.*

re-mittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, *send back.* REMIT.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus, twin brother of Romulus.*

re-pellō, 3, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repel, repulse.*

re-periō, 4, repperī, repertum [pariō, procure], *find, discover, ascertain.* Cf. *inveniō.*

re-petō, 3, -petīvī or -iī, -petitum, *seek again, demand back; rēs re-petō, demand restitution.*

re-pleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum, (*fill again*), *fill up, fill.* REPLETE.

re-portō, 1, *bring back, carry back.* Cf. *referō.*

re-prehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsūm, *hold back, restrain, reprove.* REPRESENTATIVE.

re-putō, 1, (*count over*), *reckon; think over.*

rēs, rē, f., *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (254); *rēs publica, republic, state, commonwealth.*

re-scindō, 3, -scidī, -scissum, *tear away, break down.* RESCIND.

re-spondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsūm, (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond.*

re-stituō, 3, -ui, -ūtum [statuō],

replace; give back, return, restore. RESTITUTION.

re-stō, 1, restitī, —, *stop behind, stand still, remain.*

re-tineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [teneō], *hold back, restrain, retain.*

re-vertor, 3, -tī, -sum (deponent in pres. imp. and fut.), *turn back, return.* REVERT.

re-vocō, 1, *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king.* (105.)

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., *Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodus, -ī, f., *Rhodes, an island in the Aegean Sea.*

riētus, -ūs, m. [ringor, open the mouth], *jaws wide open; jaws.*

rideō, 2, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh.* Cf. *cachinnō.* DERIDE.

rīsus, -ūs, m. [rideō], *laughter.*

rīvus, -ī, m., *brook, stream.* RIVAL.

rōbur, -oris, n., *strength.*

rogō, 1, *ask, question.* Cf. *interrogō.* (382.)

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma], *Roman; noun, a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus, first king of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, f., *rose.*

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], *beak of a vessel.* ROSTRUM.

rubeō, 2 [ruber], *be red.*

ruber, -bra, -brum, adj. [rubeō], *red.* RUBY.

ruīna, -ae, f. [ruō, fall], (*a falling down*), *downfall, disaster, ruin.*

rūpēs, -is, f. [ru(m)pō, break], (*the broken thing*) *cliff, rock.*

rūrsus, adv. [re-vorsus, revertō], (*turned back*), *back, again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country.* (336.)

rūsticus, -ī, m. [rūs], *countryman, peasant*. RUSTIC.

sacer, -era, -crum, adj., *sacred*.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently*.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*.

Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum, a town in Spain*.

Sallustius, -ī, m., *Sallust, a Roman historian*.

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, welfare*. SALUTARY.

Samnis, -ītis, m., *a Samnite*.

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood*. SANGUINARY. Cf. CRUOR.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible*.

sapienter, adv. [sapiēns], *wisely*.

satis, adv., *enough*. SATISFY.

Sāturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn, god of agriculture*.

saxum, -ī, n., *rock*.

schola, -ae, f., *school*.

sciō, 4, scīvī, scītum, *know, know how*. SCIENCE.

Scipiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio, a famous Roman general*.

scrība, -ae, m. [scrībō], (*one who writes*), *clerk*. SCRIBE.

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptum [scrība], *write*. SCRIBBLE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer, author*.

scrīptum, -ī, n. [scrībō], *writing, written work*. SCRIPT.

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.

se-cēdō, 3, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go apart, withdraw, retire; secede*.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second; favorable*.

sed, conj., *but*. (393.)

sedeō, 2, sedī, sēssum, *sit*. SESSION.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], *seat, abode*.

semper, adv., *always, ever*.

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting*.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator*.

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate*.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age*.

senex, senis, adj., *old*; noun, *old man*. (262.) SENILE.

senior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of senex], *elder, old person*.

sēnsus, -ūs, m. [sentiō], *feeling, sense, perception*.

sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion, purpose*. SENTENCE.

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsū [sēnsus], *feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive*.

septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

September, -bris, m. [septem], *September*. Often as adj.

septem-decim, num. adj. [decem], *seventeen*.

septiēs, num. adv. [septem], *seven times*.

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septem], *seventh*.

sequor, 3, secūtus, *follow*. SEQUENCE.

serō, 3, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant*.

serta, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers*.

sērus, -a, -um, adj., *late*.

serviō, 4. [servus], *be a slave to, serve*; w. dat.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], *slavery, servitude*.

servō, 1, *save, keep; preserve*.

servus, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave, servant*. (66.)

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty*.

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth*.

sī, conj., *if, whether.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus, in this manner.*

Cf. ita.

Sicca, -ae, m., *Sicca, a friend of Cicero.*

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily.*

sīdus, -eris, n., *star, constellation.*

SIDEREAL. (301.)

sīgnum, -ī, n., *mark, sign, signal.*

silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest.* SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling, similar.* (207.)

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple, plain, artless.*

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time.*

sīn, conj. [sī-nē], *but if, however, if.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *separate, single, one by one.* (311. 8.)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left (hand).* SINISTER.

sinō, 3, sīvī, situm, *allow, permit.*
Cf. permittō.

sinus, -ūs, m., *bosom, lap, folds of a garment.*

sītis, -is, f. (acc. -im, abl. -ī), *thirst.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

socius, -ī, m., *ally, companion.* ASSOCIATE.

Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun* (no gen. plur.).
SOLAR.

soleō, 2, solitus, *be accustomed, wont.*
(p. 177, note 2.)

Solōn, -ōnis, m., *Solon, the great law-giver of Athens.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, single; sole.* (200.)

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum, *loose, loosen; break; weigh anchor, set sail.*

SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, -tis, f., *lot, condition.* SORT.

sortior, 4 [sors], *draw lots, obtain by lot.*

spargō, 3, -sī, -sum, *strew, scatter.*
SPARSE.

Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus, a gladiator.*

spatium, -ī, n., *room, space; period.*

spectō, 1 [speciō, look], *look at, behold, witness.* SPECTACLE.

specular, 1, *spy out, watch.*

specus, -ūs, m., *cave, den.*

spērō, 1 [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, speī, f. [spērō], *hope, expectation.*

spoliō, 1, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

statim, adv. [stō], (*standing there*), *on the spot, immediately, at once.*

statua, -ae, f. [statuō], (*the thing set up*), *statue.*

statuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, *put, place; determine, think, believe.*

stella, -ae, f., *star.* (301.) STELLAR.

stō, 1, steti, statum, *stand.*

strāgēs, -is, f., *slaughter, carnage.*

stringō, 3, -nxī, strictum (*draw tight*), *graze; draw, unsheath.*

studeō, 2, -uī, — [studium], *be eager, strive earnestly for; study; w. dat.*

studium, -ī, n. [studeō], *zeal, eagerness; study.*

stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus], *folly.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *foolish, silly.*

suāvis, -e, adj., *sweet, delightful.*
Cf. dulcis. SUAVITY.

suāviter, adv. [suāvis], *sweetly, delightfully.*

sub-dūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, *draw from under, draw up.*

subeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *go under or up to, enter; undergo.* (327.)

subitō, adv. [subeō], *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

sub-moveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum (*move from beneath*), *remove, drive away.*

subsidiū, -ī, n. [subsideo], *aid, support, relief, assistance.*

sub-siliō, 4, -uī, — [saliō, leap], *jump up.* Cf. dēsiliō and trānsiliō.

sub-veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist.* Cf. succurrō.

suc-currō, 3, -currī, -cursum [sub], (*run up to*), *help, aid, succor.*

suf-ferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum [sub], *bear up under, undergo.* SUFFER.

suī, reflex. pron., *of himself (herself, itself, themselves).* (264.)

Sūlla, -ae, m., *Sulla, a famous Roman general and statesman.*

sum, esse, fuī, —, *be, exist.* (72.)

summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of superus, *highest.*

sūmō, 3, sūmpsi, sūmptum, *take, take up; assume.*

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, on top of.*

superbē, adv. [superbus], *proudly, haughtily.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj. [super], *proud.* SUPERB.

superior, -us, adj., comp. of superus, *higher, superior.*

superō, 1 [super], *pass over; surpass, overcome; conquer.* (186.)

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *remain over; survive, exist.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of superus, *highest; last.*

suscipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub, capiō], *undertake.*

sus-pendō, 3 -dī, -pēnsūm [sub], *hang up, suspend, hang.*

suspisor, 1 [suspiciō, look askance at], *mistrust, suspect.*

sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [suī], *his, hers, her, its, theirs, their (own).*

taceō, 2, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent, be silent about.* ТАЧИТ.

taedet, 2, taeduit, taesum est, impers., *it disgusts, wearies; (one) is disgusted, wearied.* (416.)

tālea, -ae, f., *thin bar.*

tam, adv., *so; tam . . . quam, as . . . as.* Cf. ita and sic.

tamen, adv., *yet, but, nevertheless.*

tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally.*

tangō, 3, tetigī, tactum, *touch.*

tantō, adv. [tantus], *by so much, so much the (with comparatives).*

tantum, adv. [tantus], *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great.*

Tarentinus, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine.*

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquin the Proud, seventh king of Rome.*

tectum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], *covering, shelter, roof.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*

tenerārius, -a, -um [temerē], *rash, inconsiderate.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, inconsiderately.*
temeritās, -ātis, f. [temerē], *chance; rashness, temerity.*

tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus], (*state or condition of time*), *weather; stormy weather, storm, tempest.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.* TEMPORAL.

tenebrae, -ārum, f., *darkness, shades.*

tenebricōsus, -a, -um, adj. [tenebrae], (*full of darkness*), *dark, gloomy*.

teneō, 2, -uī, tentum, *hold, keep, have*; memoriā tenēre, *remember*.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *soft, delicate, tender*.

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, light*.

ter, num. adv. [trēs], *thrice, three times*.

Terentius, -ī, m., *a Roman family name*.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*. **TER-RACE**.

terreō, 2 [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify*.

terror, -ōris [terreō], *terror, alarm*.

tertio, adv. [tertius], *the third time*.

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third*.

tertius decimus, num. adj., *thirteenth*.

testimōnium, -ī, n. [testor, bear witness], *witness, evidence, testimony*.

testūdō, -inis, f. [testa, shell], *tortoise*; shed or covering to protect besiegers.

Teutonēs, -um, m., *the Teutons, a German tribe*.

Thalēs, -is, m., *Thales, a Greek philosopher*.

Themistoclē, -is, m., *Themistocles, a famous Athenian*.

Ticinus, -ī, m., *the Ticinus, a river of Italy*.

tigris, -is, or -idis, *tiger*.

timeō, 2, -uī, — [timor], *fear, be afraid of*.

Timoleōn, -ontis, m., *Timoleon, a Corinthian general*.

timor, -ōris, m. [timeō], *fear, dread, alarm*. **TIMOROUS**.

tolerō, 1, *bear, endure*. **TOLERATE**

tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise, pick up*; weigh (anchor).

tot, adj., indecl., *so many*. Cf. quot.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire*. (200.) **TOTAL**.

tractō, 1 [trahō], *handle, manage, treat*.

trā-dō, 3, -didī, -ditum [trāns], *give over, deliver*; relate, recount. **TRA-DITION**.

trahō, 3, traxī, -ctum, *draw, drag*; derive.

trā-iciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum [trāns, jaciō], *throw across*; pass over, cross.

trājectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō], *a crossing over, passage*.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquillus], *calmness, tranquillity*; a calm.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over*.

trān-scendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsūm [scandō, climb], *step or pass over*; cross. **TRANSCEND**.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *go over, cross*. (372.)

trāns-figō, 3, -fixī, -fixum, *pierce through, pierce, stab*; **transfix**.

trān-siliō, 4, -iī, and -uī, — [salīō, leap], *leap over or across*. Cf. dēsiliō and subsiliō.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [trēs, centum], *three hundred*.

tredecim, num. adj., indecl. [trēs, decem], *thirteen*.

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three*. (311. 4.)

tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], *tribune*.

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty*.

tripartitō, adv. [trēs, partior], *in three divisions*.

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy*.
triumphus, -ī, *triumph*.
 tū, pers. pron., *thou*. (264.)
 tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*. (14.)
 tueor, 2, tuitus, and tūtus, *look at; watch, defend, guard*. Cf. dēfendō.
Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia, Cicero's daughter*.
 tum, adv., *at that time, then*.
 tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then*.
 turgidulus, -a, -um, adj., *swollen*.
 TURGID.
 turpis, -e, adj., *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful*.
 turpiter, adv. [turpis], *foully, basely, shamefully*.
 turpitūdō, -inis, f. [turpis], *ugliness, baseness*.
 turris, -is, f., *tower*. (149.)
 tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [P. of tueor], *safe*.
 tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one).
 tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant*.
 ubi, adv., *where, when*.
 ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus], *any, any one*. (200.)
 ūlterior, -us, adj., comp. (no positive), *further*.
 ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of ūlterior), *furthest, last*. ULTIMATE.
 umerus, -ī, m., *shoulder*.
 unde, adv., *whence*.
 undi-que, adv., *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere*.
 ūni-versus, -a, -um, adj., (*turned into one*), *all together*.
 unquam, adv., *at any time, ever*.
 ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one; alone*. (200, 311, 3.)

urbs, -is, f., *city*. (163.) SUBURBS.
 urgeō, 2, ursī, —, *press, drive, impel, urge*.
 usque, adv., *all the time, continually*.
 ut or utī, adv. and conj., *how, as; that, in order that, so that*.
 uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron., *which of two*. (200.)
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., *each of two, both*. (200.)
 ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous*.
 uti-nam, adv., *would that, O that, I wish that*.
 ūtor, 3, ūsus, *use, employ*; w. abl.
 utrum, adv., *whether*; used chiefly in double questions.
 ūva, -ae, f., *grape, bunch of grapes*.
 uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*. Cf. conjunx.
 vagor, 1, *go to and fro, wander*.
 VAGRANT.
 valeō, 2, -uī, -itum, *be strong or well; valē, farewell, good by*. Cf. convalēscō.
 valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health*.
 validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy*. VALID.
 vallis (or vallēs), -is, f., *valley, vale*.
 varius, -a, -um, adj., *different, changeable, various*.
 Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro, a Roman consul*.
 vastō, 1 [vastus, *waste, desolate*], *lay waste, ravage*.
 vehō, 3, vexī, vectum, *carry, draw, convey*; pass., *ride, sail*.
 vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, fleet, quick*. (179.) VELOCITY.
 vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, *hunt*], *hunter*.

venēnum, -ī, N., *poison*. VENOM.
venia, -ae, F., *indulgence, mercy, kindness*. VENIAL.
veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come*.
ventus, -ī, M., *wind*.
Venus, -eris, F., *Venus, goddess of love*.
Venusia, -ae, F., *Venusia, a town in Apulia*.
venustus, -a, -um, adj. [Venus], *lovely, charming*.
vēr, vēris, N., *spring*. VERNAL.
verbum, -ī, N., *word*. VERB.
vereor, 2, *reverence, respect, fear*.
vērō, adv. and conj. [vērus], *in truth, in fact, but in fact*.
vērūm, -ī, N. [vērus], *the truth*.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true, real*.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *your, yours (of more than one)*.
veterrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of *vetus*.
vestiō, 4 [vestis, garment], *clothe*.
vetō, 1, -uī, -itum, *forbid, prevent*. VETO.
vetus, -eris, adj. (comp. *vetustior*, superl. *veterrimus*), *old*. (141, 208.)
vetustior, -us, adj., comp. of *vetus*.
via, -ae, F., *way, road, street*.
vicinus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], *near, neighboring*. VICINITY.
vīctor, -ōris, M. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor*.
vīctōria, -ae, F. [vīctor], *victory*.
vīcus, -ī, M., *village*.
videō, 2, vīdī, vīsum, *see, perceive*; pass., *be seen, seem*. VISION.
vigil, adj. [vigeō, *be lively*], *watchful*. (151. 4.) VIGILANT.
vigilia, -ae, F. [vigilō, *vigil*], *a watching, watch, i.e., the fourth part of the night*.
vigilō, 1 [vigil], *watch*.

vigintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty*.
vinciō, 4, vīnxī, vinctum, *bind*.
vincō, 3, vicī, vīctum, *conquer, de feat*. (186.)
vindicō, 1, *claim; avenge, punish*. VINDICATE.
vīnum, -ī, N., *wine*.
viola, -ae, F., *violet*.
vir, virī, M., *man, hero*. (138, 262.)
virgō, -inis, F., *maiden, virgin*.
virtūs, -ūtis, F. [vir], *(manliness), courage, bravery; virtue*.
vīs, vīs, F. (gen. and dat., rare), *strength, power*. (262.)
vīta, -ae [vīvō], *life*. VITAL.
vītis, -is, F. [vīcō, *twist together*], *vine*.
vītium, -ī, N. [vītis], *(a moral twist), fault, blemish, vice*. Cf. culpa.
vītō, 1, *avoid, shun*.
vitrum, -ī, N., *wood, a dye*.
vituperō, 1, *blame, censure*. VITUPERATION. Cf. culpō.
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum [vīvus], *live*. (194.)
vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive, living*.
vix, adv., *hardly, with difficulty*.
volō, velle, volūī, —, *wish, be willing, desire, intend*. (316, 319.)
voluptās, -ātis, F., *pleasure, enjoyment*.
vōx, vōcis, F. [vocō, *call*], *voice*.
vulnerō, 1 [vulnus], *wound, hurt, injure*. VULNERABLE.
vulnus, -eris, N. [vulnerō], *wound*.
vulpēs, -is, F., *fox*.
vultus, -ūs, M., *countenance, looks, features*.
Zama, -ae, F., *Zama, a town in Africa*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

a

a, commonly not translated; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (279. 5).
able (be), possum (292).
about, dē, *w. abl.*
absent (be), absum (297).
accept, accipiō, 3.
accompany, comitor, 1.
accord (own), ipse, -a, -um (270. 6).
accuse, accūsō, 1.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
act, agō, 3.
admire, admīror, 1.
admonish, moneō, 2 (112).
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.
advice, cōsiliūm, -ī, n.
advise, moneō, 2 (112).
afar, longē.
affair, rēs, rei, f. (254.)
afraid (be), metuō, 3; timeō, 2.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.
after, post, *w. acc.*; cum, *w. subj.*; postquam, *w. ind.*
afterwards, postea, deinde.
again, iterum, rursus.
against, adversus, contrā, in, *w. acc.*
age (old), senectūs, -ūtis, f.
agriculture, agrī cultūra, -ae, f.
aīd, auxiliūm, -ī, n.
air, aēr, aēris, m.
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, m.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.

arrangement

all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (200).
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um (200).
aloud (read), recitō, 1.
altar, āra, -ae, f.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.; ōrātor, -ōris, m.
among, in, *w. abl.*; inter, *w. acc.*
ancient, antiqūus, -a, -um; vetus, -cris (141).
and, et; atque, or *ac*; -que.
Androclus, Androclus, -ī, m.
anger, īra, -ae, f.
angrily, cum īrā (144).
animal, animal, -ālis, n. (149).
another, alius, -a, -ud (201); one . . . another, alius . . . alius.
another's, aliēnus, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō, 2, *w. dat.*
any, ūllus, -a, -um (200); aliquis, -qua, -quid, or -quod (279); quis (p. 211, note 15); quisquam, —, quidquam (279. 6).
approach, appropinquō, 1, *w. dat.*, and ad, *w. acc.*
arm, n., bracciūm, -ī, n.
arm, v., armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m., *the general word*; on the march, āgmen, -īnis, n.; in order of battle, acies, -cī, f.
Arpium, Arpīum, -ī, n.
arrangement, ōrdō, -īnis, m.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, adveniō, 4; perveniō, 4.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
art, ars, artis, F.
as, ut; *as . . . as*, tam . . . quam;
same . . . as, idem . . . quī; (= *since*), cum; (= *when*), cum.
Asia, Asia, -ae, F.
ashamed (be), pudet, 2 (415).
ask of, quaerō, 3.
assemble, conveniō, 4.
at, in, *w. acc. or abl.*; *ad*, *w. acc.*;
apud, *w. acc.*; *in combination w.*
verbs (wonder at, etc.), see the
verbs; w. names of towns, locative
case (334).
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -e.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, F.
attentively, diligenter.
author, auctor, -ōris, M.
away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.
away from, *ā or ab*, *w. abl.*; *ē or*
ex, *w. abl.*

back (bring or carry), referō
(321); reportō, 1.
bad, malus, -a, -um; improbus, -a,
-nm.
basely, turpiter.
battle, pūgna, -ae, F.; proelium,
-ī, N.
be, sum (73).
bear, ferō (321); vehō, 3; tolerō,
1; (*off*), auferō.
beast, bēstia, -ae, F.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
beauty, pulchritūdō, -inis, F.
because, quod; quia.
become, fiō (327); *it becomes*,
debet, 2 (415).
beg, petō, 3; ōrō, 1.
begin, incipiō, 3; ordior, 4.
believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*

benefit, *n.*, beneficium, -ī, N.
benefit, *v.*, prōsum (293), *w. dat.*
besiege, obsideō, 2; oppugnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -nm.
better, melior, -us, *compar. of bo-*
nus (208).
between, inter, *w. acc.*
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, F. (154).
black, niger, -gra, -grum; āter,
ātra, ātrum.
blame, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, M.; cruor,
-ōris, M.
boar, aper, aprī, M.
boat, nāvicula, -ae, F.; cymba,
-ae, F.
body, corpus, -oris, N.
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, -brī, M.
booty, praeda, -ae, F.
born (be), nascor, 3.
Boston, Bostonia, -ae, F.
both (each of two), uterque, utra-
que, utrumque (200); *both . . .*
and, et . . . et.
boy, puer, -erī, M.
bow, arcus, -ūs, M. (247).
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, F.
break, frangō, 3; (*through*) per-
fringō, 3.
breeze, ventus, -ī, M.; aura, -ae, F.
bribe, corrumpō, 3.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, portō, 1; ferō (321); (*up*),
ēducō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvus, -ī, M.

brother, frāter, -tris, M.
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, M.
build, aedificō, 1.
burden, onus, -eris, N.
but, at; autem; sed (393); (**that**),
 quīn.
buy, emō, 3.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; (*denoting means*
or instrument), *w. abl. alone.*

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, M.
call, nōminō, 1; appellō, 1; vocō, 1.
calm, æquus, -a, -um; placidus, -a,
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. [-um].
Campania, Campānia, -ae, F.
can, possum (292).
care, cūra, -ae, F.
carefully, diligenter; cum cūrā
 (144).
carry, portō, 1; ferō (321);
 (**back**), referō; *carry on war*,
 bellum gerere.
cart, carrus, -ī, M.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inīs, F.
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, M.
certain (a), quīdam, quaedam,
 quid(quod)dam (279. 4); *sure*,
 certus, -a, -um.
chance, fors, -tis, F.; cāsus, -ūs, M.
change, mūtō, 1.
cherish, colō, 3.
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, M.
children, puerī, -ōrum, M.; libe-
 rī, -ōrum, M. (60).
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, M.
Cimbri, Cimbri, -ōrum, M.
circumstance, rēs, rei, F.
citadel, arx, arcis, F.
citizen, cīvis, -is, M. *and* F. (154.)
city, urbs, -is, F.
clerk, scrība, -ae, M.
cliff, rūpēs, -is, F.
clothe, vestiō, 4.

cold, *adj.*, frīgīdus, -a, -um.
cold, *n.*, frīgus, -oris, N.
Collatinus, Collatīnus, -ī, M.
come, veniō, 4; (**down**), dēscen-
 dō, 3; (**out**), ēgredior, 3; (**to-**
gether), conveniō, 4; (**off**),
 abeō (327).
coming, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, M.
command, imperō, 1, *w. dat.*; ju-
 beō, 2, *w. acc.*; praesum, *w. dat.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.;
 dux, ducis, M.
commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei
 pūblicae, F.
comrade, comes, -itis, M. *and* F.
companion, comes, -itis, M. *and* F.
compel, cōgō, 3.
condemn, damnō, 1.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3 (186).
consul, cōsul, -is, M.
consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, M.
contemplate, contemplor, 1.
contented, contentus, -a, -um, *w.*
abl.
converse, colloquor, 3.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, F.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
correct, corrigō, 3.
counsel, cōsilium, -ī, N.
country (fatherland), patria, -ae,
 F.; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, N.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
covered with leaves, frondōsus,
 -a, -um.
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae, F.
cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
create, creō, 1.
creator, creātor, -ōris, M.
cross, *tr.*, trāscendō, 3; *tr. and*
intr., trānseō (327).
cruelly, crūdēliter.
cultivate, colō, 3.
Cumae, Cūmae, -ārum, F.
cunning, *n.*, calliditās, -ātis, F.

cup, pōculum, -ī, N.

Cyrus, Cŷrus, -ī, M.

Dædalus, Daedalus, -ī, M.

daily, cotīdiē.

danger, perīculum, -ī, N.

daughter, filia, -ae, F.

day, diēs, -ēī, M. *and* F. (254).

daybreak (at), primā lūce.

dear, cārus, -a, -um.

death, mors, -tis, F.

deep, altus, -a, -um; profundus, -a, -um.

defeat, *n.*, clādēs, -is, F.

defeat, *v.*, vincō, 3; superō, 1 (186).

defend, dēfendō, 3.

defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.

delay, mora, -ae, F.

delight, dēlectō, 1.

deliver, dēferō (321).

demand restitution, rēs repetō, 3.

Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is.

depart, discēdō, 3; excō (327).

deprive, prīvō, 1; *w. abl.*

descend, dēscendō, 3.

desert, dēserō, 3.

deserve, mercō, mereor, 2.

design, cōsiliū, -ī, N.

desire, volō (316); dēsīderō, 1 (319); cupiō, 3.

despair, dēspērō, 1.

despise, contemnō, 3.

destroy, dēleō, 2.

difficult, difficilis, -e. (207.)

difficulty (with), vix.

diligently, dīlīgenter.

discharge, fungor, 3, *w. abl.*

disclose, ēnūntiō, 1.

disgraceful, turpis, -e.

disgusted (be), piget, 2 (416).

divide, dīvidō, 3; (*share*), partior, 4.

do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.

dog, canis, -is, M. *and* F.

doubt, *n.*, dubium, -ī, N.

doubt, *v.*, dubitō, 1.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.

dove, columba, -ae, F.

down (tear), rescindō, 3; (*come*) dēscendō, 3.

draw, trahō, 3; (*up*), subducō, 3.

drink, bibō, 3.

drive, agō, 3; (*off*), submoveō, 2.

duty, officium, -ī, N.

dwell, habitō, 1; vīvō, 3 (194).

each (one), quisque quaeque, quid(quod)que (279. 4); (*of two*), uterque utraque, utrumque (200).

eagle, aquila, -ae, F.

earth, terra, -ae, F.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e. (207.)

eat, edō, 3.

egg, ovum, -ī, N.

eight, octō.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

elegant, ēlegāns, -antis.

elephant, elephantus, -ī, M.

else, alius, -a, -ud (201).

embark, cōnscendō, 3.

employ, admoveō, 2; ūtor, 3, *w. abl.*

encircle, ciugō, 3.

end, *n.*, fīnis, -is, M. (154.)

end, *v.*, finiō, 4.

endure, patior, 3; ferō (321), tolerō, 1.

endurance, fortitūdō, -inis, F.

enemy, hostis, -is, M. *and* F.; inimicus, -ī, M. (172).

enjoy, fruor, 3, *w. abl.*

Ennius, Ennius, -ī, M.

enough, satis.

enter, ingrediōr, 3; incō (327).

entertain the hope, veniō in spem.

entreaty, precēs, -um, F.

Epirus, Ēpīrus, -ī, F.

equally, pariter.

equanimity, aequus animus, M.

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.

even, etiam; ipse (270. 6).

evident (it is), cōnstat, 1.

excellently, optimē.

explain, explicō, 1.

expulsion, P. of expellō.

eye, oculus, -i, M.

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, M.

fact, rēs, rei, F.

fail, dēficiō, 3; dēsum (297).

fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrom.

faithful, fīdus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e.

faithfully, fidēliter.

Faliscans, Faliscī, -ōrum, M.

famous, clārus, -a, -um.

far and wide, longē lātēque.

farmer, agricola, -ae, M.

father, pater, -tris, M.

father-in-law, socer, -erī, M.

fault, vitium, -ī, N.; culpa, -ae, F.; find fault with, vituperō, 1; culpō, 1.

favor, faveō, 2, w. dat.

fear, n., metus, -ūs, M.

fear, v., timeō, 2; metuō, 3.

few, paucī, -ae, -a.

fidelity, fidēs, -eī, F.

field, ager, agrī, M.

fierce, atrōx, -ōcis; ferōx, -ōcis.

fiftieth, quinquāgēsimus, -a, -um.

fifty, quinquāgintā.

fight, pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.

fill, impleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētum; com-pleō, 2.

finally, dēnique.

find, reperiō, 4; inveniō, 4.

finger, dīgitus, -ī, M.

finish, finiō, 4; cōnficiō, 3.

fire, īguis, -is, M.

first, p̄m̄us, -a, -um.

fit, aptō, 1.

five, quīnque.

five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.

flee, fugiō, 3.

fleet, clāssis, -is, F. (154.)

flight, fuga, -ae, F.

flock, grex, gregis, F.

flow, fluō, 3.

flower, flōs, flōris, M.

fodder, pābulum, -ī, N.

follow, sequor, 3.

folly, stultitia, -ae, F.

food, cibus, -ī, M.

foot, pēs, pedis, M.

foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, M.

for, conj., nam; enim (not the first word).

for, sign of dative; prep., dē, prō, w. abl.; of time, space, purpose, in, w. acc.

forces, cōpia, -arum, F.

forget, obliviscor, 3.

forgetful, oblitus, -a, -um.

former (the), ille (275. 6).

forth (go), exeō (327); ēgre-dior, 3.

fortify, mūniō, 4.

fortune, fortūna, -ae, F.

forty, quadrāgintā.

forum, forum, -ī, N.

forward (go), prōcēdō, 3; prō-gredior, 3.

foully, turpiter.

fourteen, quattuordecim.

fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.

free, liber, -era, -erum. (71.)

free from, liberō, 1; w. abl.

friend, amicus, -ī, M.

frighten, terreō, 2.

frog, rāna, -ae, f.

from, dē, *w. abl.*; *away from*, ā or ab, *w. abl.*; *out of*, ē or ex, *w. abl.*; (afar), longē.

fruit, fructus, -ūs, m.

full, plēnus, -a, -um.

furnish, praebeō, 2.

Galba, Galba, -ae, m.

game, lūdus, -ī, m.

garden, hortus, -ī.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.

Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, m.

general, dux, ducis, m. and f.; imperātor, -ōris, m.

Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, m.

get, adipiscor, 3; (**possession**), potior, 4, *w. abl.*; (**by lot**), sortior, 4.

gift, dōnum, -ī, n.

girl, puella, -ae, f.

give, dō, 1.

glory, glōria, -ae, f.

go, eō (327); (**forth or out**), exeō; (**off or away**), abeō; discēdō, 3; (**down**), dēscendō, 3.

God, Deus, -ī, m. (262).

goddess, dea, -ae, f.

gold, aurum, -ī, n.

golden, aureus, -a, -um.

good, bonus, -a, -um (71, 208).

good thing, bonum, -ī, n.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.

great, māgnus, -a, -um.

greatly, māximē.

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.

guard, n., custōs, -ōdis, m. and f.

guard, v., custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, f.

handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.

happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix, -icis.

hard, dūrus, -a, -um; (*difficult*), difficilis, -e.

hasten, contendō, 3.

haughtily, superbē.

have, habeō, 2.

he, is, hīc (270); ille (275).

head, caput, -itis, n.; *be at the head of*, praesum (297).

headlong, praecipit, -cipitis.

hear, audiō (223).

heart, cor, cordis, n.

heat, calor, -ōris, m.

heaven, caelum, -ī, n.

heavy, gravis, -e.

Hector, Hector, -oris, m.

hero, vir, virī, m. (262).

hesitate, dubitō, 1; cuuctor, 1.

high, altus, -a, -um.

hill, collis, -is, m. (154.)

himself, see self.

his, ejus (270); illius (275); (**own**), suus, -a, -um.

history, historia, -ae, f.

hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2.

home, domicilium, -ī, n.; domus, -ūs, f. (262).

Homer, Homērus, -ī, m.

honor, n., honestās, -ātis, f.

honor, v., honōrō, 1.

hope, spēs, -ei, f.

Horatius, Horātius, -ī, m.

horn, cornū, -ūs, n.

horse, equus, -ī, m.

horseback (ride), in equō vehī; equitō, 1.

horseman, horse-soldier, eques, -itis, m.

hour, hōra, -ae, f.

house, domus, -ūs, f. (262).

how, quam; (**many**), quot.

huge, māgnus, -a, -um; immānis, -e; ingēns, -entis.

human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum.
hunger, famēs, -is, f.
hunter, vēnātōr, -ōris, m.
hurl, coniciō, 3.
hurtful (be), nocēō, 2, *v. dat.*
hustle, exturbō, 1.

I, ego (264).

Icarus, Īcarus, -ī, m.
if, sī; *if not*, nisi.
ignorant (be), nesciō, 4; īgnōrō.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
imitate, imitor, 1.
immediately, statim.
in, in, *v. abl.*
increase, augeō, 2.
inhabitant, incolā, -ae, m. *and f.*
inhabit, habitō, 1; incolō, 3.
injure, nocēō, 2; obsum; *v. dat.*
instruct, ērudīō, 4; doceō, 2.
intend, in animō est; *v. dat.*
into, in, *v. acc.*
invite, invitō, 1.
iron (of), ferreus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id (270).
Italian, Ītalus, -ī, m.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, f.
itself, *see self.*

Janus, Jānus, -ī, m.
javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.
jewel, ōrnāmentum, -ī, n.
joy, gaudium, -ī, n.
judge, jūdex, -icis, m. (105).
judgment, jūdicium, -ī, n.
Julius, Jūlius, -ī, m.
Jupiter, Jūppiter, Jovis, m. (262).
justly, jūstē.

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep off, arceō, 2.

kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occīdō, 3.
kind, benignus, -a, -um.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.; imperium, -ī, n.
knife, culter, -trī, m.
know, know how, sciō, 4.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, dēsum (297)
Laevinus, Laevīnus, -ī, m.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m. (247).
land, ager, agrī, m.; terra, -ae, f.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēmus, -a, -um.
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
latter (the), hīc, haec, hōc (275. 5).
laugh, rīdeō, 2; (at), irrīdeō, 2; (aloud), cachinnō, 1.
law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lead, dūcō, 3; (out), ēdūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, m. *and f.*
leaf, folium, -ī, n.
leap over, trānsiliō, 4.
learn, discō, 3.
leg, crūs, crūris, n.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
lesson, pēnsum, -ī, n.
let, *sign of subj. or imperative.*
letter, epistula, -ae, f.; litterae, -ārum, f.
levy, dēlēctus, -ūs, m.
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, *adj.*, levis, -c (150).
light, *n.*, lūx, lūcis, f.; lūmen -inis, n.
like, amō, 1.
likeness, imāgō, -inis, f.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.

lion, leō, -ōnis, M. (134).
listen, audiō, 4 (223).
literature, litterae, -ārum, F.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vivō, 3; habitō, 1 (194).
long, longus, -a, -um; *a long time*, diū.
longer (no), jam, *w. neg.*
look at, spectō, 1.
lose, amittō, 3; perdō, 3.
lot (obtain by), sortior, 4.
loud (laugh out), cachinnō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (319).
low, humilis, -e.
lucky, fēlix, -icis.

maiden, puella, -ae, F.
make, faciō, 3; (**trial of**), experior, 4.
man, vir, virī, M. (262); homo, -inis, M. (138).
Manlius, Manlius, -ī, M.
manner, mōs, mōris, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ī, M.
marshal, īstruō, 3.
master, dominus, -ī, M.; magister, -trī, M.
may, licet; *w. dat.*
means (by means of), *use abl.*
meet, obeō (327); *go to meet*, obviam eō, *w. dat.*
memory, memoria, -ae, F.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
migrate, migrō, 1.
mind, animus, -ī, M.; mēns, mentis, F. (273).
mindful, memor, -oris (150).
mine, meus, -a, -um (266).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, F.
miserable, miser, -era, -erum.
miss, dēsiderō, 1.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, M.
modesty, modestia, -ae, F.

month, mēnsis, -is, M.
monument, monumentum, -ī, N.
moon, lūna, -ae, F.
more, plūs (208), magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (208).
mother, māter, -tris, F.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (208).
multitude, multitūdo, -inis, F.
must, oportet, 2; *gerundive.*
my, meus, -a, -um (266).

name, nōmen, -inis, N.
nation, gēns, gentis, F.
native land, patria, -ae, F.
near, prope, *w. acc.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, M.
never, nunquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, F.
nightingale, luscīnia, -ae, F.
ninety, nōnāgintā.
ninth, nōns, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, M. *and F.* (286); *that no one (neg. purpose)*, nē quis.
no longer, jam, *w. neg.*
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
nourish, alō, 3; nūtriō, 4.
now, nunc; jam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, M.
number, numerus, -ī, M.
nurture, nūtriō, 4.

oak, quercus, -ūs, F.
obey, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*
obtain, adipiscor, 3; potior, 4, *w. abl.*; (by lot), sortior, 4.
ocean, ōceanus, -ī, M.

- of**, *sign of genitive*; *dē*, *w. abl.*; (*out of*), *ē* or *ex*, *w. abl.*
- offer**, *prōpōnō*, 3; *offerō* (321); *praebeō*, 2.
- often**, *saepe*.
- old**, *antīquus*, -a, -um; *vetus*, -eris (141); (**man**), *senex*, -is (262); (**age**), *senectūs*, -ūtis, *F.*
- on**, *in*, *w. abl.*; (*of time*), *abl.*
- one**, *ūnus*, -a, -um (200); *one . . . another*, *alius . . . alius*; *the one . . . the other*, *alter . . . alter*.
- open**, *adj.*, *patēns*, -entis.
- open**, *v.*, *aperiō*, 4.
- opinion**, *jūdicium*, -ī, *N.*
- oppose**, *obsistō*, 3; *w. dat.*
- orator**, *orātōr*, -ōris, *M.*
- order**, *v.*, *imperō*, 1, *w. dat.*; *jubeō*, 2, *w. acc.*
- order** (*in order to*), *ut*, *w. subj.*
- other**, *alius*, -a, -ud (201); *some . . . others*, *aliī . . . aliī*; (*of two*), *alter*, -era, -erum.
- ought**, *dēbeō*, 2; *oportet*, 2; *gerundive*.
- our**, *noster*, -tra, -trum.
- ourselves**, *see self*.
- out**, *in combination w. verbs*, *see the verbs*.
- out of**, *ē* or *ex*, *w. abl.*
- over**, *in combination w. verbs*, *see the verbs*.
- overcome**, *vincō*, 3; *superō*, 1 (186).
- owe**, *dēbeō*, 2.
- own**, *proprius*, -a, -um; (**his, her, their**), *suus*, -a, -um; (**my**), *meus*, -a, -um; (**our**), *noster*, -tra, -trum; (**your**), *vester*, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), *tuus*, -a, -um.
- pain**, *dolor*, -ōris, *M.*
- parent**, *parēns*, -entis, *M. and F.*
- part**, *pars*, *partis*, *F.*
- pass** (**narrow**), *angustiae*, -ārum, *F.*
- pass by**, *praetereō* (327).
- patience** (**with**), *patienter*; *cum patientiā* (144).
- patiently**, *patienter*.
- peace**, *pāx*, *pācis*, *F.*
- people**, *populus*, -ī, *M.*; (**common**), *plēbs*, -is, *F.*
- peril**, *perīculum*, -ī, *N.*
- perish**, *pereō* (327).
- Persians**, *Persae*, -ārum, *M.*
- physician**, *medicus*, -ī, *M.*
- place**, *n.*, *locus*, -ī, *M.*, *in plur.*, *M. and N.*
- place** *v.*, *pōnō*, 3.
- plain**, *planitiēs*, -eī, *F.*
- plan**, *cōnsilium*, -ī, *N.*
- pleasant**, *grātus*, -a, -um.
- pleasing**, *grātus*, -a, -um.
- pleasure**, *voluptās*, -ātis, *F.*; (**with**), *libenter*.
- pledge**, *fidēs*, -eī, *F.*
- plough**, *n.*, *arātrum*, -ī, *N.*
- plough**, *v.*, *arō*, 1.
- poem**, *poēma*, -atis, *N.*
- poet**, *poēta*, -ae, *M.*
- point** (**be on the**), *see 422*.
- Polyphemus**, *Polyphēmus*, -ī, *M.*
- Pompey**, *Pompējus*, *Pompēi*, *M.*
- poor**, *miser*, -era, -erum; *pauper*, -eris (167. 3).
- possess**, *habeō*, 2; *potior*, 4, *w. abl.*
- possession** (*get possession of*), *potior*, 4, *w. abl.*; *adipiscor*, 3.
- postpone**, *differō* (321).
- power**, *imperium*, -ī, *N.*
- praise**, *n.*, *laus*, *laudis*, *F.*
- praise**, *v.*, *laudō*, 1.
- precept**, *praeceptum*, -ī, *N.*
- prefer**, *mālō* (316).
- present** (**be**), *adsum*, *w. dat.*
- pretty**, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrom.
- prevent**, *prohibeō*, 2.

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.; captīva, -ae, f.

proceed, prōcēdō, 3.

proclamation (make), ēdīcō, 3.

promise, polliceor, 2; prōmit-tō, 3.

property, bona, -ōrum, n.

proud, superbus, -a, -um.

province, prōvincia, -ae, f.

prow, rōstrum, -ī, n.

prudence, prūdentia, -ae, f.

punish, pūniō, 4.

punishment, poena, -ae, f.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, m.

purpose (*for the purpose of*), ut or quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund* or *gerundive*; *supine*.

put (to flight), fugō, 1; (*off*), differō (321); (*by*), dēpōnō, 3; (*an end to*), fīniō, 4.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.

quickly, celeriter.

raise, tollō, 3; levō, 1.

rather (wish), mālō (316).

read, legō, 3; (*aloud*), recitō, 1.

receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3.

recite, recitō, 1.

recognize, āgnōscō, 3.

red, ruber, -bra, -brum.

refresh, recreō, 1.

Regulus, Rēgulus, -ī, m.

reign, rēgnō, 1.

relate, trādō, 3; nārrō, 1.

relieve, liberō, 1; *w. abl.*

remain, maneo, 2; restō, 1.

remember, memoriā teneō.

remove (= emigrate), dēmigrō, 1.

Remus, Remus, -ī, m.

render aid, auxiliū ferō.

renown, fāma, -ae, f.

renowned, amplus, -a, -um; clā-rus, -a, -um.

report, nūntiō, 1.

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūbli-cae, f.

respect, vereor, 2.

respects (in all), omnibus rēbus.

rest (the), cēterī, -ae, -a.

restitution (demand), rēs repe-tō, 3.

restrain, coerceō, 2.

results (it), fit (327).

retain, retineō, 2.

retreat, sē recipiō, 3.

return, redeō, (327).

reward, praemium, -ī, n.

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.

Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, m.

rich, dives, -itis (167. 3).

ride, *pass. of vehō*, 3; equitō, 1.

rightly, rēctē.

rise, orior, 4.

river, amnis, -is, m.; fluvius, -ī, m.; flūmen, -inis, n. (172).

road, via, -ae, f.

rob, spoliō, 1; prīvō, 1; *w. abl.*

robber, latrō, -ōnis, m.

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.

Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.

rose, rosa, -ae, f.

rough, asper, -era, -erum.

ruddy, ruber, -bra, -brum.

rule, regō, 3 (180); rēgnō, 1.

sad, trīstis, -e.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

sagacious, prūdēns, -entis.

sail, *pass. of vehō*, 3; nāvigō, 1.

sailor, nauta, -ae, m.

sake (for the sake), causā, *w. gen.*

Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, m.

same, idem, eadem, idem (270).

Samnite, Samnīs, -ītis.

- Saturn**, Sāturnus, -ī, M.
save, servō, 1.
say, dicō, 3; (*keep saying*), dicitō, 1.
scare, terrēō, 2.
school, schola, -ae, F.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, M.
sea, mare, -is, N.
see, videō, 2; (*through*), perspiciō, 3.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
seem, videor, 2.
seize, rapiō, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um (270); suī (264).
send, mittō, 3; (*back*) remittō, 3.
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
September, Septembris, -bris, M.
servant, minister, -trī, M.; servus, -ī, M. (66).
set-out, proficiscor, 3.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
share, partior, 4.
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea, ējus, F.
sheep, ovis, -is, F.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, M.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, -is, F. (154).
shore, litus, -oris, N.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, M.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
sick, aeger, -gra, -gram. (71.)
side, latus, -eris, N.
signal, sīgnum, -ī, N.
silent (be), taceō, 2.
since, cum, *v. subj.*
sing, canō, 3; cantō, 1.
sister, soror, -ōris, F.
sit, sedeō, 2.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
skilful, peritus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -ī, M. (66).
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, F.
slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.
sleep, *n.*, somnus, -ī, M.
sleep, *v.*, dormiō, 4.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smith, faber, -brī, M.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, M.
soldier, miles, -itis, M.
Solon, Solōn, -ōnis, M.
some one, aliquis, -qua, (quid) -quod (279.2); quīdam, quaedam, quod(quid)dam (279.5); *some . . . others*, alī . . . alī; (*of two parties*), alterī . . . alterī; *often not expressed*.
something, aliquid.
son, filius, -ī, M.
song, cantus, -ūs, M.; carmen, -inis, N. (278).
son-in-law, gener, -erī, M.
soon, mox.
soothe, molliō, 4.
source, fōns, fontis, M.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
spare, parcō, 3; *v. dat.*
speak, loquor, 3; dicō, 3; *speak to*, alloquor, 3.
spear, hasta, -ae, F.
spiritedly, ācriter.
spring, fōns, fontis, M.
spy, explōrātor, -ōris, M.
stab, trānsfigō, 3.
stain, maculō, 1.
star, stella, -ae, F. (301).
start (= set out), proficiscor, 3.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, F.
statue, statua, -ae, F.
step, gradus, -ūs, M. (245).
story, fābula, -ae, F.
street, via, -ae, F.
strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
study, *n.*, studium, -ī, N.

study, *v.*, studeō, 2, *v. dat.*
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
successfully, optimē; feliciter.
suddenly, imprōvisō.
suffer, patior, 3; tolerō, 1; sufferō (321).
suitable, opportūnus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, invitō, 1.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
surpass, superō, 1; vincō, 3 (186).
surrender, dēdō, 3.
surround, cingō, 3; circumveniō, 4.
survive, supersum (297).
swear, jūrō, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e.
swift, vēlōx, -ōcis; celer, -eris, -ere (179).
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
tail, cauda, -ae, *f.*
take, capiō, 3; sūmō, 3; *take a walk*, ambulō, 1.
tall, altus, -a, -um.
Tarentine, Tarentīnus, -ī, *m.*
Tarquiu, Tarquīnius, -ī, *m.*
task, pēsum, -ī, *n.*
teach, doceō, 2.
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*; praecceptor, -ōris, *m.*
tear down, rescindō, 3.
tedious, longus, -a, -um.
tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, 2.
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
than, quam; *abl.* (212).
that, *conj.* (*in purpose or result*

clauses), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (**not**), nē; (*after expressions of doubt*), quīn; *after verbs of saying and the like, not translated.*

that, *pron.* (*determ.*), is, ea, id (270); (*demon.*), ille, -a, -ud (275); iste, -a, -ud (275); (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod (279).

their, *gen. plur. of is*; (**own**), suus, -a, -um.

themselves, *see self.*

then, tum; deinde.

there, ibi; *as an expletive, not translated.*

thing, rēs, -eī, *f.*

think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (429).

thirst, sitis, -is, *f.* (*acc.* -im, *abl.* -ī).

thirty, trīgintā.

this, (*determ.*), is, ea, id (270); (*demon.*), hīc, haec, hōc (275).

thou, tū.

though, cum, *v. subj.*

thousand, mille (311. 6).

three, trēs, tria (311. 4).

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

thrust forth, exturbō, 1.

through, per, *v. acc.*

throw, jaciō, 3; coniciō, 3.

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*

tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, *sign of dative*; ad, in, *v. acc.*; (*expressing purpose*), ut, *v. subj.*; ad, *v. gerund or gerundive*; *supine.*

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum, *v. abl.*

toil, labōrō, 1.

to-morrow, crās.

too, quoque; (**much**), nimium.

touch, tangō, 3.

towards, ad, in, *v. acc.*

tower, turris, -is, *f.* (149).

town, oppidum, -ī, N.
 townsman, oppidānus, -ī, M.
 train, exerceō, 2.
 tree, arbor, -oris, F.
 trial (make), experior, 4.
 true, vērus, -a, -um.
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, F.
 truth, vērūm, -ī, N.
 try, experior, 4; cōnor, 1.
 turn, convertō, 3; (from), āvertō, 3; (out), ēveniō, 4.
 twenty, vīgintī.
 two, duo, -ae, -o (311. 4); (which of), uter, -tra, -trum; (each of), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
 tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
 undertake, suscipiō, 3; cōnor, 1.
 unwilling (be), nōlō (316).
 up, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.
 upon, in, w. acc. or abl.
 use, ūtor, 3; w. abl.
 useful, ūtilis, -e.

vain (in), frūstrā.
 valley, vallis (or vallēs), -is, F.
 valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
 very, superl. degree; admodum.
 victorious, victor, -ōris, M.
 victory, victōria, -ae, F.
 virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
 voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

wage (war), gerō, 3.
 wagon, carrus, -ī, M.
 walk (= take a walk), ambulō, 1.
 wall, mūrus, -ī, M.
 wander, vagor, 1.
 want (= wish), volō (316); dēsiderō, 1.
 want (= lack), careō, 2.

war, bellum, -ī, N.
 warn, moneō, 2.
 watch, vigilō, 1.
 watchful, vigil, -is (151. 4).
 water, aqua, -ae, F.
 way, via, -ae, F.; (= respect) rēs, reī, F.
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.
 weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
 weep, fleō, 2.
 welcome, excipiō, 3.
 well, bene.
 well (be), valeō, 2.
 what, interrog., quis, quae, quid (quod) (279); (= that which), id quod.
 when, cum.
 whether, num; utrum.
 which, quī, quae, quod (279); (of two), uter, utra, utrum (200).
 while, dum.
 white, albus, -a, -um; candidus, -a, -um.
 who, rel., quī, quae; interrog., quis, quae (279).
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
 why, cūr.
 wide, lātus, -a, -um.
 wife, uxor, -ōris, F.
 wild, ferus, -a, -um.
 wild beast, fera, -ae, F.
 wind, ventus, -ī, M.
 wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
 wing, āla, -ae, F.
 winter, hiems, -is, F.
 wise, sapiēns, -entis.
 wisely, sapiēter.
 wish, volō (316).
 with, cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone.
 without, sine, w. abl.
 witness, spectō, 1.
 wonder, miror, 1; (at), admīror, 1.

wooden, ligneus, -a, -um.
woods, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -ī, n.
work, *n.*, labor, -ōris, m.; opus, -eris, n.
work, *v.*, labōrō, 1.
world, mundus, -ī, m.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
would rather, mālō (316).
would that, utinam.
wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, n.
wound, *v.*, vulnerō, 1.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribō, 3.

writing, scriptum, -ī, n.
wrong, injūria, -ae, f.
year, annus, -ī, m.
yesterday, herī.
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (275. 3).
you, *sing.* tū, *plur.* vōs.
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m.; juvenis, -is, m.
your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester, -tra, -trum.
Zama, Zama, -ae, f.
zeal, studium, -ī, n.

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

ablative

ablative, ablātīvus, -ī, M.; (*of instrument*) īnstrūmentī; (*of agent*) agentis; (*of manner*) modī; (*of specification*) respectūs; (*of separation*) sēparātiōnis; (*of description*) quālitātis.

absolute, absolūtus, -a, -um.

accent, accentus, -ūs, M.

accusative, accūsātīvus, -ī, M.

active, āctīvus, -a, -um.

adjective, adjectīvum, -ī, N.

adverb, adverbium, -ī, N.

agent, agēns, -entis, M.

agree, congruō, 3; *v. abl.*; concordō, 1.

agreement, concordātiō, -ōnis, F.

alphabet, alphabētum, -ī, N.

answer, n., respōsum, -ī, N.

answer, v., respondeō, 2.

antecedent, antecēdēns, -entis, N.

apposition, appōsitiō, -ōnis, F.; (*bc in*) appōnō, 3.

cardinal, cardinālis, -e.

case, cāsus, -us, M.

clause, clausula, -ae, F.

common or appellative, appellātīvus, -a, -um.

comparative, comparātīvus, -a, -um.

comparison, comparātiō, -ōnis, F.

compound, compositus, -a, -um.

concessive, concessīvus, -a, -um.

condition, hypothesis, -is, F.; conditiō, -ōnis, F.

distributive

conditional, hypotheticus, -a, -um; conditionālis, -e.

conjugation, conjugātiō, -ōnis, F.

conjunction, conjunctiō, -ōnis, F.

consonant, littera cōsonāns, -antis, or cōsonāns, -antis, F.

construction, cōstrūctiō, -ōnis, F.

conversation, colloquium, -ī, N.

correct, *adj.*, iēctus, -a, -um.

correct, v., corrigō, 3; emendō, 1.

correctly, iēctē.

datave, datīvus, -ī, M.

declension, dēclīnātiō, -ōnis, F.

decline, dēclīnō, 1.

declinable, dēclīnābilis, -e.

defective, dēfectīvus, -a, -um.

degree, gradus, -ūs, M.

demonstrative, dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um.

deponent, dēpōnēns, -entis.

derive, trahō, 3.

description (abl. of), quālitās, -ātis, F.

determinative, dēfīnītus, -a, -um.

difference, discrīmen, -inis, N.

diminutive, dēminutīvum, -ī, N.

diphthong, diphthongus, -ī, M.

direct, dirēctus, -a, -um; rēctus, -a, -um.

discourse, orātiō, -ōnis, F.

discuss, tractō, 1.

dissyllable, dissyllabus, -ī, M.

distributive, distributīvus, -a, -um.

end, *v.*, dēsīnō, 3.

English, Anglicus, -a, -um.

English (in), Anglicē.

etymology, etymologia, -ae, *f.*

example, exemplum, -i, *N.*; (for)
ut; exemplī causā.

exception, exceptiō, -ōnis, *f.*

feminine, fēminīnus, -a, -um.

finite, finītus, -a, -um.

formation, formātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

future, futūrum, -ī, *N.*

future perfect, futūrum exāctum.

gender, genus, -eris, *N.*

genitive, genētīvus, -ī, *M.*

gerund, gerundium, -ī, *N.*

gerundive, gerundīvum, -ī, *N.*

govern, regō; *pass. of* jungō *or*
conjungō, *fol. by* cum *w. abl.*

grammar, grammatica, -ae, *f.*

imperative, modus imperātīvus
or imperātīvus, -ī, *M.*

imperfect, imperfectum, -ī, *N.*

impersonal, impersonālis, -e.

increase, crēscō, 3.

indicative, modus indicātīvus,
-ī, *M.*, *or* indicātīvus, -ī, *M.*

indeclinable, indēclīnābilis, -e.

indirect, indīrēctus, -a, -um; ob-
liquus, -a, -um.

infinitive, modus infīnītīvus *or*
infīnītīvus, -ī, *M.*

instrument, instrūmentum, -ī, *N.*

interjection, interjectiō, -ōnis, *f.*

interrogative, interrogātīvus, -a,
-um.

intransitive, intrānsītīvus, -a,
-um.

irregular, irrēgulāris, -e; anō-
malus, -a, -um.

Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.

Latin (in), Latīnē.

lesson, pēnsūm, -ī, *N.*

letter, littera, -ae, *f.*

limit, *v.*, limitō, 1.

liquid, liquidus, -a, -um.

locative, locātīvus, -ī, *M.*

long, longus, -a, -um; prōductus,
-a, -um.

manner, modus, -ī, *M.*

masculine, masculīnus, -a, -um.

mean, sīgnificō, 1.

meaning, sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

mistake, *n.*, error, -ōris, *M.*

mistake, *v.*, errō, 1.

monosyllable, monosyllabum, -ī,
N.

mood, modus, -ī, *M.*

mute, mūtus, -a, -um.

negative, negātīvus, -a, -um.

neuter, neuter, -tra, -trum.

nominative, nōminātīvus, -ī, *M.*

noun, nōmen, -inis, *N.*; substan-
tīvum, -ī, *N.*

numeral, numerālis, -e.

object, objectum, -ī, *N.*

ordinal, ordinālis, -e.

paradigm, paradigma, -atis, *N.*

participle, participium, -ī, *N.*

particle, particula, -ae, *f.*

partitive, partītīvus, -a, -um.

passive, passīvus, -a, -um.

perfect, perfectum, -ī, *N.*

person, persōna, -ae, *f.*

personal, persōnālis, -e.

phrase, phrasis, -is, *f.*

pluperfect, plūsquamperfectum,
-ī, *N.*

plural, plūrālis, -e.
positive, positīvus, -a, -um.
preposition, praepositio, -ōnis, F.
present, praesēns, -entis, N.
principal, princīpālis, -e.
pronoun, prōnōmen, -inis, N.
proper, proprius, -a, -um.

quantity, quantitās, -ātis, F.
question, interrogātiō, -ōnis, F.

reflexive, recīprocus, -a, -um; reflexīvus, -a, -um.
regular, rēgulāris, -e.
relative, relātīvus, -a, -um.
remember, memoriā teneō.
review, recōgnōscō, 3; (**lesson**) pēsum recōgnōscendum.
root, rādīx, -īcis, F.
rule, rēgula, -ae, F.

school, schola, -ae, F.
sentence, sententia, -ae, F.
separation, sēparātiō, -ōnis, F.
sequence, cōsecutiō, -ōnis, F.
short, brevis, -e; correptus, -a, -um.
sibilant, sībilus, -a, -um.
singular, singulāris, -e.
sound, sonus, -ī, M.
specification, respectus, -ūs, M.
speech (part of), orātiō, -ōnis, F.
stem, basis, -is, F.
study, *n.*, studium, -ī, N.

study, *v.*, studeō, 2.
subject, subjectum, -ī, N.
subjunctive, modus subjunctīvus, -ī, M., *or* subjunctīvus, -ī, M.
substantive, substantīvum, -ī, N.
substantively, substantivē.
superlative, superlātīvus, -a, -um.
supine, supīnum, -ī, N.
syllable, syllaba, -ae, F.
syntax, syntaxis, -is, F.

teacher, praeceptor, -ōris, M.; magister, -trī, M.; magistra, -ae, F.
tense, tempus, -oris, N.
termination, terminātiō, -ōnis, F.
transitive, trānsitīvus, -a, -um.
treat (= discuss), tractō, 1.

verb, verbum, -ī, N.
vocabulary, vōcābulārium, -ī, N.
vocative, vōcātīvus, -ī, M.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.; **genus**, -eris, N.
vowel, līttera vōcālis, -is, F., *or* vōcālis, -is, F.

wish, optātiō, -ōnis, F.
word, verbum, -ī, N.; vōcābulum, -ī, N.; vōx, vōcis, F.

yes, certē, certissimē; vērō; ita est, ista sunt; *verb of question repeated.*

INDEX.

THE general vocabularies are to be used as an index to *words* (with some exceptions) for which reference is needed. Full-face figures refer to sections, not pages. A superior figure (e.g. 10²) indicates a foot-note. Most abbreviations will readily be understood: ff. = and following; inv. = imperative.

A.

ā or ab, 61, 62.

ā-verbs, 86.

ABBREVIATIONS beginning letters, 437¹, 438.

ABLATIVE, translation of, 14², 59¹; of *agent*, 61, 62; of *means* or *instrument*, 90, 91; of *material*, 92, II, 8¹; of *separation*, 128-130; of *time*, 135, 136; of *manner*, 144, 145; w. comparatives, 211, 212; of *specification*, 259, 260; w. *ūtor*, etc., 303, 304; w. preps., 333; of *place*, 335, 3; *descriptive*, 341, p. 222^{3,4}; *absolute*, 412; abl. sing. of vowel stems in 3d decl., 151, 2.

ABSTRACT NOUNS, 168¹.

-ābus, in dat. and abl. plu., 19¹.

ACCENT, 7; before enclitics, 7, (1).

ACCUSATIVE, *direct obj.*, 25, 26; *predicate*, 92, I, 5², 93, II, 7⁴, 171, II, 3¹, 250, II, 4³; *two accs.*, 131, I, 8², 197, II, 10⁸; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; of *extent*, 312, 313; w. preps., 333, 4; of *limit*, 334, 335, 2; w. inf., 400, 401; w. some impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416.

AD, w. gerunds and gerundives, 432, 3.

ADJECTIVES, of 1st and 2d decls., 44, 71; of 3d decl., 105, 134, 141, 150, 164; irregular, 200; comparison of, 205 ff.; poss. adj. prons., 266; interrog., 279, 3; numeral, 311; agreement with nouns, 45, II, 1¹, 53, 54; used as nouns, 117; of one, two, or three terminations, 155; agreement with understood subject, 197, I, 8⁶; order w. prep. and noun, 64, I, 7¹; order w. gen. and noun, 124, I, 6³; method of declining, 44².

ADVERBS, formation of, 216 ff.; comparison of, 219; numeral, 311, 8.

AGENT, abl. of, 61, 62; dat. of, 425 (5), 426, 444⁴, cf. 428, II, 9⁶.

Aliquod as adj., 279, 2.

ALPHABET, I.

AND, omitted, 57, II, 6³, 227, II, 1¹, cf. p. 220⁸; inserted, 35, II, 5^{6,7}, 50, II, 8⁴, 57, I, 8⁴.

ANTECEDENT of rel. pron., 280 ff.; omitted, 287, I, 10³, p. 221¹⁰.

ANTEPENULT, 5, 5.

Anything at all, *quidquam* not *aliquid*, 279, 6, 440¹¹.

APPOSITION, 118, I, 2¹, 157, 158, 197, II, 8⁷.

Augustus et Iūlus (Coll.), 9.

B.

BATTLE OF CANNÆ (for trans.), 339, 378.

BATTLE OF MARATHON (for trans.), 291.

C.

CAESAR'S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN (for trans.), 448.

CARDINAL NUMERALS, 311.

CASES, names of, 10; alike in form, 16.

CAUSE, expressed by cum clause, 375; by part., 409, 7, 412, 3.

Charōn et Mercurius (Coll.), 187.

Cōgnōmen, 195, 204.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS, 168².

COLLOQUIA, Augustus et Iūlus, 9, 58, 80; Pater et Filiolus, 95, 222, 302; Frāter et Sorōrcula, 111, 162, 269, 274; Praeceptor et Discipulus, 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261; Magister et Discipulus, 139; Duo Puerī, 148; Father and Son, 173; Charōn et Mercurius, 187; Jacōbus et Augustus, 242; Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus, 290; Tītyrus et Meliboeus, 332; Jōhannēs et Jacōbus, 388.

COMMANDS AND APPEALS, 391.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE, formation of, 206, (1), 219; with and without quam, 211, 212; trans. by *too*, p. 220⁵.

COMPARISON of adjs., 205 ff.; of advs., 219.

COMPOUND TENSES, 97.

CONCESSION, expressed by cum clause, 372, 375, p. 219¹¹; by part., 409, 4, 412, 3.

CONDITIONS, 383 ff.; expressed by part., 409, 5, 412, 3, p. 214².

CONJUGATIONS: 1st, 86 ff., 351 ff.; 2d, 112 ff., 351 ff.; review of 1st and 2d, 127 ff.; 3d, 180 ff., 357 ff.; review of 1st, 2d, and 3d, 196, 197; 4th, 223 ff., 357 ff.; 3d in *-iō*, 235 ff., 357 ff.; review of the four conjcs., 240, 241; periphrastic, 422 ff.

CONSONANTS, 3; sounds of, 4.

CONSONANT STEMS, 104, 134, 140.

Cum, conj., temporal, causal, and concessive, 372 ff.

Cum, prep., with *mē*, *tē*, etc., 265, 3; w. abl. of manner, 144, 145.

CUSTOMS AND HABITS OF THE BRITONS (for trans.), 449.

D.

DATIVE of *possessor*, 32; *indirect obj.*, 31, 1, 7, 8, 9, 11, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34; w. comps. of sum, 295; of *service*, 291¹, 296, 11, 7³, 344; w. certain verbs, 342, 343; *double dative*, 344; w. intransitives, 417, 418; of *agent*, 425, 426; not to be taken for abl., 184, 6.

DEATH OF THE PET SPARROW (for trans.), 421.

DECLENSION, paradigms of: 1st, 14; 2d in *-us* and *-um*, 38; in *-er*, 59, 65; adjs. of 1st and 2d, 71; 3d, mute stems, 105; liquid stems, 134; sibilant stems, 140, 141; *i* stems, 149, 150; mixed stems, 163-165; comparatives, 209; 4th, 245; 5th, 254; special, 262; prons., 264, 270, 275, 279; duo and *trēs*, 311, 4.

DEFINITIONS, sometimes not given in vocabs., 57, I, 1¹.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, 275.

DEPONENT VERBS, 1st and 2d conjcs., 298 ff.; 3d and 4th conjcs., 303 ff.

DERIVATION, 345.

- DESCRIPTIVE abl. and gen., 341; abl., p. 222^{3,4}.
- DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS, 270; used like adjs., 270, 1.
- DĪc, inv. of dīcō, p. 150¹.
- DIPHTHONGS, 4; quantity of, 6, 2.
- DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, 311, 8.
- dō, nouns in, 168.
- DOUBLE CONSONANTS, 3.
- DOUBLE DATIVE, 344.
- DŪc, inv. of dūcō, p. 150¹.
- DUM with pres. ind., 263¹³, 442¹⁹.
- Duo Pueri (Coll.), 148.
- E.
- ē-verbs, 112.
- ĕ-verbs, 180, 235.
- ENGLISH METHOD of pronunciation, 8.
- ENCLITICS, 7, (1).
- er, nouns and adjs. of 2d decl. in, 67; compar. of adjs. in, 206, (1), (3).
- ēvi, perfects in, 119².
- EXTENT, accusative of, 312, 313.
- F.
- FABLES (for trans.), 441-447.
- Fac, inv. of faciō, p. 150¹.
- FATHER AND SON (Coll.), 173.
- FEMININE GENDER, 11, 2, 4; in 1st decl., 13; in 3d decl., 168, 2; in 4th decl., 244, 1; in 5th decl., 253.
- Fer, inv. of ferō, p. 150¹.
- Ferō, compounds of, 322.
- FIFTH DECL., 252 ff.
- FIRST CONJ., 86 ff., 351 ff.; first periphrastic conj., 422.
- FIRST DECL., 12 ff., 52 ff.
- FOURTH CONJ., 223 ff., 357 ff.
- FOURTH DECL., 243 ff.
- Frāter et Sorōrcula (Coll.), 111, 162, 269, 274.
- FUTURE translated by Eng. pres., 116, I, 1³, 385, 3¹; fut. inv., 391, (3); equivalent to inv., 438¹⁸.
- G.
- GENDER, general rules of, 11; in 1st decl., 13; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253. Agreement in, 45, II, 1¹, 53, 54, 281.
- GENITIVE, like Eng. possessive, 30, I, 6¹; of nouns in -ius and -ium, 79; with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 305, 306; *partitive*, 340, 438¹⁷, 439⁵, 440¹²; *descriptive*, 341; with certain impers. verbs, 415, 3, 4, 416; order w. adj. and noun, 124, I, 6³.
- GERUND, 430-432; nom. of supplied by inf., 431, 1.
- GERUNDIVE, p. 34²; 423, 432; diff. between gerund and gerundive construction, 432.
- gō, nouns in, 168.
- H.
- HĪc, demon. of 1st pers., 275, 1; in contrast with ille, 275, 5.
- HISTORICAL TENSES, 347; pres. 444⁸.
- HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE, 390, 391.
- I.
- i-stems, 149 ff.
- ī-verbs, 223.
- Ille, demon. of 3d pers., 275, 3; in contrast with hĪc, 275, 5.
- IMPERFECT, denoting continuance, 115, I, 5²; of customary action, 445¹².
- IMPERATIVE, 389 ff.; not common in prohibitions, 391, (2)³.
- IMPERSONAL VERBS and verbs used impersonally, 415 ff., 425, (4).
- IN not always to be translated by

- in, 146, I, 2¹, 185, II, 7, 296, II, 10⁵.
 In omitted, 2917.
 INCREASE in the gen., 152, 1¹.
 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, 279.
 INDICATIVE in cond. sentences, 385.
 INDIRECT DISCOURSE, 399 ff.
 INDIRECT OBJECT 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.
 INDIRECT QUESTIONS, 379 ff.
 INFINITIVE as in Eng., 395 ff.; w. sub. acc., 399 ff.; tenses of, 402-403; fut. pass., 402¹, 405, I, 2¹.
 INSTRUMENT, abl. of, 90, 91.
 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, 279; adj., 279, 3; advs., 380, 1.
 INTRANSITIVE VERBS used impersonally in the passive, 417, 418.
 -iō, nouns in, 168; verbs in, of 3d conj., 235.
 IPSE, distinguished from sē, 270, 4, 5; how translated, 270, 6.
 IRREGULAR adjs., 200 ff.; verbs, 72 ff., 292 ff., 316 ff.
 IS as pers. pron., 270, 2; *this* or *that*, 275, 6.
 ISLANDS, names of, 334².
 IT, expletive, 35, I, 1¹, 56, I, 7².
 -ium in gen. plu., 151, 3.
 -ius in gen. sing. of adjs., 200.
 -ius and -ium, gen. of nouns in, 79; voc. of nouns in -ius, 79.
 -ivī, perfs. in, often drop *v*, 231, I, 91², 327, 2.
- J.
- Jacōbus et Augustus (Coll.), 242.
 Jōhannēs et Jacōbus (Coll.), 388.
- L.
- LETTERS (for trans.), 437-440.
 LIMIT, acc. of, 335, 2³.
 LIQUIDS, 3.
 LIQUID STEMS, 134 ff.
 -lis, superlative of adjs. in, 207.
- LOCATIVE, 10, 3, 334, 335, 1; in 1st decl., 14, 2; in 2d decl., 40; in 3d decl., 175.
- M.
- Magister et Discipulus (Coll.), 139.
 MANNER, how expressed, 144, 145.
 Mārcus Porcius Catō, Puer (for trans.), 394.
 MASCULINE GENDER, 11, 1, 3; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 1; in 4th decl., 244; in 5th decl., 253.
 MATERIAL, how expressed, 92, II, 8¹.
 MEANS, abl. of, 90, 91.
 MIXED STEMS, 163 ff.
 MOTION, verbs of, foll. by acc. with and without prep., 333-335.
 MUTES, 3.
 MUTE STEMS, 105 ff.
- N.
- NARRATIVE SENTENCES, 372, (3).
 Nāsīca and Ennius (for trans.), 407.
 Ne, enclitic, 7, (1), 28, 1², 51, 3³, 58⁵.
 Nē, 358, 369, 391, (1); omitted after *cavē*, p. 178⁴.
 NEUTER GENDER, 11, 5; in 2d decl., 37; in 3d decl., 168, 3.
 Nōlī in prohibitions, 391 (1)¹.
 Nōmen, 195, 204.
 NOMINATIVE, subj., 24; pred., 46, 47, 92, I, 6³, 93, II, 6³.
 Nōnne, 51, 3³.
 -ns, nouns in, 167, 1.
 NUMERAL adjs., 311; advs., 311, 8.
- O.
- Ō, w. voc., 56, II, 1⁴.
 OBJECT, direct, 25, 26; indirect, 31, I, 7, 8, 9, II, 2, 6, 10, 33, 34.

- OF = because of, 330, II, 2³.
- OMISSION of *my, thy, his*, etc., 100; of *ut*, 438⁹, 446¹¹; of *in*, 291⁷; of *nē*, p. 178⁴; of *fore* in trans., 428, I, 4⁴.
- ORDER of words in sentence, 23; 35, 1; 56, I, 10³; 64, I, 7¹; 69, I, 10¹; 77, I, 5⁵; 93, I, 9²; 124, I, 6³; 202, I, 6⁵; 215¹¹; *quisque*, 287, I, 6²; *ferē*, 329, I, 6¹; 386, I, 3³; 404; 410, II, 9⁵; 438¹⁰; 440¹⁰; 446⁷; p. 216³; p. 217⁶; p. 219¹³.
- ORDINAL NUMERALS, 311.
- OUGHT, of past time, 419, I, 8³.
- P.
- PARTICIPLES, 408 ff.; in principal parts, 86¹; decl. of pres. act., 165, 408, I, of perf. and fut., 408, 2; perf. in comp. tenses as adj., 192, I, 7¹, 404, I, 4¹; part. and verb trans. by two coordinate verbs, 409, 2, 410, I, 5⁴, 412, 4; abl. absolute, 412, 413; Eng. perf. act. part., how rendered, 412, 6, 7; used as nouns, 291³.
- PASSIVE to be distinguished from progressive form in Eng., 69, II, 8⁵, 123, II, 3¹.
- PATER ET FILIOLUS (Coll.), 95, 222, 302.
- PARTITIVE GEN., 340, 438¹⁷, 439⁵, 440¹².
- PENULT, 5, 5.
- PERFECT, sometimes distinguished from pres. by long penult, 119⁵, 191, I, 2¹, 232, I, 1¹; *definite* and *indefinite*, 347; perf. subj. in prohibitions, 391, (2); perf. part. trans. by pres., 442¹², p. 217⁸; w. *ubi, ut*, etc., 444⁹; perf. subj. really fut. perf., 391, (2)².
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS: act., 422; pass., 423; paradigms, 424.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 264, 265; when nom. of *is* expressed, 265, 2.
- PLACE, expressions of, 334 ff.
- POSSESSIVE ADJ. PRONS., 266; when omitted, 100.
- POSSESSOR, dat. of, 32; cf. 441⁴.
- PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS (Coll.), 126, 133, 195, 204, 234, 261.
- PRAENOMEN, 195, 204.
- PREDICATE NOM., 46, 47, 92, I, 6³, 93, II, 6³; acc., 92, I, 5², 93, II, 7⁴, 171, II, 3¹.
- PREPOSITIONS, 333; order w. adj. and noun, 64, I, 7¹.
- PRESENT, translation of, 43¹; denoting continuance, 115, I, 5²; Eng. pres. for Lat. fut., 116, I, 1³, 385, 3¹; for Lat. fut. perf., 413, II, 10²; sometimes distinguished from perf. by short penult, 119⁵, 191, I, 2¹; w. *dum*, 263¹³, 442¹⁰; historical, 444⁸; pres. subj. trans. as fut., 369, I, 4.
- PRIMARY TENSES, 347.
- PRINCIPAL PARTS of verbs, 86¹.
- PRINCIPAL TENSES, 347.
- PROHIBITIONS, 391, (1), (2).
- PROGRESSIVE FORM in Eng. to be distinguished from passive, 69, II, 8⁵, 123, II, 3¹.
- PRONUNCIATION, Roman method, 4; English method, 8.
- PRŌSERPINA (for trans.), 199, 215, 263.
- PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS SCIPIŌ (for trans.), 188.
- PURPOSE, expressed by *ut* w. subj., 352, 353; *quī* w. subj., 364; fut. part., 410, I, 9⁵; ad w. gerundive, 432, 3; supine, 433, 434; *causā* w. gen. of gerund or gerundive, 435, I, 3, p. 221⁵.

Q.

QUANTITY of vowels and diphthongs, 6, 1, 2; of syllables, 6, 3, 4, 5.

QUIN, w. subj., 349, 350.

QUIS, indef. pron. w. *sī*, etc., 362, I, 6¹, 438¹⁵.

R.

r, as sign of passive, 87¹; for s, 73^{1,3,4}, 142.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, 264, 265.

RELATIVE PRONOUN, 279; agreement, 280 ff.; in purpose clause, 364.

REST, verbs of, foll. by abl., 333-335.

RESULT, w. *ut*, 368 ff.; to be distinguished from *purpose*, 352, 368, 447¹².

ROMAN METHOD of pronun., 4.
-rs, nouns in, 167, 1.

S.

-s, monosyllables in, 167, 2.

SECONDARY TENSES, 347.

SECOND CONJ., 112 ff., 351 ff. Second periphrastic conj., 423.

SECOND DECL., in *-us* and *-um*, 36 ff., 52 ff., in *-er*, 59 ff.

SEMI-DEONENTS, p. 177².

SEPARATION, how expressed, 128 ff.

SEQUENCE of tenses, 347 ff.

SERVICE, dat. of, 291¹, 296, II, 7³, 344.

SIBILANT, 3.

SIBILANT STEMS, 140 ff.

Sōcratēs et Rhadamanthus (Coll.), 290.

SOUNDS of letters, 4.

SPECIFICATION, abl. of, 259, 260, p. 218⁶.

STEM, 12¹; in 2d decl., 36, 42; in

verbs, 86¹; in 3d decl., 103, 104, 107, 151, 1, 152, 166, 167; in 4th decl., 243; in 5th decl., 252. Perf. stem w. long vowel, 119⁵.

SUBJECT NOM., 24; acc. 401; omitted, 50, I, 9¹.

SUBJUNCTIVE of *purpose*, 352, 353, 364; of *result*, 368; w. *cum*, 372; in *ind. questions*, 379 ff.; in *wishes* and *conditions*, 383 ff.; *hortatory*, 390; perf. really fut. perf., 391, (2)²; fut. tense of, 425 (1). Meanings not given in paradigms, p. 26¹.

SUPERLATIVE degree, formation of, 206, (2), (3); strengthened by *quam*, 437⁶.

SUPINE, 433, 434.

S. V. B. E. V., 437¹.

SYLLABLES, 5; quantity of, 6, 3, 4, 5.

SYNONYMOUS WORDS, *puerī*, *liberī*, 60; *magister*, *dominus*, 66; *minister*, *servus*, 66; *homo*, *vir*, 138; *amnis*, *flūmen*, *fluvius*, 172; *hostis*, *inimīcus*, 172; *celer*, *vēlōx*, 179; *superō*, *vincō*, 186; *habitō*, *vīvō*, 194; *animus*, *mēns*, 273; *cantus*, *carmen*, 278; *sīdus*, *stella*, 301; *amō*, *diligō*, *volō*, *dēsiderō*, 319; *interrogō*, *rogō*, *quaerō*, 382; *at*, *sed*, *autem*, 393; *iudicō*, *cēnsēo*, *existimō*, *arbitror*, *putō*, *opinor*, 429.

T.

TERMINATIONS, 15.

THERE, expletive, 35, I, 2²; 56, I, 7²; 220, I, 1².

THIRD CONJ., 180 ff., 357 ff.; verbs in *-iō*, 235 ff., 357 ff.

THIRD DECL., mute stems, 105 ff.; liquid stems, 134 ff.; sibilant

- stems, 140 ff.; i-stems, 149 ff.; mixed stems, 163 ff.
- TIME when or within which, 135, 136; how long, 312, 313; expressed by cum clause, 372, 373, by part., 409, 1, 2, 8, 412; relative time in tenses of inf., 402, 403, 405, II, 8^o, of part., 409.
- Tityrus et Meliboeus (Coll.), 332.
- TOWNS, names of, 334, 335.
- TRANSLATION, passages for, Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō, 188; Prōserpina, 199, 215, 263; Battle of Marathon, 291; Maxims, 320; Battle of Cannae, 339, 378; Mār-cus Porcius Catō, Puer, 394; Nā-sīca and Ennius, 407; Death of the Pet Sparrow, 421; Letters, 437-440; Fables, 441-447; Caesar's Two Invasions of Britain, 448; Customs and Habits of the Britons, 449.
- U.
- ubus in dat. and abl. of 4th decl.,
- ULTIMA, 5, 5.
- Ut, of purpose, 352 ff.; of result, 367 ff.; w. ind., 437⁴, 439²; omitted, 438⁹, 446¹.
- V.
- v, sometimes dropped, 231, I, 91², 327, 2, 421⁵.
- VOCATIVE, 10, 2; in 2d decl., 39; of filius, etc., 79.
- VOCABULARIES following exercises, 75, 2.
- VOWELS, how marked; 2; sounds of, 4; quantity of, 6, 1, 2.
- W.
- WISHES, 383 ff.
- WITH not always to be translated by cum, 185, II, 5².
- X.
- x, monosyllables in, 167, 2.
- Y.
- You, sing. or plu., 73².